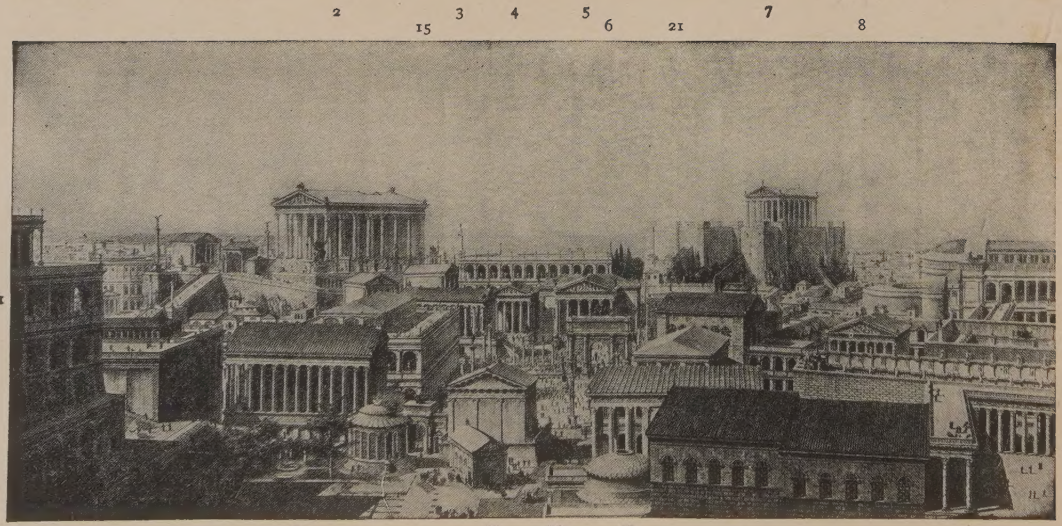


1 Palace of the Cæsars.
2 Temple of Jupiter Capitolinus.
3 Temple of Saturn.
4 Tabularium. Temple of Vespasian.
5 Temple of Concord.
6 Arch of Septimius Severus.
7 Temple of Juno Moneta on the Arx.
8 Temple of Mother Venus.
9 Basilica Ulpia.
10 Forum of Trajan.
11 Forum of Augustus.
12 Forum of Nerva.
13 Forum of Vespasian.
14 Temple of Castor and Pollux.
15 Basilica Julia
16 Temple of Vesta.
17 Temple of Julius Cæsar.
18 Regia.
19 FORUM.
20 Sacred Way.
21 Basilica Æmilia.
22 Temple of Antoninus Pius
23 Temple of Romulus.
24 Templum Sacræ Urbis.

THE ROMAN FORUM AND THE SURROUNDING BUILDINGS (RESTORED)

Anne B. B. Sturgis.

THE ROBERTS AND ROLFE LATIN SERIES

Harlow Coll.

ESSENTIAL LATIN LESSONS

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

ARTHUR W. ROBERTS, PH.D.

HEAD OF THE CLASSICAL DEPARTMENT IN THE BROOKLINE HIGH SCHOOL

AND

JOHN C. ROLFE, PH.D.

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA

PROPERTY OF THE DEPARTMENT OF FOREIGN LANGUAGES MICHIGAN STATE COLLEGE

CHARLES SCRIBNER'S SONS

NEW YORK CHICAGO BOSTON

COPYRIGHT, 1906, BY
CHARLES SCRIBNER'S SONS

Printed in the United States of America

PREFACE

THE plan of this book calls for more pages than at first may seem desirable in a book for beginners in Latin. But if the book is closely examined, it will appear that it contains no more matter to be learned because of its size, and that the plan upon which it is made justifies itself by the presence of a number of special features, some of them new, others not, which are likely to be of practical assistance to the pupil. These features are in brief as follows: —

1. An Introduction, giving the general principles of English grammar and the important differences between English and Latin grammar.

The feeble grip upon the principles of English grammar which pupils, as a rule, have at the outset of their study of Latin is perhaps the chief difficulty which teachers of Latin are obliged to meet. Pupils require something for reference, to supplement the teacher's statements of grammatical principles. A reference to other books than the one in hand does not work well with young pupils. Such references are apt to be neglected, forgotten, or misunderstood. Hence the editors believe that this Introduction, even if it is not thought desirable to make it the basis of regular lessons at the outset, will be serviceable for

purposes of reference. In this part of their work the editors desire to acknowledge their indebtedness to Whitney's "Essentials of English Grammar."

2. Fuller explanations than usual of the forms and of the grammatical principles which are given in each lesson. The substance of these explanations will of course be given by the teacher, but there would seem to be a distinct advantage in putting them before the pupil in printed form, for use in his own study. Though some of the suggestions may seem so obvious as to be unnecessary, experience in the class-room has shown their value.

The Lessons are intended to contain the amount of matter which a pupil of average ability may be expected to learn at once. Since, however, experience shows that no editor can arbitrarily determine the amount which is suitable for all pupils under all conditions, the subdivision of the Lessons has been made easy by frequent section numbers.

The verb has been presented by tense-stems. Hence the present and imperfect subjunctive appear somewhat earlier, and the perfect indicative somewhat later, than is usual. But the simpler uses of the subjunctive can be learned early as well as late, and in this way more variety can be introduced into the Exercises for Translation. Furthermore, the relation of the various forms to the stem will be more quickly and thoroughly understood if the subjunctive forms belonging to the present stem are learned before the perfect stem is introduced at all.

3. A vocabulary of moderate extent, consisting of about seven hundred words. This is presented in the form of special vocabularies in connection with each Lesson, and in the Word-Lists on pages 259–264, which contain most of the words used in the special vocabularies. The vocabularies are intended to be committed to memory, not half learned or used only for reference in translating the Exercises. Each of the words has been used a number of times in the Exercises. The Latin-English Word-Lists give the words used in several Lessons in alphabetical order with numbers, while in the English-Latin Lists the equivalents of these words are given in the same order on the reverse of each page. Either list can therefore be made the basis of study, and the teacher will find it an interesting and profitable exercise to put the words before the pupil in easy sentences of his own composition.

4. Reviews introduced at regular intervals in the proportion of one to every seven Lessons, dealing chiefly with the contents of the six Lessons immediately preceding. It is believed that it will prove helpful to both teacher and pupil to have these Review Lessons placed before the pupil in printed form. It should insure greater thoroughness with less effort.

5. Reading Exercises consisting of continuous passages. These are introduced at Lesson XXX in the form of a simplified Life of Julius Caesar, based on "Viri Romae," which is followed by Caesar's own account of his Invasion of Britain, from the fourth book of the Gallic War, also in simplified form.

6. Complete forms given. In the general Vocabulary at the end of the book, as well as in the special vocabularies, the principal parts of all verbs, the genitives of nouns, and other forms, are given in full, wherever abbreviations could by any possibility be misunderstood.

7. Index. An unusually full Index has been added, which it is hoped will be convenient for both teacher and pupil, by making it easy to turn to any form, construction, or rule without loss of time.

Lessons LXX and LXXI have been added for the benefit of those teachers who believe in calling attention to the formation and derivation of words as an aid in acquiring and retaining a vocabulary.

All the long vowels have been marked throughout the book, and for purposes of reference a summary of the general rules of quantity is given in §§ 72–75.

The editors desire to acknowledge the assistance of Miss A. L. Paige of the High School, Brookline, Mass., and of Miss E. W. Braley of the William Penn Charter School, Philadelphia, Pa.; also of Dr. Roland G. Kent of the University of Pennsylvania, who has read the proof sheets of the entire book and offered many helpful suggestions and criticisms.

A. W. R.
J. C. R.

January, 1906.

CONTENTS

LESSON		PAGE
INTRODUCTION.	General Principles of Grammar	1–21
	Pronunciation and Accentuation of Latin Words	21–26
	Rules for Quantity	26–30
I.	Pronunciation and Accent	31
II.	Nominative and Accusative Singular of Nouns and Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions	32
	Agreement of Adjective and Noun.	
III.	Nominative and Accusative Plural of Nouns and Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions	34
IV.	Present Infinitive and Present Indicative Active of the First and Second Conjugations	36
	Agreement of Verb with Subject.	
	The Subject of a Finite Verb in the Nominative.	
	The Direct Object of a Finite Verb in the Accusative.	
V.	Complete Inflection of Nouns and Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions	40
VI.	Masculine Nouns of the First Declension	43
	Dative the Case of the Indirect Object.	
VII.	Stems in **-ro** of Nouns and Adjectives of the Second Declension	45
	Place Where — **in** with the Ablative.	
VIII.	REVIEW	48

LESSON PAGE

IX. Genitive limiting a Noun. Appositives . . 50
Predicate Noun or Adjective.
Present and Imperfect Indicative of **sum.**

X. Present Infinitive and Present Indicative Active of Verbs of the Third and Fourth Conjugations . 53
Simple Questions.

XI. Imperfect Indicative Active of the Four Conjugations 56
Ablative of Means or Instrument.

XII. Future Indicative Active of the Four Conjugations 59
Ablative of Manner. Ablative of Cause.

XIII. Declension of the Demonstrative Pronoun and Adjective **is** 62
Future Indicative of **sum.** Dative of Possessor.

XIV. REVIEW 65

XV. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Active of Verbs of the Third Conjugation ending in **-iō** 67
Dative with Adjectives.

XVI. Third Declension. Consonant Stems which add **s** to form the Nominative Singular 69
Ablative of Separation.

XVII. Present and Imperfect Indicative Passive of the Four Conjugations 72
Ablative of the Agent.

XVIII. Future Indicative Passive of the Four Conjugations 74

XIX. Third Declension continued. Masculine and Feminine Stems in **l, n, r, s,** and Neuter Stems . . 76

LESSON PAGE

XX. Present Infinitive Active and Passive of the Four Conjugations 80
Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative of **possum.** Complementary Infinitive.

XXI. REVIEW 82

XXII. Use of Prepositions 84

XXIII. Third Declension continued. **i**-Stems . . 86

XXIV. Place Where continued. Place From Which. Place To Which 89

XXV. Present Subjunctive Active of the Four Conjugations and **sum** 91
Hortatory Subjunctive. Subjunctive of Purpose.

XXVI. Imperfect Subjunctive Active of the Four Conjugations and **sum** 94

XXVII. Present and Imperfect Subjunctive Passive of the Four Conjugations 96

XXVIII. REVIEW 98

XXIX. Adjectives of the Third Declension. Inflection of the Present Active Participle 101
Ablative of Specification.

XXX. The Relative Pronoun **quī**. Relative Clause of Purpose 105
Reading Exercises (*Gaius Iūlius Caesar*) begin.

XXXI. The Personal Pronouns **ego** and **tū**, and the Reflexive **suī** 109
The Possessive Pronouns, **meus, tuus, suus, noster,** and **vester.**

LESSON PAGE

XXXII. Present Imperative Active and Passive of the Four Conjugations 113

Imperative of **sum**. Rules of Gender in the Third Declension.

XXXIII. The Demonstrative Pronouns **hīc** and **īdem** 116

XXXIV. The Demonstrative Pronouns **ille** and **iste**, and the Intensive Pronoun **ipse** 119

XXXV. REVIEW 122

XXXVI. Nouns of the Fourth Declension 125

XXXVII. Nouns of the Fifth Declension 128

Ablative of Time When and Within Which. Accusative of Time How Long.

XXXVIII. Substantive Clauses resembling Purpose Clauses, introduced by **ut** and **nē**. Object Infinitive with Subject Accusative equivalent to these 131

XXXIX. Principal Parts of Verbs. The Perfect Stem. The Perfect Participle Passive 134

XL. The Future Active Participle. The Future Passive Participle or Gerundive. First and Second Periphrastic Conjugations. Dative of the Agent 137

XLI. Tenses of the Indicative and Subjunctive Active formed on the Perfect Stem. Perfect Active Infinitive 141

XLII. REVIEW 144

XLIII. **Cum** Clauses. Reading Exercises continued (*Caesar's Invasion of Britain*) 146

XLIV. Comparison of Adjectives. Declension of the Comparative. Ablative of Comparison. Ablative of Degree or Measure of Difference 149

LESSON PAGE

XLV. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs . . 154
Partitive Genitive.

XLVI. Comparison of Adjectives continued. Irregular Comparison 158
Ablative of Quality.

XLVII. Inflection of Nine Irregular Adjectives of the Second and First Declensions 162

XLVIII. Numerals. Temporal Clauses 165

XLIX. REVIEW 169

L. Tenses of the Indicative and Subjunctive Passive formed on the Supine Stem. Perfect Passive Infinitive 171
Subjunctive of Result.

LI. Deponent Verbs. Ablative with Certain Deponents 175

LII. Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns . . 178

LIII. Subjunctive in Indirect Questions. Sequence of Tenses 182

LIV. Participles Active and Passive. Their Use. Ablative Absolute 186

LV. The Dative of the Indirect Object with Verbs of Special Meanings 191

LVI. REVIEW 194

LVII. Infinitives Active and Passive. Infinitive with Subject Accusative 196
Infinitive (alone or with Subject Accusative) as the Subject of est or Impersonal verbs.

LVIII. Synopses of Regular Verbs in the Active and Passive of the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative. Infinitives and Participles 200
Commands Affirmative and Negative.

LESSON PAGE

LIX. The Gerund and Gerundive. Second Periphrastic Conjugation reviewed 203

LX. Conjunctions 207
Inflection of **possum** completed.

LXI. The Irregular Verb **eō**. Use of the Supine . 211

LXII. The Irregular Verbs **volō**, **nōlō**, and **mālō** . 215
Conditional Sentences in the Indicative.

LXIII. The Irregular Verbs **ferō**, **fīō**, and **dō** . . 219
Conditional Sentences in the Subjunctive.

LXIV. REVIEW 224

LXV. Indirect Discourse. Infinitive with Subject Accusative in Simple Declarative Sentences. Tenses of the Infinitive 226

LXVI. Substantive Clauses used as the Object of Verbs of Fearing 229
Dative of Service or Purpose.

LXVII. Substantive Clauses resembling Result Clauses, introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn** 233

LXVIII. Indirect Discourse continued. Imperative and Subordinate Clauses 236

LXIX. REVIEW 240

LXX. Word Formation. A Few Common Suffixes which form Nouns 242

LXXI. Word Formation. A Few Common Suffixes which form Adjectives 246
a. Added to Noun Stems.
b. Added to Verb Stems.
Compound Words.

PAGE

LATIN WORD-LISTS . . 249, 251, 253, 255, 257, 259, 261, 263

ENGLISH WORD-LISTS . 250, 252, 254, 256, 258, 260, 262, 264

APPENDIX 265–310

RULES OF SYNTAX 311–317

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY 319–343

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY 344–355

INDEX 357

INTRODUCTION

I. GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF GRAMMAR

1. The Relationship between English and Latin. — Language is the means by which men express their thoughts. The number of different languages is very great. Some, like English and Hebrew, for example, are so different that no direct connection can be seen between them. Others, like English and Latin, are so much alike in vocabulary and grammar as to make it certain that they are *cognate*, — that is, that they are descended from the same language.

2. Some words in English are derived from Latin words and are the same in form, like **honor**, *honor*, **ōmen**, *omen*, **superior**, *superior;* or differ only in their endings, like **colōnia**, *colony*, **imāgō**, *image*, **ōrātiō**, *oration*, **ōrdō**, *order*, **lībertās**, *liberty*, and many others. Some are so nearly alike in form as to make it evident that they are cognate (see **1**), like **māter** and *mother*. Some, while really cognate, have been so altered by sound changes that they seem to be different words, like the Latin word **cor(d)** and the English word *heart*. And some are of wholly different origin, like Latin **gladius** and English *sword*.

3. In studying Latin, then, it is not necessary to learn each word as something new and strange. The meaning even of those words which are entirely different in the two languages may often be seen from the

English derivatives. Thus the meaning of **gladius** is suggested by *gladiator*, one who fights with a sword. **Equus** and *horse* are not cognate, but *equestrian* is derived from **equus**, and throws light on its meaning.

4. Definition of Grammar. — The grammar of a language is a collection of the facts of that language, arranged in an orderly way, from which one may learn to read or to speak the language.

There are certain grammatical facts common to English and to Latin, which it is helpful to understand at the beginning.

1. *The Sentence*

5. The unit in language is the *Sentence*, which is made up of words. Words are classified, according to their uses, as *Parts of Speech*.

6. A Sentence is an expression of judgment or opinion. As: *the man runs; virtue is noble.*

7. The sentence consists of two parts: the *subject*, which names the thing about which the judgment or opinion is to be expressed; and the *predicate*, which asserts or declares something about that thing. Thus, in the sentences given above, *the man* and *virtue* are the subjects, and *runs* and *is noble* are the predicates.

NOTE. — This definition applies only to the commonest type of sentence, the declarative sentence. The other varieties will be defined below (**41**).

2. *The Parts of Speech*

8. A **Noun** is the name of anything, and may be used alone or with other words as the subject of a sentence,

as well as in some other constructions. As: the *boy* studies; *gold* is a *metal*.

9. A **Verb** is a word which asserts or declares, and may be used alone or with other words as the predicate of a sentence. As: the man *came*.

10. A **Pronoun** is a word which stands for a noun, and like a noun may be used as the subject of a sentence, as well as in other constructions. Thus, instead of saying the *man* came, we may say *he* came, *I* came, *you* came, etc.

11. An **Adjective** is a word used to qualify a noun; that is, to define or limit its meaning. As: a *good* man; a *white* horse; *pure* gold.

12. A special form of the adjective, sometimes classified as a separate part of speech, is the **Article**, which limits a noun, and indicates whether the noun is used definitely or indefinitely. There are two articles, the **Definite** article, *the*, and the **Indefinite** article, *an* or *a*. As: *the* man comes; I read *an* old book; *a* house is built.

NOTE. — The Latin language, like some others, but unlike English, has no article.

13. An **Adverb** is a word which qualifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb. As: the man comes *quickly;* a *truly* good man; he runs *very rapidly*.

14. A **Preposition** is a word which joins a noun or pronoun to a verb, an adjective, or another noun or pronoun, and shows the relation between them. As: he goes *with* him; a man *of* honor; fit *for* war; some *of* us.

15. A **Conjunction** is a word used to join sentences and also words used in the same way in a sentence. As: he walks *but* I run; he is poor *but* honest; he runs through *and* around the city.

16. Words which are merely exclamations, such as *oh! ah! alas!* are called **Interjections.** They are not properly parts of speech. Sometimes parts of speech are used as exclamations. As: *great Cæsar! good! away!*

NOTE. — Of the parts of speech, three — the noun, pronoun, and verb — are essential parts of the sentence; two — the adjective and adverb — qualify other words; two — the preposition and conjunction — join other words.

3. *Combinations of the Parts of Speech*

17. Phrases. — A combination of words, which has the value of a single part of speech, is called a *Phrase.* Thus, in the sentences I *am going,* I *have done* this, and I *should do* this, the italicized words are verb-phrases.

Such phrases are made up of the participle (*going, done;* see **36** *e,* 2) or the infinitive (*do;* see **36** *e,* 1) of a verb, with the *help* of *am, have,* and *should. Am, have, should,* and other verbs used in this way are therefore called *auxiliary verbs.*

18. A preposition with the word which it governs forms a **Prepositional phrase,** which may be equivalent to an adjective or to an adverb. As: a house *of wood* = a *wooden* house; he comes *by stealth* = he comes *stealthily.* When it is equivalent to an adjective, such

a phrase is called an **Adjective-phrase**; when it is equivalent to an adverb, an **Adverbial-phrase.**

NOTE. — Sometimes a combination of words is used instead of a simple preposition. As: *on account of this* he was killed = *for* this he was killed. The same thing is true of conjunctions. As: he came *in order that* he might see him = *that* he might see him.

4. *Modifications of the Parts of Speech*

19. Inflection. — The parts of speech are used in various ways in the sentence. The differences in their meanings and in their relations to one another are often expressed by changes in their form, called **Inflection.** In nouns inflection is called **Declension**; in verbs, **Conjugation.** As: *man, men; boy, boys; run, runs, ran.*

20. In Latin the relations between words are more commonly expressed in this way than in English; that is, Latin is a more highly inflected language than English. In English, for example, adjectives are not declined, while in Latin they are declined like nouns.

21. Comparison. — Both in Latin and in English adjectives have variations in their form to express the degree of the quality which the adjective denotes. This is called **Comparison**; and the degrees of comparison are called **Positive, Comparative,** and **Superlative.** As: positive, *large;* comparative, *larger;* superlative, *largest.*

22. Adverbs are sometimes compared like adjectives. Prepositions and conjunctions are not inflected in either language.

NOTE. Words are inflected by changing their form (as: *man, men; come, came*); or by the addition of endings called

Suffixes (as: *boy, boy-s ; who, who-m : show, show-ed*). In Latin the addition of suffixes is the more common method, though it is attended in some instances by changes of form.

23. Derivation. — Besides the suffixes which are used in inflection, there are others which are used to form words from roots (see **25**), or from other words. As: *joy-ful* from *joy ; good-ness* from *good*.

24. Sometimes words are derived from other words by an addition at the beginning instead of at the end. Such an addition is called a **Prefix**. As: *re-call* from *call ; dis-honest* from *honest*.

25. The part of a word which remains when all prefixes and suffixes are removed is called the **Root**. By adding suffixes to roots we get **Stems**, and by adding inflectional endings to stems we get complete words.

NOTE. — The stem and the root are sometimes the same. Thus in **rēx**, *king*, both the root and the stem are **rēg-**. In English, since inflection is comparatively rare, the stem and the word are frequently the same, or even the root, the stem, and the word. In Latin this is very rarely the case.

Roots and stems can better be illustrated from Latin than from English. The Latin word **servus** means *slave* or *servant*. The root is **serv-**. By adding the noun suffix *-o-* to the root we get the noun stem **servo-**. By adding the inflectional endings to the stem we get the noun **servus**, in the form in which it appears as the subject of the sentence, **servum**, in the form in which it appears as the object of the verb, etc.

The word **servus** was originally **servos**, and the stem **servo-** was modified throughout its declension. Since these changes are too difficult for the beginner to understand, it is convenient to use in the first and second declensions of nouns, where these changes are most difficult, instead of stem and case suffix, the

terms **Base** and **Case-ending**. The **Base** is the part of the word which remains unchanged in inflection. Thus in **servus** the base is **serv-** and the case-ending is **-us**.

Some use the term "base" without limiting it to the first and second declensions, but it is usually silently discarded after the second declension.

26. When a suffix which is not a case-ending is added to a stem or base to form a new word, the process is called **Derivation** and the word a **Derivative**. Thus *joy-ful* is derived from *joy*, or is a derivative of *joy*.

27. Composition. — Sometimes new words are made, not by means of suffixes, but by joining together two entire words. As: *grand-father; stair-way*. This is called **Composition**, and the word is called a **Compound**. In Latin the first word of a compound is often slightly changed in form.

5. *Classification and Characteristics of the Parts of Speech*

28. Classification of Nouns. — Nouns are divided, according to their form and their meaning, into various classes.

29. Nouns which designate qualities, conditions, and relations (that is, in general, things which cannot be seen or touched) are called **Abstract nouns**. As: *goodness, happiness, kinship*. In distinction from these all other nouns are called **Concrete nouns**.

30. Nouns which designate the individuals of a class, such as names of persons, countries, and the like, are called **Proper nouns**. As: *Cæsar, Rome, Italy*. In

distinction from these all other nouns are called **Common nouns.**

31. Nouns which designate things which are made up of separate parts are called **Collective nouns.** As: *pair, army, nation.*

32. Characteristics of Nouns. — Nouns are characterized by Gender, Number, and Case.

a. There are three genders:

1. The **Masculine** gender, of males.
2. The **Feminine,** of females.
3. The **Neuter,** of things without life.

NOTE. — In English gender and sex correspond, and names of males are masculine, names of females are feminine, and all others are neuter. In Latin names of men are masculine and names of women are feminine, but other nouns may be masculine, feminine, or neuter, the gender usually depending on their endings. Thus **honor,** *honor,* is masculine, **mēnsa,** *table,* is feminine, and **templum,** *temple,* is neuter.

There are some general rules for the gender of Latin words. For example, names of *rivers, winds,* and *months* are usually *masculine;* those of *countries, towns, islands,* and *trees* are *feminine.* But for the most part the gender in Latin is determined not by the meaning of the word, but by its ending, and must be learned in connection with the different declensions.

b. There are two numbers:

1. The **Singular** is used of one person or thing. As: *man, boy, table.*
2. The **Plural** is used of two or more persons or things. As: *men, boys, tables.*

NOTE. — In Latin, as is usually the case in English, differences of number are indicated by changes in form.

c. There are three cases in English:

1. The **Nominative** is the case of the subject. As: the *man* runs.
2. The **Possessive** denotes possession or ownership. As: the *boy's* hat.
3. The **Objective** is the case of the object of a verb or of a preposition. As: he strikes the *man;* the hat of the *boy.*

Other relations between nouns are denoted in English for the most part by prepositions.

In Latin there are six cases:

1. The **Nominative** corresponds to the English nominative.
2. The **Genitive** corresponds to the English possessive and to prepositional phrases with *of* and the objective.
3. The **Dative** is generally represented in English by prepositional phrases with *to* or *for,* sometimes by the Dative-objective (see **58**).
4. The **Accusative** corresponds to the English objective.
5. The **Ablative** is generally represented in English by prepositional phrases with *with, from, by, at,* or *in.*
6. The **Vocative,** the case of address, is almost always the same in form as the nominative.

NOTE. — In English the possessive is marked by an inflectional ending *-s* (*-'s, -s'*), but the nominative and objective are usually not distinguished in form, except in pronouns. In

Latin, however, each case has its characteristic ending, though sometimes two or more cases have the same ending.

33. Pronouns. — Pronouns are divided into classes, according to their uses:

a. **Personal pronouns** indicate differences of person. The persons are the **First,** referring to the speaker; the **Second,** referring to the person spoken to; and the **Third,** referring to the person or thing spoken of. As: *I* go; *you* see; *he* ran; *they* came.

NOTE. — The personal pronouns are accordingly divided into pronouns of the First Person, of the Second Person, and of the Third Person, though in practice these terms are seldom used.

b. The possessive cases of the personal pronouns are used as possessive adjectives. As: *my* book; *his* house; *your* lesson.

c. By adding *self* (plural *selves*) to the personal pronouns there are formed:

1. *Intensive* pronouns, used to emphasize personal pronouns. As: I *myself* did it.
2. *Reflexive* pronouns, which are used as the object of the verb of the sentence and refer back to the subject. As: he killed *himself*.

d. **Demonstrative pronouns** point out persons or things, or draw special attention to them. As: I see *this;* he did *that.*

e. **Interrogative pronouns** are used to ask questions. As: *who* did it? *What* did you see?

f. **Relative pronouns** refer or relate to another noun or pronoun called the **Antecedent.** As: I saw the man *who* did it (*man* is the antecedent of the relative pronoun *who*).

g. **Indefinite pronouns** are those which do not belong to any of the above classes. Most of them are used also as adjectives. As: *each, either, neither, some, any,* etc.

NOTE. — The pronouns in English are distinguished by gender, number, and case, like nouns, and also by person and number. They are more fully inflected than nouns, showing not only differences of case, as *who, whose, whom*, but in some instances of gender as well, as *he, she, it.* In Latin the pronouns have the same cases as nouns, and distinguish them by case-endings. The demonstrative, interrogative, relative, and indefinite pronouns (for the most part) distinguish the three genders; these classes of pronouns are also used as adjectives.

34. Adjectives. — Adjectives in English are not declined. In Latin they show differences of gender, number, and case (with a few exceptions).

35. Classification of Verbs. — Verbs are classified as:

a. **Transitive verbs,** which take an object. As: he *kills the man.*

b. **Intransitive verbs,** which do not take an object. As: I *go;* he *rejoices.*

For **Auxiliary verbs,** see **17.**

36. Characteristics of Verbs. — **Verbs** are distinguished by **Tense, Mood, Voice, Number,** and **Person.**

a. The **Tenses** in English are:

1. The **Present,** referring in general to present time. As: I *go, am going, do go.*

2. The **Past** (sometimes called the **Preterite**), referring in general to past time. As: I *went, was going, did go.*
3. The **Future,** referring in general to future time. As: I *shall go, shall be going.*
4. The **Perfect** (sometimes called the **Present Perfect**), representing the action of the verb as completed in the present. As: I *have gone.*
5. The **Past Perfect** (sometimes called the **Pluperfect**), representing the action of the verb as completed in the past. As: I *had gone.*
6. The **Future Perfect,** representing the action of the verb as to be completed in the future. As: I *shall have gone.*

NOTE. — These definitions are very general. The special uses of each tense may be learned gradually in connection with the study of the verb.

The tenses in Latin are very nearly the same as in English. The following points may be noted:

1. The tense which corresponds in general with the Past or Preterite is called the **Imperfect.**
2. The Perfect in Latin has two uses:
   (*a*) The **Perfect Definite** corresponds with the English Perfect or Present Perfect. As: *audīvī,* I *have heard.*
   (*b*) The **Perfect Indefinite** simply designates the action of the verb as past. As: *audīvī,* I *heard.*

3. The Past Perfect is always called the Pluperfect.

NOTE. — In English the present and past are distinguished by different forms or by different endings. As: *run*, *ran*; *show*, *showed*. The other tenses are verb-phrases (see **17**), made by the addition of other verbs, called **Auxiliary** verbs. As: I *shall go*; I *have come*, etc. In Latin the six tenses, at least in the Active voice, are distinguished by different endings.

b. Both in English and in Latin there are three **Moods** (or **Modes**):

1. The **Indicative** is the mood of simple assertion. As: I *go*; he *runs*.
2. The **Subjunctive** is the mood of conditional assertion. As: if he *were* here.
3. The **Imperative** is the mood of command. As: *go! run!*

NOTE. — In Latin the subjunctive is much more extensively used than in English, expressing not only ideas which are expressed in English by the subjunctive, but also many which are expressed by verb-phrases. As: *let him go; may he come: that he might do this: would that he were here*, etc. The moods are distinguished in Latin by special inflectional endings.

c. On **Number** and **Person** see **32** *b* and **33** *a*.

NOTE. — In English the different persons and numbers of the verb are expressed by the use of different pronouns, a personal ending being sometimes joined to the verb and sometimes not. As: I *go*, thou *goest*, he *goes*, we *go*, you *go*, they *go*. In Latin such differences are expressed by inflectional endings, and a pronoun may or may not be used.

d. Both in English and in Latin there are two **Voices**:

1. The **Active** voice represents the subject as acting. As: I *strike.*
2. The **Passive** voice represents the subject as acted upon. As: I *am struck.*

e. Both English and Latin have:

1. A **Verbal Noun** called the **Infinitive**, which represents the action of the verb in the form of a noun. As a noun it may be used as the subject or object of a verb. As a part of the verb it is found in different tenses and voices, and may take an object. As: *to run* is good exercise; he desired *to be praised;* he wished *to see* the man.
2. A **Verbal Adjective,** called the **Participle,** which represents the action of the verb in the form of an adjective. It is used like an adjective, and as a part of the verb is found in different tenses and in both voices, and may take an object. As: a *running* horse; *having seen* the man, he said this; *having been called,* he came.

37. Adverbs. — Adverbs are sometimes compared (see **21**), but otherwise do not change their form. They are classified, according to their meaning, as adverbs of *time, place, manner,* etc. As: *now, early, where, there, rapidly,* etc. They are also classified, according to their derivation, as *demonstrative adverbs, relative adverbs,* etc.

38. Prepositions. — Prepositions are classified according to the case which they govern. In English prepositions govern nouns and pronouns in the objective case. In Latin they govern not only the accusative but the ablative.

NOTE. — Prepositions most commonly join a noun or pronoun to a verb (see **14**). Sometimes, however, they join a noun or pronoun to another noun, to an adjective, or to an adverb. As: many *of* them; good *for* nothing; a man *of* might; enough *for* the purpose. A preposition with its case in English is very often represented in Latin by a case alone.

39. Conjunctions. — Conjunctions are classified as *Coördinate* and *Subordinate*. Only the former are used to join words. Hence the definitions are given below (**43** *a* and *b*).

6. *Classification of Sentences*

40. Simple Sentences. — A *Simple Sentence* contains but one subject and one predicate. Such a sentence may, however, be expanded to a considerable length by the addition of modifying words or phrases. Whatever its length, provided it has but one subject and one predicate, it is a simple sentence. Thus, *the teacher gave a book to the boy* is a simple sentence, and so is *his teacher, a kind and good man, gave an interesting and useful book to the diligent and studious boy.*

41. Simple sentences are of three kinds:

a. The **Declarative sentence** simply makes an assertion or declaration. As: *I went.*

b. The **Interrogative sentence** asks a question. As: *did I go?*

NOTE. — **Questions** are asked in English by changing the order of the verb and its subject (as: *does he?*); by an interrogative word (as: *who* did this?); or merely by the inflection of the voice. In Latin all questions, with very few exceptions, are asked by interrogative words.

Questions are usually answered in English by *yes* or *no*. Neither word has an exact equivalent in Latin, and questions are answered by repeating the sentence, in full or in part, with or without a negative. As: Did he come? *He came*, or *he did not come.*

c. The **Imperative sentence** expresses a command. As: *Go! let him go.*

42. Clauses. — A simple sentence, which is used, not alone, but in connection with another simple sentence (or with other simple sentences), is called a *Clause.*

NOTE. — A clause is like a phrase (see **17**) in being a combination of words used as a single part of speech. It differs from a phrase in containing a subject and predicate, *i. e.*, in being a sentence.

43. Clauses are classified, according to their rank, as:

a. **Independent** or **Principal clauses**, which have the value of independent assertions, and are connected by *coördinate* conjunctions. As: *he went and I remained* (*he went* and *I remained* are independent clauses).

b. **Dependent** or **Subordinate clauses**, which do not have the value of independent assertions, but qualify or limit such assertions, and are connected with the principal clause by *subordinate* conjunctions. As: *he went because I came* (*he*

went is an independent clause, of which *because I came* gives the cause or reason).

44. Subordinate clauses are classified, according to the part of speech which they represent, as:

a. **Adjective clauses**, which are used like adjectives to qualify a noun or pronoun. As: *the man whom you mentioned is here* (*whom you mentioned* qualifies *man*).

b. **Adverbial clauses** are used like adverbs to modify a verb. As: *he ran because he was afraid* (*because he was afraid* modifies *ran*).

c. **Substantive clauses** are used like substantives or nouns as the subject or object of a verb, or in some other construction of the noun. As: *I asked what he had done* (*what he had done* is the object of *asked*); *what he said was true* (*what he said* is the subject of *was*).

45. Subordinate clauses are also classified according to their relation to the principal clause, or according to the kind of word by which they are introduced:

a. A **Relative clause** is introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb. As: *I read the letter which you sent* (*which you sent* is a relative clause).

b. An **Interrogative clause** is introduced by an interrogative word. As: *he asked who he was* (*who he was* is an interrogative clause).

c. A **Temporal clause** defines the time of the principal clause. As: *after he said this*, he went away.

d. A **Causal clause** gives the cause or reason of the assertion made by the principal clause. As: *because this was so,* he was sent away.

e. A **Conditional clause** introduces a condition. As: *if he were here,* he would speak.

f. In the same way we have clauses of **Purpose, Result, Concession,** and the like.

46. Compound Sentences. — A **Compound sentence** consists of two or more simple, independent sentences (or clauses) connected by coördinate conjunctions. As: *he went but I remained; He came and saw and conquered.*

47. Complex Sentences. — A **Complex sentence** consists of an independent sentence (or clause), to which one or more dependent clauses are joined as modifiers by means of subordinate conjunctions. As: *I came, that I might see him. Because he was ill, I came to see him* (=that I might see him).

48. A **Compound-complex sentence** consists of one or more independent sentences (or clauses), to either of which one or more dependent clauses may be joined as modifiers. As: *I went, because I was sent for; but he remained, in order to meet his friend.*

7. *Construction of Words in the Sentence*

NOTE. — These principles apply to *all* sentences, since compound and complex sentences are made up of simple sentences (or clauses).

49. Every sentence consists of a subject and a predicate. See **7.**

50. The subject of a sentence is in the nominative case. The verb agrees with its subject in person and number. As: *I go; he goes; they go.*

51. Some verbs form complete predicates. As: I *run;* he *speaks.* Others require the addition of a noun or an adjective to complete their meaning, and are called verbs of incomplete predication. As: he *is good;* he *seemed sick;* he *was elected consul.*

52. A noun or adjective which is used to complete the meaning of a verb is called a **Predicate noun** or a **Predicate adjective.**

53. A predicate noun or adjective agrees with the subject in case. In Latin a predicate adjective agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

54. In distinction from a predicate adjective, one which qualifies its noun directly is called an **Attributive adjective.** As: an *old* man. In Latin an attributive adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

55. A noun or an adjective may be joined loosely to a noun, to describe or qualify it. As: Cæsar, *the dictator,* did this; a man, *good* and *true,* is dead. Such a noun or adjective is called an **Appositive noun** or **adjective,** and the noun, which is usually called simply an **Appositive,** is said to be *in apposition* with the noun which it qualifies.

56. Transitive verbs (**35** *a*) usually require an object to make a complete predicate. As: he killed *the man;* he built *a house.*

57. The object of a transitive verb is put in the *Objective* case in English, though, except in pronouns, this does not differ in form from the *Nominative*. In Latin the object of a verb is put in the *Accusative* case.

NOTE. — Some verbs of special meanings in Latin take an object in other cases than the accusative.

58. Besides the direct object, some verbs take an indirect object. As: I gave *him* (*to him*) the book. Sometimes in English the indirect object is put in the objective case, often called the *Dative-objective*. As: I sent *him* the book. Sometimes it is expressed by a prepositional phrase. As: I gave the book *to him*. In Latin the indirect object is put in the *Dative* case.

59. Possession is expressed in English by the possessive case or by a prepositional phrase with *of*. As: the *boy's* book; the book *of the boy*. In Latin possession is expressed by the *Genitive* case.

Other relations between nouns, and between nouns and verbs, are expressed in English for the most part by prepositional phrases. As: he goes *to Rome;* he lives *in the city;* he killed him *with a sword;* he reminds him *of this;* a place *for a camp*. In Latin such relations are expressed by the genitive, the accusative, the dative, or the ablative, the accusative and the ablative being sometimes with and sometimes without a preposition.

60. Both in English and in Latin parts of the sentence which can readily be understood without being expressed are omitted. As: *one man was good, the*

other (man was) *bad*; *I treated him as* (I would treat) *a friend.*

II. PRONUNCIATION AND ACCENTUATION OF LATIN WORDS

61. Sounds and Their Classification. — The Latin language, like all others, is made up of single sounds, which are joined together to form words. These sounds are represented by the letters of the *Alphabet.*

62. The Latin alphabet was the same as the English, with the following exceptions:

a. It had no W, that sound being represented by V (u).

b. I (i) was used both for the consonant and the vowel. The sound represented by English J (j) did not occur in Latin.

c. V (u) was used both for the consonant and the vowel.

NOTE. — K, Y, and Z occur but seldom. C in early Latin had the sound of G, and this was retained in the abbreviations C. and Cn., which stand for *Gāius* and *Gnaeus*, not for Caius and Cnaeus.

63. The Latin sounds may be classified in a general way as follows:

a. Vowels: a, e, i, o, u, and y.

b. Consonants: b, c, d, f, g, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, x, and z.

H was not properly a consonant. See below (**70** *c*).

c. Some vowels are combined into *Diphthongs.* These are: ae, au, ei, eu, oe, and ui.

d. I and u, when used as consonants, are often called *Semi-vowels.*

64. Vowels are either *long* or *short.* See below (**69**).

65. Consonants are classified as follows:

a. Liquids: l, r. *b. Nasals:* m, n.

c. Mutes: 1. *Labials:* p, b.
2. *Dentals:* t, d.
3. *Gutturals:* c, k, g, q.

d. Spirants: f, s, v. *e. Double consonants:* x, z.

66. Pronunciation of the Latin Sounds. — The pronunciation of Latin, which is most commonly used in this country, is the Roman. The sounds are as follows:

a. Vowels:

ā as in *father.*	ă as in the first syllable of *aha* (not as in *man*).
ē as in *they.*	ĕ as in *met.*
ī as in *machine.*	ĭ as in *pin.*
ō as in *note.*	ŏ as in *obey* (not as in *hot*).
ū like *oo* in *tool.*	ŭ as in *full.*

NOTE. — The short vowels, except *a*, do *not* have the same sound (shortened) as the corresponding long vowels, but they differ in *quality*, as well as in *quantity*.

Notice especially the sound of *ū* and *ŭ*, which is *not* the same as that of English *u*.

b. Diphthongs:

ae like ai in *aisle.*
au like ow in *how.*
ei like ei in *eight.*
eu like e followed by **u.**
oe like oi in *toil.*
ui like English *we.*

c. Consonants:

b, d, f, h, k, l, m, n, p, qu, as in English, except that bs is pronounced like ps, and bt like pt.

c always like k, never like c in *city*.

g like g in *get*, never like g in *gem*.

Consonant i like y in *young*.

s like s in *sink*, never like z in *zinc*.

t like t in *tin*, never as in *nation*.

v like English w.

x like ks, never like gz.

ph, th, and ch like p, t, and c.

d. Doubled consonants, such as ll, mm, tt, should both be distinctly sounded, not pronounced like ll in *wholly* and tt in *kitty*.

e. The same principle applies to all combinations of consonants, in which every consonant should be distinctly sounded.

1. *Syllable Division*

67. Every Latin word has as many syllables as there are vowels or diphthongs in the word.

68. In dividing words into syllables:

a. A *single* consonant is joined with the following vowel. As: **dō-nat**; **ho-mō**.

b. *Doubled* consonants are always separated and both are distinctly sounded (see **66**, *d*). As: **mit-tō**; **il-le**.

c. In pronunciation other groups of consonants, except mutes followed by *l* or *r*, are also divided. As: **om-nis**; **trīs-tis**; **ap-pro-pin-**

quō. In each syllable the consonant or consonants should be distinctly sounded, not carried over from the first to the second, as is often done in English (see **66**, *e*). In dividing words between lines in writing, it is usually the custom to join to the following vowel as many consonants as can be pronounced with it. As: **om-nis**; **trī-stis**; but **pa-tris**.

NOTE. — X was divided in pronunciation, so that **dīxit** was pronounced **dīc-sit**. In writing custom varies between **dī-xit** and **dīx-it**.

Compound words are pronounced according to the above rules. In writing they are separated into the parts of which they are formed. As: **ab-eō**.

2. *Quantity*

69. The quantity of vowels is of the greatest importance for pronunciation, since a long vowel has a different sound from that of the corresponding short vowel. In many cases the quantity can be learned only by observation and experience, but a list of general rules for quantity is given below, and the long vowels are marked throughout the book.

70. Quantity of Syllables. — The quantity of *vowels* must carefully be distinguished from that of *syllables*. A long syllable may contain a long vowel, or it may contain a short vowel. In the latter case the vowel has the short sound, regardless of the quantity of the syllable.

a. A syllable containing a long vowel or a diphthong is long. As: **dū-cō**; **ae-tās**.

b. A syllable which contains a vowel followed by two consonants, except a mute followed by *l* or *r*, or by a double consonant, is long, regardless of the quantity of the vowel. As: the first syllables of **mit-tō**; **duc-tus**; **trīs-tis**; **dī-xit** (= **dīc-sit**); but not that of **pa-tris**.

c. H does not count as a consonant.

NOTE. — The rule in *b* is often incorrectly stated. Of the two consonants only *one* is actually in the long syllable (see **68**, *b*).

This rule applies only to SYLLABLES. *A short* VOWEL *followed by two consonants is* NOT *lengthened.*

3. *Accentuation*

71. *a*. Words of two syllables are accented on the first. As: **hŏ′-mō**; **tē′-lum**.

b. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the next to the last (called the *penult*) if that is *long;* otherwise, on the second from the last (called the *antepenult*). As: **ho-mi′-ni-bus**; **Me-tel′-lus**; **a-mā′-vī**.

The genitive and the vocative in **-ī** of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** of the Second Declension are accented on the penult, even when it is short. As: **Vergi′lī**; **inge′nī**.

NOTE. — The accent is determined by the quantity of the *syllables* and not by that of the *vowels*. Thus **Metellus** has a short vowel in the penult, but is accented on the penult because the *syllable -tel-* is long (see **70**, *b*). The *ĕ* of the penult, however, has the sound of *e* in *met*, *not* that of *e* in *they*.

c. A few short words have no accent, but are pronounced and written as part of the preceding

word. They are called *Enclitics.* Such are: **-que,** *and ;* **-ve,** *or ;* **-ne** (interrogative particle), etc. The syllable before the enclitic takes the accent, regardless of its quantity. As· **exercitus'que, amat'ne, cūra'que.**

III. RULES FOR QUANTITY

A. GENERAL RULES[1]

(Referring to all syllables)

72. Vowels are always long:

a. Before *ns, nf, nx,* and *nct:* cōnsul, adulēscēns, īnferō, iūnxī, iūnctum.

b. When they are the result of *contraction:* nīl from nihil; mālō from ma volō; amāsse from amāvisse.

c. When they represent *diphthongs:* exīstimō from **ae**stimō; cecīdī from **c**aedō; inīquus from **ae**quus.

73. Vowels are short:

a. Before *nt* and *nd:* amant, amandus, monendus, montis, ventum.

Except quīntus (originally *quīnctus;* see **72** *a*).

b. Before *ss,* unless the vowel is the result of contraction: iussī, iussum, missum, cessī, cessum; but amāsse (amāvisse), petīsse (petīvisse).

c. Before *another vowel* or *h followed by a vowel:* eum, mūniēbās, audācia, trahō.

Except:

1. In some forms of *fiō* (see Lesson LXIII).
2. In genitives in *-īus* of pronouns and some adjectives (see Lessons XXXIV and XLVII): illīus, ipsīus, ūnīus.
3. In the ending -eī of Declension V, when it is preceded by a vowel: diēī, aciēī, but reī, speī.

[1] No account is taken of exceptions which do not occur in this book.

74. The quantity of the vowel of the root syllable in derivatives is usually the same as that of the words from which they are derived: mīles, mīlitāris, mīlitia; prīmus, prīnceps; cīvis, cīvitās; crūdēlis, crūdēlitās, etc.

NOTE. — Sometimes, however, roots have a long and a short form: as ducis (genitive singular of dux), dūcis (second person singular of dūcō); dīcō, iūdicō; fīdus, fidēlis; parō, pāreō.

These words must be learned by observation.

B. QUANTITY IN FINAL SYLLABLES

(*Including monosyllables*)

75. Final syllables ending in a *consonant not s* have a short vowel: **ab, ad, ex, amat, regit,** etc.

Except some monosyllables ending in *-r*, *-n*, and *-c*: **pār, cūr,** nōn, quīn, sīc, hīc, hūc, and other adverbs in -c.

76. Of final syllables ending in *s* those in *-as*, *-es*, *-os* usually have a long vowel; those in *-is* and *-us* a short vowel: **amās,** regēs (from regō), rēgēs (from rēx), servōs.

But:

a. *-es* is short:

1. In the nominative singular of nouns and adjectives with genitives in *-ĭtis* and *-ĭdis*: mīles, mīlitis; pedes, peditis; obses, obsidis; dīves, dīvitis.
2. In *es*, second person singular of sum.

b. *-is* is long:

1. In plural case forms: portīs, servīs, turrīs, nōbīs.
2. In the second singular, present indicative active of Conjugation IV: mūnīs, servīs.
3. In the second singular, present indicative active of some irregular verbs: īs (eō), fīs (fīō), vīs (volō), and compounds of these.
4. In the second singular, subjunctive active of some irregular verbs: sīs (sum), velīs (volō), and compounds of these.

c. *-us* is long:

1. In the genitive singular and nominative and accusative plural of Declension IV: **manūs, aditūs.**
2. In the nominative singular of nouns of Declension III having a long *u* in the stem: virtūs, virtūtis.

77. In final syllables ending in a vowel, *a* and *e* are short; *i*, *o* and *u* are long.

But:

a. *-a* is long:

1. In the ablative singular of Declension I: portā.
2. In the imperative of Conjugation I: laudā, arā, aedificā.
3. In indeclinable words, except *ita* and *quia*: contrā, trīgintā, posteā, intereā.

b. *-e* is long:

1. In the ablative singular of Declension V: diē, aciē, spē.
2. In the imperative of Conjugation II: docē, tenē.
3. In adverbs from adjectives of Declension II and I, except *bene* and *male*: altē, optimē, maximē, praeclārē; but saepe.
4. In monosyllables, except the enclitics *-que*, *-ne*, *-ve*: dē, ē, rē, sē, mē.

c. *-i* is short in *nisi*; *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*; *ibi*, *ubi*.

d. *-o* is short:

1. in *ego* and *duo*.
2. In some verbs compounded with pro-: proficīscor, profugiō.

C. QUANTITY IN SYLLABLES NOT FINAL

78. In the declension of nouns and adjectives *a* and *o* are usually long in penultimate syllables; *e*, *i*, and *u* are usually short:

a. Aestās, aestātis; tempestās, tempestātis; auctōritās, auctōritātis; pāx, pācis (but Caesar, Caesaris).

b. Timor, timōris; cūstōs, cūstōdis; Catō, Catōnis; mōs, mōris; legiō, legiōnis; (but arbor, arboris, has a short *o*, as well as all neuter nouns, such as tempus, temporis; lītus, lītoris).

c. Hiems, hiemis; pēs, pedis; iter, itineris; pulvis, pulveris (but lēx, lēgis; rēx, rēgis).

d. Agmen, agmĭnis; obses, obsidis; pedes, peditis; prīnceps princĭpis; magnitūdō, magnitūdĭnis; homō, hominis flūmen, flūmĭnis; dīves, dīvĭtis (but felīx, felīcis)

e. Cōnsul, cōnsŭlis; dux, ducis (but rūs, rūris; virtūs, virtūtis).

79. The stem vowels of Conjugations I, II, and IV are long: laudāre, docēre, mūnīre; that of Conjugation III is short: regere, capere.

But:

a. The irregular *dō* has a short *a*, except in dās and dā. (See Lesson LXIII.)

b. In the imperfect indicative of Conjugation III the *e* is long; regēbam, capiēbam.

Otherwise in the conjugation of verbs *a*, *e*, *o*, and *u* are generally long; *i* is short: amāvērunt, audiēbāmus, amātūrus, monitus, laudābitis.

But:

c. *e* is short before *r* in the verb forms in *-ram*, *-rim*, and *-rō* (that is, throughout the pluperfect and future perfect indicative active, and in the perfect subjunctive active): laudāveram, docuerim, mūnīverō.

80. Perfects and supines of two syllables regularly have a long vowel in the penult: mōvī, vēnī, cēpī, cāvī, iūvī, iēcī; mōtum, lātum.

Except: dedī, stetī, stitī, tulī; datum, itum, statum.

So of course in compounds of these verbs: convēnī, summōvī; contulī.

81. Verbs of the second conjugation in *-eō* generally have a short root vowel: doceō, moneō, moveō, faveō, videō, habeō; but dēleō (= dē-leō), pāreō (see **74**, note), dēbeō (contracted from dē-hibeō).

82. Presents formed with an inserted *n* or *m* usually have a short root vowel: **rumpō**, **frangō**, **iungō**.

83. The verbal ending *-scō* is preceded by a long vowel, except in *discō* and *poscō*. As: adolēscēns (from adolēsco); proficīscor, nōscō and its compounds.

84. When the root vowel of a verb is changed to another vowel in compounds, both are short (this of course does not include diphthongs): faciō, perficiō, efficiō, reficiō, etc.; capio, recipiō, accipiō, etc.; but of course aestimō, existimō.

85. When the *c* in *ct* of the supine represents a *g* or a *qu* in the present, the vowel preceding *ct* is usually long: regō, rēctus; legō, lēctus; relinquō, relīctus; but dīcō, dictus; dūcō, ductus.

The Roman Forum

A Roman Sacrificial Scene

ESSENTIAL LATIN LESSONS

LESSON I

PRONUNCIATION AND ACCENT

86.

a. Learn sections 66–71 in the Introduction.

b. Divide the following words into syllables, if they have more than one syllable, write the accent of each, and pronounce them:

Amantibus erant enim pertineō omnis oppidum populus perīculum ōrō amō tēlum odiō dōnat urbs obtineō Cicerō Caesar gerō causā moenia nūntiō vincō ille mittō missus cui homōque cōnsul exīstimō illīus ūnīus sīc nōn mīles dīves vīs velīs virtūtem cūstōdem temporis laudāvērunt laudāveram.

LESSON II

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

87. *NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR*

a. The **Nominative** is the case of the **Subject**.

b. The **Accusative** is the case of the **Direct Object.**

NOUNS (DECLENSIONS I AND II)

Examples and Case-Endings [1]

	(I) f.	(II) m.	(II) n.
	cūra, *care*	mūrus, *wall*	bellum, *war*
	(base,[1] **cūr-**)	(base, mūr-)	(base, bell-)
	Endings	Endings	Endings
NOM.	cūra **-a**	**mūrus -us**	bel**lum -um**
ACC.	cūra**m -am**	mūru**m -um**	bel**lum -um**

c. The First Declension is sometimes called the **ā-** Declension, because the stem [1] always ends in **-ā**.

In the same way the Second Declension is called the **o-** Declension, as its stem always ends in **-o**. Thus the stem of **cūra** is **cūrā-**, of **mūrus**, **mūro-**, of **bellum**, **bello-**.

d. The masculine form of an adjective of the Second and First [2] Declensions has the same case-endings as **mūrus**; the feminine form the same endings as **cūra**; the neuter form the same endings as **bellum.** Hence:

[1] See Introd. 25.

[2] The masculine forms of these adjectives stand first, and are of the Second Declension. Hence it seems better to call them adjectives of the "Second and First Declensions" than of the "First and Second."

ADJECTIVES (DECLENSIONS II AND I)

Example and Case-Endings

	(II) m.	(I) f.	(II) n.
Nom.	magn**us** -**us**	magn**a** -**a**	magn**um** -**um**
	great	(base, magn-)	
Acc.	magn**um** -**um**	magn**am** -**am**	magn**um** -**um**

NOUN WITH QUALIFYING ADJECTIVE

Nom.	magn**us** m**ūrus**	magn**a** c**ūra**	magn**um** bell**um**
	a (or *the*) *great wall*	*a* (or *the*) *great care*	*a* (or *the*) *great war*
Acc.	magn**um** m**ūrum**	magn**am** c**ūram**	magn**um** bell**um**

e. There is no article in Latin. *The*, *an*, or *a* may be supplied in translating nouns into English as best suits the meaning. (See Introd. **12.**)

f. Nouns of the First Declension are for the most part feminine; those of the Second Declension ending in **-us** are masculine; those ending in **-um** are neuter. (See Introd. **32** *a* and note.)

g. An adjective takes the same gender, number, and case as the noun it qualifies.

88. Rule. — *An adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun (or pronoun) it qualifies.*

89. VOCABULARY

bellum, *war.*	**equus,** *horse.*	**pugna,** *battle.*
campus, *field.*	**flamma,** *flame.*	**silva,** *forest.*
causa, *cause, reason.*	**fossa,** *ditch.*	**templum,** *temple.*
cūra, *care.*	**locus,** *place.*	**terra,** *earth, land.*
dōnum, *gift.*	**mūrus,** *wall.*	**via,** *way.*

h. All Latin words of two syllables are accented upon the first syllable. (See Introd. **71** *a.*)

90. EXERCISES

Examine the words in the vocabulary and:

1. Select all the nouns of the First Declension.
2. Select all the nouns of the Second Declension.
3. State the gender of each noun (see *f.*).
4. Give the accusative singular of each noun.

LESSON III

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE PLURAL

NOUNS (DECLENSIONS I AND II)

Examples and Case-Endings

91.

	(I) f.		(II) m.		(II) n.	
	cūra, *care* (base, cūr-)		mūrus, *wall* (base, mūr-)		bellum, *war* (base, bell-)	
		Endings		Endings		Endings
Nom.	cūrae	-ae	mūrī	-ī	bella	-a
Acc.	cūrās	-ās	mūrōs	-ōs	bella	-a

ADJECTIVES (DECLENSIONS II AND I)

Example and Case-Endings

magnus, *great*

	(II) m.		(I) f.		(II) n.	
Nom.	magnī	-ī	magnae	-ae	magna	-a
Acc.	magnōs	-ōs	magnās	-ās	magna	-a

NOUN WITH QUALIFYING ADJECTIVE

NOM.	magnī mūrī	magnae cūrae	magna bella
ACC.	magnōs mūrōs	magnās cūrās	magna bella

92. **VOCABULARY**

ADJECTIVES

altus, alta, altum, *high, deep.*
bonus, bona, bonum, *good.*
cārus, cāra, cārum, *dear, precious.*
clārus, clāra, clārum, *famous.*
lātus, lāta, lātum, *broad.*
longus, longa, longum, *long.*
magnus, magna, magnum, *great.*
malus, mala, malum, *bad.*
mīrus, mīra, mīrum, *wonderful.*
novus, nova, novum, *new.*
parvus, parva, parvum, *small.*

93. **EXERCISES**

Select such adjectives from the vocabulary of this lesson as will give sensible English meanings in connection with the nouns in the vocabulary of Lesson I, and join them with each noun of that vocabulary in the proper form for agreement (see **88**):

1. In the nominative singular (the case of the SUBJECT).
2. In the nominative plural (the case of the SUBJECT).
3. In the accusative singular (the case of the DIRECT OBJECT).
4. In the accusative plural (the case of the DIRECT OBJECT).

LESSON IV

VERBS

CONJUGATION I (Ā VERBS) **CONJUGATION II (Ē VERBS)**

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE, PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

94. laudā′**re**, *to praise* (stem, laudā-) lau′dō, *I praise*
docē′**re**, *to teach* (stem, docē-) do′ceō, *I teach*

a. The final vowel of the stem of a verb, which may be found by dropping the ending **-re** of the present infinitive active, is called the characteristic vowel. Thus we see that **laudā-re** is an **ā-** verb, or of the First Conjugation, having the characteristic vowel **-ā**, and **docē-re** an **ē-** verb, or of the Second Conjugation, having the characteristic vowel **-ē**.

INFLECTION OF PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

CONJUGATION I

		Singular	Personal Endings
PER. 1.	lau′dō	*I praise, am praising, do praise.*	**-ō**
2.	lau′dās	*You praise, are praising, do praise.*	**-s**
3.	lau′dat	*He praises, is praising, does praise.*	**-t**
		Plural	
1.	laudā′**mus**	*We praise, are praising, do praise.*	**-mus**
2.	laudā′**tis**	*You praise, are praising, do praise.*	**-tis**
3.	lau′**dant**	*They praise, are praising, do praise.*	**-nt**

CONJUGATION II

		Singular	
1.	do′ceō	*I teach, am teaching, do teach.*	**-ō**
2.	do′cēs	*You teach, are teaching, do teach.*	**-s**
3.	do′cet	*He teaches, is teaching, does teach.*	**-t**

Plural

1.	docē'mus	*We teach, are teaching, do teach.*	**-mus**
2.	docē'tis	*You teach, are teaching, do teach.*	**-tis**
3.	do'cent	*They teach, are teaching, do teach.*	**-nt**

b. Memorize the endings carefully; these show the person (and number) of each form, and hence are called personal endings. In a Latin sentence, when no subject (noun or pronoun) is expressed, these endings are to be translated into English by the personal pronouns, *I, thou* (*you*), *he, we, you, they.*

c. In the first person singular of the First Conjugation the characteristic vowel of the stem (**-ā**) contracts with **-ō**, the personal ending, and is shortened in the third person singular and plural. In the first person singular of the Second Conjugation the characteristic vowel (**-ē**) is not dropped before the **-ō** of the personal ending, but is shortened in quantity. The **ē** is also shortened in the third person singular and plural.

d. In pronouncing words of two syllables in Latin the first of the two (penult, the next to the last) receives the accent (stress of voice) (see, for example, **ter'ra,** *land;* **sil'va,** *wood*), but in words of more than two syllables the accent falls one syllable nearer the beginning of the word (on the antepenult) unless the second syllable from the end is a long syllable. **Ha'beō;** but **habē'tis.** (See Introd. **71** *a* and *b*.)

95. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Parvum campum habeō.** *I have a small field.*
2. **Equus magnam flammam videt.** *The horse sees the great flame.*

e. In the first of these sentences there is no subject nominative expressed with the verb **habeō**. Therefore the personal ending **-ō** of **habeō** is rendered into English by the personal pronoun of the first person singular, *I*. But in the second sentence **equus** in the nominative case is the subject of the verb **videt**, and no separate translation of the personal ending **-t** is needed.

f. In the first sentence **campum** in the accusative case is the direct object of the verb **habeō**; so in the second sentence **flammam** in the accusative case is the direct object of the verb **videt**.

g. The adjective **parvum** in sentence 1 is of the same gender, number, and case as **campum**; also **magnam** in sentence 2 is of the same gender, number, and case as **flammam**, the noun which it qualifies.

h. The verb **videt** has the same person and number as its subject nominative, **equus**.

i. The verb of a Latin sentence is usually placed at the end.

96. Rule. — *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.*

97. Rule. — *The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case.*

98. Rule. — *A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

99. VOCABULARY

aedificō,	*I build.*	**aedificāre,**	*to build.*
dēleō,	*I destroy.*	**dēlēre,**	*to destroy.*
doceō,	*I teach.*	**docēre,**	*to teach.*
habeō,	*I have.*	**habēre,**	*to have.*
laudō,	*I praise.*	**laudāre,**	*to praise.*
līberō,	*I set free.*	**līberāre,**	*to set free.*

moneō,	*I advise.*	**monēre,**	*to advise.*
nārrō,	*I tell, describe, relate.*	**nārrāre,**	*to tell.*
teneō,	*I hold.*	**tenēre,**	*to hold.*
timeō,	*I fear.*	**timēre,**	*to fear.*
videō,	*I see.*	**vidēre,**	*to see.*
vocō,	*I call.*	**vocāre,**	*to call.*

-que, conjunction *and* (joined to the end of a word and translated before it; as, **aedificō dēleōque**, *I build and I destroy*).

j. Inflect the present indicative active of each of the verbs in the above vocabulary; determine whether you are to imitate **laudō** or **doceō** by the characteristic vowel of each as seen in its present infinitive.

100. EXERCISES

1. Viam novam[1] laudō. **2.** Silvās altās[1] videt. **3.** Bonam[1] causam habētis. **4.** Longam viam timēmus. **5.** Pugnās clārās nārrat. **6.** Equōs bonōs habent. **7.** Malum bellum nārrant. **8.** Mīram terram habēmus. **9.** Magnam flammam vidētis. **10.** Terrās lātās laudant. **11.** Nova bella nārrat. **12.** Magna dōna laudās. **13.** Mūrōs altōs fossāsque lātās dēlent. **14.** They see the broad fields. **15.** You are telling of[2] wonderful gifts. **16.** You have high forests and broad fields. **17.** He is building and destroying temples. **18.** I see the little wall. **19.** He fears wicked wars. **20.** He sets free the horses.

[1] An adjective usually follows the noun it qualifies in Latin; it is more emphatic if placed before its noun.

[2] I. e., *describing*, **nārrō**.

LESSON V

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES COMPLETED

101. **NOUNS (DECLENSIONS I AND II)**

Examples and Case-Endings

	(I) usually f.		(II) m.		(II) n.	
	cūra, *care*		mūrus, *wall*		bellum, *war*	
Stems	cūrā-		mūro-		bello-	
	(base, cūr-)		(base, mūr-)		(base, bell-)	
			Singular			
		Endings		Endings		Endings
Nom.	cūra	-a	mūrus	-us	bellum	-um
Gen.	cūrae	-ae	mūrī	-ī	bellī	-ī
Dat.	cūrae	-ae	mūrō	-ō	bellō	-ō
Acc.	cūram	-am	mūrum	-um	bellum	-um
Voc.			mūre	-e		
Abl.	cūrā	-ā	mūrō	-ō	bellō	-ō
			Plural			
Nom.	cūrae	-ae	mūrī	-ī	bella	-a
Gen.	cūrārum	-ārum	mūrōrum	-ōrum	bellōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	cūrīs	-īs	mūrīs	-īs	bellīs	-īs
Acc.	cūrās	-ās	mūrōs	-ōs	bella	-a
Abl.	cūrīs	-īs	mūrīs	-īs	bellīs	-īs

102. English equivalents of the different cases:

Nom. *care, wall, war* (case of the subject).
Gen. *of care, of the wall, of the war.*
Dat. *to* or *for care, to* or *for a wall, to* or *for a war.*
Acc. *care, wall, war* (case of direct object).
Voc. (case of address).
Abl. *with, from, by care, a wall, a war.*

a. Translate the plurals in the same way.

b. These three Latin nouns, taken in the following order,

Nom.	mūrus	cūra	bellum
Gen.	mūrī	cūrae	bellī
Dat.	mūrō	cūrae	bellō, etc. —

show how adjectives of the Second and First Declensions are declined.

ADJECTIVE (DECLENSIONS II AND I) WITH NOUN

Singular

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	magnus mūrus	magna cūra	magnum bellum
Gen.	magnī mūrī	magnae cūrae	magnī bellī
Dat.	magnō mūrō	magnae cūrae	magnō bellō
Acc.	magnum mūrum	magnam cūram	magnum bellum
Voc.	magne mūre		
Abl.	magnō mūrō	magnā cūrā	magnō bellō

Plural

Nom.	magnī mūrī	magnae cūrae	magna bella
Gen.	magnōrum mūrōrum	magnārum cūrārum	magnōrum bellōrum
Dat.	magnīs mūrīs	magnīs cūrīs	magnīs bellīs
Acc.	magnōs mūrōs	magnās cūrās	magna bella
Abl.	magnīs mūrīs	magnīs cūrīs	magnīs bellīs

c. The vocative, the case used in addressing a person, has a form identical with that of the nominative in all nouns of all declensions, singular and plural, except in the singular of masculine nouns of the Second Declension ending in **-us**. For that reason it is not given as a distinct case in printing declensions in this

book, except in the vocative of these nouns in **-us** of the Second Declension.

d. Nouns and adjectives in **-us** of the Second Declension masculine have a vocative singular in **-e**, but such forms rarely occur.

e. In the endings of the two declensions observe which are just alike; for example, the datives plural. Also observe those endings which are nearly alike; for example, the accusatives singular and the accusatives plural.

103. VOCABULARY

fābula, -ae, f., *story, fable.*
fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune.*
lingua, -ae, f., *language, tongue.*
patria, -ae, f., *native land, native country.*
poena, -ae, f., *punishment.*
rēgīna, -ae, f., *queen.*
rīpa, -ae, f., *bank.*
servus, -ī, m., *slave.*

104. EXERCISES

1. Fossārum longārum. **2.** Pugna clāra. **3.** Parvīs dōnīs. **4.** Templō novō. **5.** Causārum novārum. **6.** Rēgīnae bonae. **7.** Lātīs silvīs. **8.** Equōrum mīrōrum. **9.** Lātī campī. **10.** Bona fortūna. **11.** Servō malō. **12.** Viārum clārārum. **13.** Alta rīpa. **14.** Fābulīs longīs. **15.** Linguae malae. **16.** To the broad wall. **17.** Of the high bank. **18.** Of the broad fields. **19.** O the good story. **20.** To the great temples. **21.** By small ditch. **22.** Of new reasons. **23.** To the dear queen. **24.** With the new language. **25.** Of the dear native land.

LESSON VI

MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

THE DATIVE, THE CASE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT

105. VOCABULARY

agricola, -ae, m., *farmer.*
Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., *the Belgians, a tribe of Gauls.*
incola, -ae, m., *inhabitant.*
nauta, -ae, m., *sailor.*
perfuga, -ae, m., *deserter.*
pīrāta, -ae, m., *pirate.*
poēta, -ae, m., *poet.*
scrība, -ae, m., *clerk.*

VERBS

dō, dare,[1] *give.*
mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, *show.*
respondeō, respondēre, *reply.*

a. The nouns of this vocabulary, being used chiefly of males, were always regarded by the Romans as masculine. They have the same case-endings as the feminine nouns, and can be distinguished from them only by their meanings. An adjective in agreement with one of them must always have the masculine endings. For example, **agricola bonus**, *a good farmer;* **nauta bonus** (not **bona**), *a good sailor.*

b Observe that of the five nouns of this vocabulary which have three syllables, two only are accented upon the penult, which is long; **pīrā'ta** and **poē'ta.** The three others (**agri'cola in'cola** and **per'fuga**) have short penults and are accented one syllable nearer the beginning of the word (on the antepenult).

c. Note that **poēta** contains three syllables.

[1] The **a** of the infinitive of this verb of the first conjugation is short. See Introd. **79** *a.*

THE INDIRECT OBJECT

106. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Perfuga nautīs causam nārrat.** *The deserter tells the reason to the sailors.*
2. **Scrībae poētīs dōna mōnstrant.** *The clerks point out the gifts to the poets.*

A word in the first of these sentences answers to the question: What does he tell? Namely, **causam**, *the reason*, which is put in the accusative as the direct object of the verb.

A second word in the same sentence answers to the question: To whom does he tell the reason? Namely, **nautīs**, *to the sailors.* This object *to which* is less directly affected by the action of the verb, and is called the *Indirect Object*, as the other is called the *Direct Object*, of the action of the verb. In the second sentence, in the same way, **dōna** serves as the *Direct Object* and **poētīs** as the *Indirect Object* of the action of the verb **mōnstrant.**

107. Rule. — *The Indirect Object of the action of the verb is in the Dative case.*

108. EXERCISES

1. Clārus poēta scrībīs longa bella nārrat.
2. Scrībae Belgīs mīrās pugnās nārrant.
3. Pīrātae perfugās dēlent campōsque lātōs incolīs dant.
4. Incolae magnam silvam perfugīs mōnstrant.
5. Templum magnum altumque nautīs incola mōnstrat.

6. Agricola bonus nautīs respondet.[1]
7. Incolae fossam longam scrībīs mōnstrant.
8. Agricolae bonīs nautīs magna dōna dant.
9. The deserters point out the broad fields to the sailors.
10. The sailors give the new lands to the farmers.
11. The queen describes the famous battle to the poet.
12. The Belgians point out the way to the deserters.

[1] Respondet, *gives a reply to*, contains its own direct object.

LESSON VII

SECOND DECLENSION (*continued*), NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES WITH STEMS IN **-RO**

PLACE WHERE

109. **EXAMPLES**

puer, m., *boy* (Stem, puero- ; base, puer-)		ager, m., *field* (Stem, agro- ; base, agr-)	
	Singular		
			Endings
Nom.	puer	ager	
Gen.	puerī	agrī	**-ī**
Dat.	puerō	agrō	**-ō**
Acc.	puer**um**	agr**um**	**-um**
Abl.	puerō	agrō	**-ō**
	Plural		
Nom.	puerī	agrī	**-ī**
Gen.	puer**ōrum**	agr**ōrum**	**-ōrum**
Dat.	puerīs	agrīs	**-īs**
Acc.	puerōs	agrōs	**-ōs**
Abl.	puerīs	agrīs	**-īs**

a. These nouns have dropped the ending **-us** of the nominative singular and **-e** of the vocative singular; otherwise they have the same endings as **mūrus**; see footnote p. 46.

b. Most of these words are declined like **ager.** The **e** seen in the nominative singular ending appears only there and in the vocative singular. A much smaller number retain the **e** throughout and are declined like **puer,** only one other of these, **līberī,** appearing in this book.

c. Adjectives corresponding to these nouns occur. The feminine endings are like those of **magna,** the neuter like those of **magnum.**

110. EXAMPLES

miser, *unhappy*
(Stem, misero-, base, miser-)

Singular

NOM.	**miser**	**misera**	**miserum**
GEN.	**miserī**	**miserae**	**miserī**
DAT.	**miserō**	**miserae**	**miserō**
ACC.	**miserum**	**miseram**	**miserum**
ABL.	**miserō**	**miserā**	**miserō**

Plural

NOM.	**miserī**	**miserae**	**misera**
GEN.	**miserōrum**	**miserārum**	**miserōrum**
DAT.	**miserīs**	**miserīs**	**miserīs**
ACC.	**miserōs**	**miserās**	**misera**
ABL.	**miserīs**	**miserīs**	**miserīs**

sacer, *sacred*
(Stem, sacro-, base, sacr-[1])

Singular

NOM.	**sacer**	**sacra**	**sacrum**
GEN.	**sacrī**	**sacrae**	**sacrī**
DAT.	**sacrō**	**sacrae**	**sacrō**
ACC.	**sacrum**	**sacram**	**sacrum**
ABL.	**sacrō**	**sacrā**	**sacrō**

[1] In the base of **ager** (**agr-**) and of **sacer** (**sacr-**) and similar words, owing to the difficulty of pronunciation, an **e** has been inserted in the nominative singular (masculine).

		Plural	
NOM.	sacrī	sacrae	sacra
GEN.	sacrōrum	sacrārum	sacrōrum
DAT.	sacrīs	sacrīs	sacrīs
ACC.	sacrōs	sacrās	sacra
ABL.	sacrīs	sacrīs	sacrīs

PLACE WHERE

111. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Puer in mūrō est.** *The boy is on the wall.*
2. **Timeō pīrātās in silvīs.** *I fear pirates in the woods.*

The words **in mūrō** of the first sentence answer the question *Where is the boy?* and **in silvīs** of the second sentence the question *Where do I fear pirates?*

These sentences illustrate how the PLACE WHERE is usually expressed in Latin.

112. Rule. — PLACE WHERE *is regularly expressed by the ablative case with the preposition* **in.**[1]

113. VOCABULARY

ager, agrī, m., *field.*
in, prep. with abl., *in, on.*
liber, librī, m., *book.*
magister, magistrī, m., *teacher.*
miser, misera, miserum, *unhappy, wretched.*
nōn, adv., *not.*
puer, puerī, m., *boy.*
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beautiful.*
sacer, sacra, sacrum, *sacred.*
ubi, interrog. and rel. adv., *where.*
vir, virī, m. (see Appendix, *416*), *man.*
est, (*he, she, it*) *is.*
sunt, (*they*) *are.*

[1] When translating a Latin preposition with the ablative, omit the usual *from, with, by,* and use, instead of one of these, the meaning of the Latin preposition only.

114. EXERCISES

1. Virī et puerī nōn sunt in agrīs.
2. Malus servus poenam timet.
3. Belgae viās in silvīs nōn habent.
4. Templa sacra in viīs vidēmus.
5. Puerī miserī in altā fossā sunt.[1]
6. Est[1] magna flamma in silvā.
7. Sunt parvae fossae in lātīs agrīs.
8. Agricolae in campō equōs vident.
9. The teacher sees the unhappy boys on the wall.
10. The pirates are not in the road.
11. Where are the wicked slaves?
12. The slave has the beautiful book in the field.

LESSON VIII

115. REVIEW

1. Of the following forms

a. Give the nominative singular; *b*. State where each form is found; *c*. Give the meaning of the form:

1. Fossae. 2. Librī. 3. Mūrō. 4. Silvīs. 5. Templa.
6. Templī. 7. Equōs. 8. Causīs. 9. Viārum. 10. Serve.

2. Give the case-form of the subject, of the direct object, of the indirect object, for each of the following nouns in the singular and the plural with meanings:

1. Pugna. 2. Campus. 3. Incola. 4. Bellum. 5. Magister.

[1] **Est** and **sunt** are frequently found not at the end of the sentence or clause. (See Lesson IV, *i*.) Often they may be translated by "*There is*," "*There are*."

3. State the rules

a. For the agreement of adjectives; *b*. For the agreement of verbs.

4. Give the meaning of the following forms, and tell where they are found:

1. Laudātis. 2. Videt. 3. Dēlēmus. 4. Aedificat. 5. Līberō.
6. Sunt. 7. Monēs. 8. Est. 9. Nārrās. 10. Damus.[1]

5. Write in Latin:

1. You are destroying.
2. They see.
3. We are holding.
4. He calls.
5. They fear.
6. You set free.
7. You (singular) praise.
8. He replies.
9. We give.
10. You (plural) show.

6. Give the personal endings of the Present Indicative Active. Do these differ in the Second Conjugation from those of the First? Give the characteristic vowel of each conjugation. Give the endings of the Present Indicative Active combined with these vowels.

7. Why is the First Declension called the *ā*- and the Second the *o*- Declension? Give the stem and the base of silva, campus, templum, puer, pugna.

8. Which syllable of a word is called the ultima? Which the penult? Which the antepenult? Of which syllable in a Latin word is it most necessary to know the quantity? State how you decide where to place the accent in pronouncing a Latin word.

9. Pronounce, placing the accent carefully, and giving

[1] See **105**, footnote.

your reason for so doing: viarum, murorum, bellum, laudatis, videtis, timere, libero, amare, teneo [1], amamus.

10. Give the meaning of the following words; tell the gender, and show how you determine it: dōnum, agricola, bellă, nauta, puer, templīs, cūrae, nautārum, magistrō, servum, mūrum, equōs.

LESSON IX

GENITIVE CASE, APPOSITIVES, PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF SUM, BE

116. **EXAMPLES**

PRESENT

Singular		*Plural*	
1. sum	*I am*	su'mus	*We are*
2. es	*You are*	es'tis	*You are*
3. est	*He is*	sunt	*They are*

IMPERFECT

1. e'ram	*I was*	erā'mus	*We were*
2. e'rās	*You were*	erā'tis	*You were*
3. e'rat	*He was*	e'rant	*They were*

117. **ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES**

1. **Puer bonus est.** *The boy is good.*
2. **Equus pulcher est.** *The horse is handsome.*
3. **Puer servus est.** *The boy is a slave.*
4. **Vir est** [2] **Gallus.** *The man is a Gaul.*

[1] A vowel standing before another vowel is generally short (Introd. **73** *c*).

[2] **Est** (sum) is an exception to the rule given in **95** *i*.

a. The verb **est** by itself does not make a complete statement in these sentences; it needs the help of the adjectives **bonus** and **pulcher** in the first two, and of the nouns **servus** and **Gallus** in the last two, to make a complete idea. Together with these adjectives and nouns it forms in each case a complete predicate. Hence the adjectives and nouns are called *Predicate Nouns* and *Adjectives*, the adjectives always agreeing with the subjects in gender, number, and case, and the nouns agreeing in case. (Introd. **51–53.**)

5. Agrī Belgārum sunt lātī. *The fields of the Belgians are broad.*

6. Amīcī Rōmānōrum sunt multī. *The friends of the Romans are many.*

b. The Genitive case is the equivalent of the English Possessive, and, in general, of the English preposition *of* followed by the Objective case.

7. Barbarī, servī Rōmānōrum, in castrīs sunt. *The Barbarians, slaves of the Romans, are in the camp.*

c. The word **servī** is added to the word **barbarī** to describe it and is put in the same case, the nominative. But **Rōmānōrum,** though describing **servī,** does not denote the same persons, and so is put in the genitive.

d. **Servī** is called an appositive of **barbarī,** or is said to stand in apposition with it. An Appositive differs from a Predicate Noun or Adjective only in this, that it is added directly to the word it describes, *i. e.*, with no verb intervening. Thus in the third and fourth of the illustrative sentences above, **Gallus** and **servus** with **est** form predicates to **vir** and **puer,** and are called Predicate Nouns, not Appositives.

118. Rule. — *A noun or pronoun limiting another noun or pronoun and not denoting the same person or thing is put in the genitive.*

119. Rule. — *A noun which describes another noun or pronoun, and denotes the same person or thing, is put in the same case and is called an Appositive.*

120. VOCABULARY

amīcus, -ī, m., *friend.*
barbarus, -ī, m., *barbarian.*
castra, -ōrum, n. pl., *camp.*
et, conj., *and* : **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*
Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul.*
lēgātus, -ī, m., *ambassador, lieutenant.*
līber, lībera, līberum, *free.*
multus, multa, multum, *much, many.*
oppidum, -ī, n., *town.*
Rōmānus, -a -um, *Roman;* as noun, **Rōmānus, -ī,** m., *a Roman.*
scūtum, -ī, n., *shield.*
socius -ī, m., *ally.* (See p. 58, ftn. 1.)

121. EXERCISES

1. Multī Belgae Rōmānōrum amīcī erant.
2. Barbarī servōs Rōmānōrum līberant.
3. Ubi erant scūta et equī Rōmānōrum ?
4. Lēgātī sociōs Rōmānōrum timent.
5. Multī barbarī, incolae agrōrum, sunt amīcī Rōmānōrum.
6. Barbarus līber[1] erat.
7. Librī[2] lēgātōrum sunt novī.
8. In Belgārum[3] agrīs Rōmānī castra aedificant.
9. The allies are Belgians.
10. Where is the Roman, the ambassador's friend ?
11. He is in[3] the town of the allies.
12. Many allies are giving gifts to the Romans.

[1] An adjective; observe that the quantity of the i differs from the same vowel of the noun **liber,** *book.*

[2] A noun; how do the noun (liber) and the adjective (līber) differ in declension?

[3] When a noun governed by a preposition also has a limiting genitive, a frequent order is (1) preposition, (2) genitive, (3) noun.

LESSON X

CONJUGATION III (E-VERBS) CONJUGATION IV (Ī-VERBS)

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE, PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

122. EXAMPLES

III	re′gere, *to rule* (*stem*, rege-)	re′gō, *I rule*
IV	mūnī′re, *to fortify* (*stem*, mūnī-)	mū′niō, *I fortify*

a. The characteristic vowel of **regere** is **ĕ**; of **mūnīre** is **ī**. (See Lesson IV, **94** *a.*)

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, INFLECTION

CONJUGATION III

	Singular	Personal Endings
1. re′gō	*I rule, am ruling, do rule*	**-ō**
2. re′gis	*You rule, are ruling, do rule*	**-s**
3. re′git	*He rules, is ruling, does rule*	**-t**
	Plural	
1. re′gimus	*We rule, are ruling, do rule*	**-mus**
2. re′gitis	*You rule, are ruling, do rule*	**-tis**
3. re′gunt	*They rule, are ruling, do rule*	**-nt**

CONJUGATION IV

	Singular	
1. mū′niō	*I fortify, am fortifying, do fortify*	**-ō**
2. mū′nīs	*You fortify, are fortifying, do fortify*	**-s**
3. mū′nit.	*He fortifies, is fortifying, does fortify*	**-t**
	Plural	
1 mūnī′mus	*We fortify, are fortifying, do fortify*	**-mus**
2. mūnī′tis	*You fortify, are fortifying, do fortify*	**-tis**
3. mū′niunt	*They fortify, are fortifying, do fortify*	**-nt**

b. The *e* of the stem of the Third Conjugation disappears before *ō* of the first person singular, and is replaced by *u* before *-nt* of the third person plural; elsewhere it becomes *i*.

c. The *i* of the Fourth Conjugation is retained throughout the tense; in the first and second persons plural the *i* is long, but in the same places of the Third Conjugation the *i* (replacing *-e* of the stem) is short. Observe that the *ī* of the Fourth is shortened in the same places as the *ē* of the Second. (See Lesson IV, **94** *c*, and Introd. **73** *a*, and **75**).

123. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Virī in campum veniunt. *The men come into the field.*

2. Belgae lēgātōs in castra dūcunt. *The Belgians are leading the ambassadors into the camp.*

3. Geruntne bellum? *Are they waging war?*

4. Num Gallī oppidum dēfendunt? *The Gauls are not defending the town, are they?*

5. Nōnne Rōmānī servōs reperiunt? *Do the Romans not find slaves?*

d. Questions in Latin regularly contain either

1. One of the ordinary interrogatives (*i. e.*, the words meaning *who, which, where, when, how*, and similar words); or

2. A special interrogative particle, as:

-ne (added to the end of an important word), which simply serves to make the sentence interrogative (see sentence 3), or

nōnne, which implies that the answer to the question will be "yes" (see sentence 5), or

num, which looks for the answer "no" (see sentence 4).

124. VOCABULARY

cūstōdiō,	*I guard.*	**cūstōdīre,**	*to guard.*
dēfendō,	*I defend.*	**dēfendere,**	*to defend.*
dūcō,	*I lead.*	**dūcere,**	*to lead.*
gerō,	*I carry on, wage.*	**gerere,**	*to carry on, wage.*
intellegō,	*I understand.*	**intellegere,**	*to understand.*
mittō,	*I send.*	**mittere,**	*to send.*
mūniō,	*I fortify.*	**mūnīre,**	*to fortify.*
regō,	*I rule.*	**regere,**	*to rule.*
reperiō,	*I find.*	**reperīre**	*to find.*
sciō,	*I know.*	**scīre,**	*to know.*
veniō,	*I come.*	**venīre,**	*to come.*
vinciō,	*I bind.*	**vincīre,**	*to bind.*

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

in, *into.* **ad,** *to, towards.*

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE

ē, ex, *from, out of.* **cum,** *with.*

cūr (interrog. adv.), *why?* **-ne**, **nōnne**, **num** } interrogative particles. (See above, *d.*)

e. Determine by its characteristic vowel (see Lesson IV, *a*) to which conjugation each of the verbs in this vocabulary belongs, and inflect it in the Present Indicative Active (like **regō** if of the Third, and like **mūniō** if of the Fourth Conjugation).

125. EXERCISES

1. Suntne[1] multī Belgae in castrīs?
2. Cūr lēgātōs ex castrīs ad Gallōs, sociōs Rōmānōrum, mittis?

[1] See p. 48, footnote.

3. Gallī lēgātōs in agrōs ex oppidō nōn mittunt.
4. Num Rōmānī līberant virōs? Num cūstōdiunt equōs?
5. Sociī lēgātōs Rōmānōrum nōn dēfendunt.
6. Multī barbarī, sociī Belgārum, cum lēgātīs in Rōmānōrum castra veniunt.
7. Rōmānī bellum cum sociīs amīcīsque Belgārum gerunt.
8. Cūr virī et castra et oppidum mūniunt?
9. The Romans find both many horses and many shields in the camp.
10. They send ambassadors, friends of the Romans, to the camp.
11. The Romans, friends of the barbarians, are binding the Belgians in the fields.
12. Why do you not understand?

LESSON XI

THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT

126.

I laudō

EXAMPLES

	Singular	Tense Sign and Personal Ending
1.	laudā'**bam**, *I praised, was praising, did praise.*	**-ba-m**
2.	laudā'**bās**, *You praised, were praising, did praise.*	**-bā-s**
3.	laudā'**bat**, *He praised, was praising, did praise.*	**-ba-t**
	Plural	
1.	laudābā'**mus**, *We praised, were praising, did praise.*	**-bā-mus**
2.	laudābā'**tis**, *You praised, were praising, did praise.*	**-bā-tis**
3.	laudā'**bant**, *They praised, were praising, did praise.*	**-ba-nt**

II doceō	III regō	IV mūniō
	Singular	
1. docē′**bam**	regē′**bam**	mūniē′**bam**
2. docē′**bās**	regē′**bās**	mūniē′**bās**
3. docē′**bat**	regē′**bat**	mūniē′**bat**
	Plural	
1. docēbā′**mus**	regēbā′**mus**	mūniēbā′**mus**
2. docēbā′**tis**	regēbā′**tis**	mūniēbā′**tis**
3. docē′**bant**	regē′**bant**	mūniē′**bant**

a. The tense-sign of the imperfect indicative is **-bā-**, which is joined to the stem of the verb and followed by the personal endings; the *ā* is shortened before *m*, *t*, and *nt*.

b. The long characteristic vowels **-ā** of the First, and **-ē** of the Second Conjugations appear unchanged before the tense-sign **-bā-**. These characteristic vowels alone make it possible to distinguish between these two conjugations in this tense.

c. The imperfect has the same form in the Second and the Third Conjugations, as the stem-vowel of the Third is lengthened in this tense before the tense-sign **-bā-**.

d. In the Fourth Conjugation an **-ē-** is inserted between the stem and the tense-sign **-bā-**.

ABLATIVE OF MEANS

127. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Pūblius virōs pecūniā adiuvābat. *Publius helped the men with money.*

2. Servus dominum tēlō dēfendēbat. *The slave defended his master with his spear.*

Pecūniā in the first of these sentences answers the question "*By what means was Publius helping the men?*" In the second **tēlō** tells "*with what instrument*" the slave defended his master.

128. Rule. — *The ablative is used to express the means by which, or the instrument with which, an action is accomplished.*

129. VOCABULARY

audācia, -ae, f., *boldness.*
auxilium, -ī,[1] n., *help.*
dominus, -ī, m., *master.*
fīlius, -ī,[1] m., *son.*
nūntius, -ī,[1] m., *messenger.*
pecūnia, -ae, f., *money.*
praemium, -ī,[1] n., *reward.*
Pūblius, -ī,[1] m., *Publius.*
tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon, spear.*
tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet.*
adiuvō, adiuvāre, *help.*
impediō, impedīre, *hinder.*
moveō, movēre, *move, influence*

130. EXERCISES

1. Nūntius virōs tubā vocābat.
2. Amīcōrum auxiliō virī locum dēfendēbant.
3. Impediēbāsne[2] nūntium tēlō?
4. Movēbatne[2] fīlius servum dōnīs praemiīsque?
5. Nōnne virōrum scūta cūstōdiēbās?
6. Servus tēla in viā reperiēbat.
7. Oppidum mūrō fossāque mūniēbāmus.
8. Gallī oppidī templa flammā, incolās tēlīs dēlēbant.
9. The slave did not help (his[3]) master with (his[3]) weapon, did he[5]?
10. The master was summoning[4] the slave into the temple with a trumpet.
11. The master's son gave money to the slaves in the town.
12. The son tried to influence[2] the slave by a reward.

[1] The genitive singular form of nouns ending in **-ius**, or **-ium**, of the Second Declension has but a single **-ī** as its ending, where we might expect **-iī**. For example: **fīlī, auxilī**[6], **praemī, Pūblī**.

[2] The imperfect may sometimes be translated by *tried to* as in this sentence *tried to hinder*. See also sentences 5 and 6. This is called the *conative* use of the imperfect.

[3] Omit.

[4] *calling.*

[5] Translate *did he* by choice of interrog. word; see **123** *d*, 2.

[6] See Introd. **71** *b*.

LESSON XII

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

131. *ABLATIVES OF MANNER AND CAUSE*

EXAMPLES

I laudō

	Singular	Tense Sign and Personal Ending
1. laudā′**bō**,	*I shall praise*, or *shall be praising*.	**-b-ō**
2. laudā′**bis**,	*You will praise*, or *will be praising*.	**-bi-s**
3. laudā′**bit**,	*He will praise*, or *will be praising*.	**-bi-t**
	Plural	
1. laudā′**bimus**,	*We shall praise*, or *shall be praising*.	**-bi-mus**
2. laudā′**bitis**,	*You will praise*, or *will be praising*.	**-bi-tis**
3. laudā′**bunt**,	*They will praise*, or *will be praising*.	**-bu-nt**

II doceō

Singular		*Plural*	
1. docē′**bō**, *I shall teach*, etc.	**-b-ō**	1. docē′**bimus**	**-bi-mus**
2. docē′**bis**	**-bi-s**	2. docē′**bitis**	**-bi-tis**
3. docē′**bit**	**-bi-t**	3. docē′**bunt**	**-bu-nt**

III regō	IV mūniō	
	Singular	
1. re′**gam**, *I shall rule*, etc.	mū′**niam**, *I shall fortify*, etc.	**-a-m**
2. re′**gēs**	mū′**niēs**	**-ē-s**
3. re′**get**	mū′**niet**	**-e-t**
	Plural	
1. regē′**mus**	mūniē′**mus**	**-ē-mus**
2. regē′**tis**	mūniē′**tis**	**-ē-tis**
3. re′**gent**	mū′**nient**	**-e-nt**

a. The tense-sign of the future in the First and Second Conjugations is **-bi-**. This is joined to the stem of the verb and followed by the personal endings.

b. The characteristic vowels **ā** and **ē** of these conjugations remain unchanged before this tense-sign. This serves to distinguish these two conjugations in this tense (see Lesson X, 122, *b*).

c. In the Third and Fourth Conjugations this tense-sign **-bi-** does not occur; but the tense-sign of the first person is **-ā-**, and of the rest of the tense **-ē-**.

d. In the Third Conjugation the characteristic vowel **e** is dropped before this tense-sign; in the Fourth the characteristic vowel **ī** is retained (shortened [1]) throughout.

ABLATIVE OF MANNER AND CAUSE

132. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Eōrum perfidiā oppidum relinquet. *Because of their treachery he will leave the town.*

2. Oppidum cum perfidiā relinquet. *He will treacherously (with treachery) leave the town.*

3. Colōnōs sapientiā laudābit. *He will praise the settlers for*[2] *(their) wisdom.*

4. Magnō studiō sociōs adiuvābit. *He will aid (his) allies with great zeal.*

a. In the first sentence **perfidiā** answers the questions *Owing to what? Why? For what reason?* will he leave the town. So **sapientiā** in the third sentence tells the *reason why* some one will praise.

b. In the second and fourth sentences the ablatives answer the question *How? In what manner?*

133. Rule. — *The ablative is used to give the cause or reason of an action.*

[1] Vowel before another vowel. [2] = *because of.*

134. Rule. — *The ablative, regularly with* **cum**, *is used to express the manner of an action. If the ablative has an adjective modifier,* **cum** *may be omitted* (see sentence 4).

135. VOCABULARY

colōnus, -ī, m., *settler.*
cōpia, -ae, f., *supply,* pl., *troops.*
frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain.*
fuga, -ae, f., *flight.*
gladius, -ī [3], m., *sword.*
perfidia, -ae, f., *treachery.*
prūdentia, -ae, f., *foresight, prudence.*
sapientia, -ae, f., *wisdom.*
scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge.*
studium, -ī [3], n., *zeal, energy.*
augeō, augēre, *increase.*
doleō, dolēre, *grieve.*
iūdicō, iūdicāre, *judge.*
relinquō, relinquere, *leave.*
terreō, terrēre, *terrify.*

136. EXERCISES

1. Num virōs cum sapientiā iūdicābit?
2. Mārcus servōs studiō laudābat.
3. Rōmānōrum perfidiā nūntiōs in Belgās mittam.
4. Nōnne magnō studiō cūrāque amīcōs dēfendet?
5. Magnam cōpiam frūmentī cum perfidiā dēlēbit.
6. Servī dominōs magnā audāciā terrent.
7. Colōnī eōrum[6]que sociī gladiīs oppidum dēfendent.
8. Nūntiōrum audāciā et scientiā viam reperiēmus.
9. He increased the troops of (his [1]) allies with great foresight.
10. With (my [1]) friends' help [2] I shall find the place.
11. The boy with (his [1]) dart boldly [4] tried to hinder the man.
12. They fortified the town diligently and wisely.

[1] Omit.

[2] This ablative may be explained as expressing either cause or means; the two are often difficult to distinguish.

[3] See p. 58, footnote 1.

[4] Do not express by an adverb in Latin; see Illustrative Sentences.

[5] See 130, footnote 2.

[6] *their,* literally *of them* · see next Lesson.

LESSON XIII

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE **IS**

137. *THE FUTURE INDICATIVE OF SUM. DATIVE OF POSSESSOR*

DECLENSION OF IS

	Singular			*Plural*		
NOM.	is	ea	id	iī (eī)	eae	ea
GEN.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)

MEANING:

As an Adjective: *this, that;* plural: *these, those;* it is hardly stronger at times than an emphatic *the*, and agrees with its substantive like any other adjective.

As a Pronoun: *he, she, it;* plural: *these, those, they.*

In the Genitive: *of him* (*his*), *of her* (*hers*), *of it* (*its*); *of them* (*theirs*).

In the Dative: *to him, to her, to it; to them*, etc.

a. Decline together: **is mūrus**; **ea cūra**; **id bellum**.

b. Observe that there is but one form of the genitive singular, in **-ius**, for all three genders, and in **-ī** of the dative singular.

c. Observe that the dative singular has the form **eī**, and the ablative the form **eō** (**eā**). Carefully distinguish these forms from each other.

138. *FUTURE INDICATIVE OF SUM*

1	e'rō, *I shall be.*	e'rimus, *We shall be.*
2.	e'ris, *You will be.*	e'ritis, *You will be.*
3.	e'rit, *He will be.*	e'runt, *They will be.*

139. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Is mūrus est magnus.** *This wall is large* (adjective use of **is**).

2. **Eī pugnam nārrābō.** *I shall describe the battle to him* (pronoun).

3. **Amīcōs eōrum videō.** *I see their friends* (*the friends of them*, pronominal use of **is**).

4. **Ea templa vidēbit.** *He will see these temples* (adjective).

5. **Eum dēfendēbat.** *He defended him* (pronoun).

6. **Eī scūtum est** / or / **Is scūtum habet.** } *He has a shield* (*A shield is to him*).

7. **Fīliō equus est** / or / **Fīlius equum habet.** } *The son has a horse* (*A horse is to the son*).

d. In sentences 6 and 7 the dative denotes the possessor or owner. In English the dative is replaced by the subject nominative, and the verb "have" is used instead of "be." The Latin may express this in the same way, using **habeō**. See the second versions of sentences 6 and 7.

140. Rule. — *The Dative may be used with the verb* **sum** *to denote the possessor.*

141. VOCABULARY

aedificium, -ī,[1] n., *building.*
anteā, adv., *formerly.*
beneficium, -ī,[1] n., *favor.*
dīligentia, -ae, f., *diligence.*
epistula, -ae, f., *letter.*
fortasse, adv., *perhaps.*
īnsula, -ae, f., *island.*
is, ea, id, dem. pron., *this, that,* etc.
saepe, adv., *often.*
semper, adv., *always.*
Sextus, -ī, m., *Sextus.*
verbum, -ī, n., *word.*

[1] See p. 58, footnote 1.

142. EXERCISES

1. Puerō anteā tuba erat.
2. Iīs fortasse magnum praemium erit.
3. Estne eī multa pecūnia in eō aedificiō?
4. Beneficiō Mārcī magna cōpia frūmentī iīs semper erit.
5. Num tēla saepe in agrīs habēbant?
6. Eī dominō multī servī sunt.
7. Rōmānī multōs sociōs habēbant.
8. Fortasse Rōmānīs erunt gladiī tēlaque in eā īnsulā.
9. Did she have the long letters? (*Express in two ways.*)
10. Sextus had many slaves in those buildings.
11. He often had great rewards and favors for[1] (his) boldness and diligence.
12. The Romans always have many horses in that island.

[1] See **132**, Illustrative Sentence **3**.

A Roman Coin

LESSON XIV

143. REVIEW

1. Inflect the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Active of **sum.**

2. Give the Present Infinitive Active, with meaning, of a verb of each of the four conjugations.

3. Inflect the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Active of each of these four verbs.

4. (*a*) Tell where each of the following forms is found; (*b*) Give the Present Indicative Active; (*c*) Inflect the tense throughout; (*d*) Translate the form:

Gerēmus. Erimus. Sumus. Venīs. Veniēs. Intellegam. Dēfendēbam. Regam. Scītis. Dūcit. Cūstōdiēs. Pugnābat. Tenēbās. Dēlēbit. Vidēbimus. Tenent. Venient. Sciēbās. Reperiam. Mittunt. Mittent.

5. Give the Latin for:

He will see. They know. We will come. He will wage. They are destroying. He finds. They will hold. You (pl.) see. He was guarding. They come. They bind. They will defend. They will find. They will be.

6. Place before each of the following nouns the form of the adjective pronoun **is**, which will agree with it, and then translate:

1. —— castra. 2. —— lēgātī. 3. —— agrīs. 4. —— equōrum. 5. —— pecūniā. 6. —— fīliōs. 7. —— dīligentiae. 8. —— dominī. 9. —— perīculō. 10. —— agrōs. 11. —— dominum. 12. —— tubārum. 13. —— agricolae. 14. —— scrība. 15. —— frūmentum. 16. —— praemiōrum. 17. —— nautārum. 18. —— perīculīs. 19. —— cōpiae. 20. —— gladiī.

7. Translate into Latin:

1. Of these friends. 2. This Roman camp (nom.). 3. To these barbarians. 4. With letters. 5. With rewards. 6. With boldness. 7. With a weapon. 8. Because of knowledge. 9. On account of help. 10. Wisely. 11. He has a shield. 12. To wage war with allies and friends. 13. They have money. 14. Owing to danger. 15. In this town.

8. Write in Latin:

1. Do you fear the Romans' many allies? 2. Do you not see these men, the friends of the Romans? 3. You are not sending letters, are you? 4. Will he not come from the camp? 5. They find friends in the town of the barbarians.

9. Translate:

1. Num praemium magnum est? 2. Lēgātī laetī sunt. 3. Nōnne sunt in eō agrō multī Belgae? 4. Ubi equōs reperiēmus? 5. Suntne sociī Rōmānōrum in eō oppidō?

10. Translate into Latin:

1. Why will you wage war? 2. We are guarding the friends of the Romans. 3. Will they send help to the camp? 4. They were sending help, are sending (it), and will send (it). 5. This will aid their friends (the friends of them).

Coin of Caesar

LESSON XV

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION ENDING IN -IŌ

PRESENT, IMPERFECT AND FUTURE OF CAPIŌ, CAPERE; DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

144. *INFLECTION OF CAPIŌ*

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
	Singular	
ca′piō	**capiē′bam**	**ca′piam**
ca′pis	**capiē′bās**	**ca′piēs**
ca′pit	**capiē′bat**	**ca′piet**
	Plural	
ca′pimus	**capiēbā′mus**	**capiē′mus**
ca′pitis	**capiēbā′tis**	**capiē′tis**
ca′piunt	**capiē′bant**	**ca′pient**

a. A small number of verbs of the Third Conjugation ending in **-iō**, which are in constant use, have forms like those of the Fourth Conjugation whenever the **-i-** is followed by a vowel.

b. The first singular and the third plural of the present indicative active have **-i-** before final **-ō** and **-unt** respectively.

c. The **-i-** of the penult in the first and second persons plural is short, as in verbs of the Third Conjugation; also the **-is** final of the second person singular.

d. The forms of the imperfect and future are identical with those of the Fourth Conjugation. Review **mūniō** in these tenses (see Lessons XI and XII).

145. *DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES*

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Puer virō cārus est. *The boy is dear to the man.*

2. Locus oppidō fīnitimus est. *The place is near (neighboring to) the town.*

a. As any verb whose meaning admits it may take a dative, so many adjectives also are followed by a dative, sometimes translated with *to*, sometimes with *for*.

146. Rule. — *Adjectives meaning* **faithful, fit, friendly, like, near, necessary, pleasing, useful,** *and most of those having meanings the opposite of these, take the dative.*

147. VOCABULARY

capiō, capere, *take, seize.*
cupiō, cupere, *desire.*
faciō, facere, *do, make.*
fodiō, fodere, *dig.*
fugiō, fugere, *flee.*
iaciō, iacere, *throw.*
rapiō, rapere, *rob, seize.*

fīdus, -a, -um, *faithful.*
fīnitimus, -a, -um, *near, neighboring.*
grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing.*
īnfēstus, -a, -um, *hostile.*
inimīcus, -a, -um, *unfriendly.*
necessārius, -a, -um, *necessary.*

148. EXERCISES

1. Equī agricolīs necessāriī sunt.
2. Num fossam anteā fodiēbās?
3. Nōnne servī, dominīs inimīcī, saepe fugiunt?
4. Tēla in ea castra saepe iacient.
5. Dōna Belgārum Rōmānī capiēbant.
6. Belgae, iīs fīnitimī, Rōmānīs fīdī erant.
7. Verba Belgārum Rōmānīs semper grāta erant.
8. Agrōs Gallōrum cupiēbant Rōmānī et rapiēbant.
9. I will seize the money in the sacred temple near the road.
10. The pirates seized the supply of food on the island.
11. The inhabitants, hostile to the Romans, built high walls.
12. The slaves dug wide ditches pleasing to the farmers.

LESSON XVI

THE THIRD DECLENSION

149. *ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION*

a. The stems in this declension are divided into consonant and vowel stems according to their final letter.

b. The vowel stems all end in **-i**.

c. The consonant stems end in a mute (Introd. **65** *c*), a liquid, or a nasal (Introd. **65** *a* and *b*).

d. The genitive singular always ends in **-is**.

e. In consonant stems the part of the word which precedes this ending **-is** of the genitive singular, forms the stem of the noun.

EXAMPLES

MUTE STEMS

	prīnceps, *m.* *leader*	eques, *m.* *horseman*	lēx, *f.* *law*	cūstōs, *m.* *guard*	
Stems	(prīncip-)	(equit-)	(lēg-)	(cūstōd-)	
					Case-Endings
Nom.	prīnceps	eques	lēx	cūstōs	**-s**
Gen.	prīncipis	equitis	lēgis	cūstōdis	**-is**
Dat.	prīncipī	equitī	lēgī	cūstōdī	**-ī**
Acc.	prīncipem	equitem	lēgem	cūstōdem	**-em**
Abl.	prīncipe	equite	lēge	cūstōde	**-e**
		Plural			
Nom.	prīncipēs	equitēs	lēgēs	cūstōdēs	**-ēs**
Gen.	prīncipum	equitum	lēgum	cūstōdum	**-um**
Dat.	prīncipibus	equitibus	lēgibus	cūstōdibus	**-ibus**
Acc.	prīncipēs	equitēs	lēgēs	cūstōdēs	**-ēs**
Abl.	prīncipibus	equitibus	lēgibus	cūstōdibus	**-ibus**

f. The only letter ever added to a stem of the Third Declension to form the nominative singular is *s* (*x* is a combination of *cs* or *gs*).

g. Feminine nouns have the same endings as masculine nouns.

h. *T* or *d* at the end of a stem is dropped before *s* of the nominative singular; hence the necessity of learning the stem from the genitive singular.

i. The vowel *i* of the last syllable of the stem of **prīnceps** appears as *e* in the nominative singular. This and similar changes of vowels in the stem and the nominative singular are very common.

j. Strictly speaking, the term "base" cannot be used in the Third Declension, owing to the frequent changes of the stem in the nominative. See Introd. **25**, Note, last paragraph.

150. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Virum servitūte līberābimus. *We shall free the man from slavery.*

2. Virum pecūniā prīvābit. *He will deprive the man of the money.*

3. Virum ā cūstōdibus prohibēbimus. *We shall keep the man from the guards.*

k. The ablative in each of these sentences answers a question. "From what shall we free the man?" "Of what will he deprive him?" "From whom shall we keep him?"

151. Rule.—*Words signifying privation, need, or separation, take an Ablative of Separation, sometimes with* **ab** or **ex**. *The prepositions are always used with words denoting a person.*

152. VOCABULARY

ā, or **ab**, prep. with abl., *from*.
bona, -ōrum, n. pl., *goods, i.e., property*.
culpa, -ae, f., *fault, blame*.
cūstōs, cūstōdis, m., *guard*.
eques, equitis, m., *cavalryman, horseman*.
Italus, -ī, m., *Italian*.
lēx, lēgis, f., *law*.
mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier*.
perīculum, -ī, n., *danger, peril*.
prīnceps, prīncipis, m., *chief, leading man*.
prōvincia, -ae, f., *province*.
careō, carēre, *be without*.
egeō, egēre, *need, lack*.
prīvō, prīvāre, *deprive* (of).
prohibeō, prohibēre, *keep from*.
servō, servāre, *save* (from).

153. EXERCISES

1. Rōmānī Italōs agrīs anteā prīvābant.
2. Cūstōdēs eōs perīculō līberant.
3. Puerī virōs eā cūrā fortasse līberābunt.
4. Mīlitēs eum ex Italōrum tēlīs servābunt.
5. Sextus lēgātus culpā caret, et prīnceps eī magnum praemium dabit.
6. Rōmānōrum mīlitēs frūmentō egent.
7. Is vir semper pecūniā eget.
8. Ex Italōrum agrīs prīnceps mīlitēs prohibēbat.
9. We shall keep[1] the horsemen out[1] of[1] the province.
10. We are depriving Sextus of[2] (his[3]) goods.
11. The leader by (his[3]) words freed the friends of the Italians from blame.
12. The Italians deprived the slave of[2] the goods of (his)[3] master.

[1] *Keep-out-of* = one Latin verb. [2] Compare Illustrative Sentence 2. [3] Omit.

LESSON XVII

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF CONJUGATIONS I–IV AND CAPIŌ

THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT

154. *PERSONAL ENDINGS*

	Singular		*Plural*	
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
1.	**-ō** or **-m**	**-r** (**-or** in present)	**-mus**	**-mur**
2.	**-s**	**-ris** or **-re**	**-tis**	**-minī**
3.	**-t**	**-tur**	**-nt**	**-ntur**

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

laudō	*Singular*	*Plural*
1.	lau′**dor,** *I am praised.*	laudā′**mur,** *We are praised.*
2.	laudā′**ris,** laudā′**re** *You are praised*	laudā′**minī,** *You are praised.*
3.	laudā′**tur,** *He is praised.*	laudan′**tur,** *They are praised.*

a. Add these same endings to the stems **docē-** (**doceor**), **rege-** (**regor**), **mūnī-** (**mūnior**), and **capi-** (**capior**), modifying these stems before the endings in the same places and in the same way[1] as in the active voice (See Lessons IV, X, XI, and Appendix, **441–444**).

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

laudō	*Singular*	*Plural*
1.	laudā′**bar,** *I was praised.*	laudābā′**mur,** *We were praised.*
2.	laudābā′**ris,** laudabā′**re,** *You were praised.*	laudābā′**minī,** *You were praised.*
3.	laudābā′**tur,** *He was praised.*	laudā**ban**′**tur,** *They were praised.*

b. Conjugate in full **docē′bar, regē′bar, mūniē′bar, capiē′bar** (see Appendix, **441–444**).

[1] Except that **e** does not change to **i** in the second person singular of **regō** and **capiō**, and that **ē** and **ī** are not shortened in the third singular of **doceō** and **mūniō**.

THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT

155. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Puer ā magistrō laudātur.** *The boy is praised by his master.*

2. **Puer ā magistrō audītur.** *The boy is heard by his master.*

3. **Puer ā magistrō docētur.** *The boy is taught by his master.*

b. The person *by whom* the action of a verb in the passive is done (i. e., the agent) is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **ā** or **ab**. The subject of the active voice becomes the agent with the passive voice. For example, the active construction of these three sentences would be: **Magister puerum laudat, audit, docet.** *The master praises, hears, teaches the boy.* Compare Lesson XI for the Ablative of Means, which must be sharply distinguished from the Ablative of Agent.

156. Rule. — *With a verb in the passive voice, the agent (the person by whom an action is done) is expressed by an ablative with* **ā** *or* **ab**.

157. VOCABULARY

ā or **ab**, prep., *by* (with a person denoting the agent; see also Vocabulary of Lesson XVI).

captīvus, -ī, m., *captive.*
comes, comitis, m. and f., *companion.*
Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul.*
Italia, -ae, f., *Italy.*
līberī, -ōrum, m. and f. pl., *children.*
rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*
sevēritās, sevēritātis, f., *severity.*
Vergilius, Vergī'lī, m., *Vergil.*
interficiō, interficere, *kill.*
pūniō, pūnīre, *punish.*
scrībō, scrībere, *write.*
vāstō, vāstāre, *devastate, lay waste.*

158. EXERCISES

1. Captīvus ā mīlite gladiō interficitur.
2. Rēgis comitēs eius līberōs gladiīs dēfendēbant.
3. Rēx ā comitibus gladiīs dēfendēbātur.
4. Num mīlitēs ā lēgātō pūniēbantur?
5. Liber ā Pūbliō in īnsulā scrībitur.
6. Gallia ā Rōmānīs, Italia ā Gallīs vāstātur.
7. Captīvī ā lēgātō poenā līberantur.
8. Līberī prīncipis ā mīlite magnā sevēritāte pūniuntur.
9. Vergil is sent by the king to the province.
10. The war was being waged by the lieutenant.
11. Their companions are sent by Publius into Gaul.
12. Are the king's friends being seized by the Gauls and deprived of (their [1]) goods?

LESSON XVIII

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE, CONJUGATIONS I–IV AND CAPIŌ

159. *TENSE SIGNS AND PERSONAL ENDINGS*

	I–II		III–IV	
	Singular		*Singular*	
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
1.	**-bō**	**-bor**	**-am**	**-ar**
2.	**-bis**	**-beris (-bere)**	**-ēs**	**-ēris (-ēre)**
3.	**-bit**	**-bitur**	**-et**	**-ētur**
	Plural		*Plural*	
1.	**-bimus**	**-bimur**	**-ēmus**	**-ēmur**
2.	**-bitis**	**-biminī**	**-ētis**	**-ēminī**
3.	**-bunt**	**-buntur**	**-ent**	**-entur**

[1] Omit.

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

laudō

I shall be praised, You will be praised, etc.

Singular	*Plural*
1. laudā′**bor**	laudā′**bimur**
2. laudā′**beris** (laudā′**bere**)	laudā**bi′minī**
3. laudā′**bitur**	laudā**bun′tur**

a. Observe that the **-bi-** of the Second person singular becomes **-be-** in the passive form.

b. Study **docēbor**, inflected in the Appendix 441.

Singular	*Plural*
1. re′**gar**	**regē′mur**
2. regē′**ris** (regē′**re**)	**regē′minī**
3. regē′**tur**	**regen′tur**

c. Inflect in full **mūniar** and **capiar.** See Appendix **444** and **443.**

160. VOCABULARY

dux, ducis, m., *leader, general.*
mors, mortis, f., *death.*
neque, { conj., equivalent to **et nōn,** *and not.*
neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor.*
numquam, adv., *never.*
pedes, peditis, m., *foot-soldier.*
populus, -ī, m., *people.*
vinculum, -ī, n., *chain, fetter.*
pellō, pellere, *drive away.*

161. EXERCISES

1. Num ager Rōmānus ā Gallīs vāstābitur?
2. Is puer comesque eius ab inimīcīs in vincula iacientur.
3. Mors perfugārum ā populō cupiētur.

4. Italiae incolae fīnitimīs [1] inimīcī sunt.
5. Equitēs fugient neque ab inimīcīs [1] capientur.
6. Virī ex prōvinciā ab Italīs pellentur.
7. Populus Rōmānus bonīs amīcīs in eā īnsulā num quam carēbit.
8. Nōnne nūntiī ā duce in eius patriam mittentur?
9. The fields will neither be captured nor ravaged.
10. We shall be deprived of (our [2]) goods and thrown into chains by the guards.
11. The leaders of the horsemen will be-put-to-death [3] by the Romans.
12. Will not the Belgians be freed from chains by the general?

LESSON XIX

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*)

162.

a. Review Lesson XVI.

b. Stems of masculines and feminines ending in **l**, **n**, **r**, **s**, [4] and of all neuters, do not add *s* to form the nominative, like mute stems, but use for the nominative either

1. The stem unchanged, or
2. The stem modified slightly.

[1] An adjective used as a noun.

[2] Omit.

[3] i. e., *killed*.

[4] *s* changes to *r* everywhere between two vowels in the declension of these stems.

EXAMPLES

	cōnsul, *m.*	frāter, *m.*	homō, *m.*
	consul	*brother*	*man*
Stems	(cōnsul-)	(frātr-)	(homin-)
		Singular	
Nom.	cōnsul	frāter	homō
Gen.	cōnsulis	frātris	hominis
Dat.	cōnsulī	frātrī	hominī
Acc.	cōnsulem	frātrem	hominem
Abl.	cōnsule	frātre	homine
		Plural	
Nom.	cōnsulēs	frātrēs	hominēs
Gen.	cōnsulum	frātrum	hominum
Dat.	cōnsulibus	frātribus	hominibus
Acc.	cōnsulēs	frātrēs	hominēs
Abl.	cōnsulibus	frātribus	hominibus

	corpus *n.*	genus *n.*	caput *n.*
	body	*kind*	*head*
Stems	(corpor-)	(gener-)	(capit-)
		Singular	
Nom.	corpus	genus	caput
Gen.	corporis	generis	capitis
Dat.	corporī	generī	capitī
Acc.	corpus	genus	caput
Abl.	corpore	genere	capite
		Plural	
Nom.	corpora	genera	capita
Gen.	corporum	generum	capitum
Dat.	corporibus	generibus	capitibus
Acc.	corpora	genera	capita
Abl.	corporibus	generibus	capitibus

c. All these nouns except **cōnsul** exhibit changes of the stem in the nominative. Do not make the mistake of assuming that all nouns with stems ending in *r* are declined like **frāter,** that all ending in *n* are declined like **homō,** etc. Both stem and nominative singular of all nouns of the Third Declension which have consonant stems must be learned.

d. Like **frāter** decline: — pater, *father,* and māter, *mother.*

e. Like **homō** decline: — ōrdō (ōrdin-), *rank, company;* virgō (virgin-), *maiden;* cupīdō (cupīdin-), *desire;* imāgō, (imāgin-), *likeness.*

f. Like **genus** decline: — foedus (foeder-), *league, treaty;* opus (oper-), *work;* pondus (ponder-), *weight;* scelus (sceler-), *crime;* vulnus (vulner-), *wound.*

g. Like **corpus** decline: — frīgus (frīgor-), *cold;* lītus (lītor-), *shore;* pectus (pector-), *breast;* tempus (tempor-), *time.*

163. VOCABULARY

Caesar, Caesaris, m., *Caesar.*
Cicerō, Cicerōnis, m., *Cicero.*
cōnsul, cōnsulis, m., *consul.*
foedus, foederis, n., *treaty.*
frāter, frātris, m., *brother.*
homō, hominis, m., *man.*
imperātor, imperātōris, m., *general.*
lītus, lītoris, n., *shore.*
magnopere, adv., *greatly.*
Mārcus, -ī, m., *Marcus.*
tribūnus, -ī, m., *tribune.*
virtūs, virtūtis, f., *virtue.*
amō, amāre, *love.*
appellō, appellāre, *call.*

164. EXERCISES

1. Caesar imperātor Rōmānōrum cum Belgīs bellum saepe gerēbat.
2. Pūblius ē Galliā in Italiam ā frātre vocābātur.

3. Dōna Belgīs ā Caesare cōnsule Rōmānōrum nōn dabantur.
4. Eōs hominēs nūntiōs in Caesaris castra saepe mittēmus.
5. Cicerō cōnsul Mārcum fīlium magnopere amat.
6. Rōmānī sacrum foedus cum Belgīs virtūte eōrum faciunt.
7. Gallī [1] bona ducis in lītore magnā cūrā cūstōdient.
8. Nōnne Pūblī frāter ā barbarīs adiuvābātur?
9. The brothers were faithful to Caesar the commander.
10. Publius and Marcus, the general's sons, will be guarded with great care by the barbarians.
11. Was the book written by Vergil, the Roman poet?
12. The tribune of the soldiers will send the messengers as [2] captives into the camp.

[1] A substantive (noun) here.

[2] *As* often appears between an Appositive (Introd. and Lesson VIII) and its noun. It need not be translated into Latin.

Cicero

LESSON XX

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE OF CONJUGATIONS I–IV

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF POSSUM, BE ABLE

165. *INFINITIVES*

	Active		Passive	
I.	laudā**re**,	*to praise.*	laudā**rī**,	*to be praised.*
II.	docē**re**,	*to teach.*	docē**rī**,	*to be taught.*
III.	rege**re**,	*to rule.*	reg**ī**,	*to be ruled.*
	cape**re**,	*to take.*	cap**ī**,	*to be taken.*
IV.	mūnī**re**,	*to fortify.*	mūnī**rī**,	*to be fortified.*
Irreg.	posse,	*to be able.*		

166. *INFLECTION OF* POSSUM

Present	Imperfect	Future
Singular	*Singular*	*Singular*
pos'**sum**	po'**teram**	po'**terō**
po'**tes**	po'**terās**	po'**teris**
po'**test**	po'**terat**	po'**terit**
Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*
pos'**sumus**	poterā'**mus**	pote'**rimus**
potes'**tis**	poterā'**tis**	pote'**ritis**
pos'**sunt**	po'**terant**	po'**terunt**

a. **Possum** is a compound of **potis** (*able*) and **sum.** The conjugation is the same as that of *sum, potis* having the form *pot-* before a vowel and that of *pos-* before *s.*

USE OF THE INFINITIVE

167. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Id facere potest** *He is able to do this.*
2. **Id vidēre cupit.** *He desires to see this.*
3. **Eam epistulam scrībere dēbeō.** *I ought to write that letter.*
4. **Id nārrāre audet.** *He dares to tell this.*

b. Each of the finite verbs in these sentences, **potest, cupit, dēbet, audet,** expresses an incomplete idea, which needs an infinitive of another verb used as its object (or complement) to complete it. A large number of verbs take this object (or complementary) infinitive.

168. VOCABULARY

hasta, -ae, f. *spear.*
iussum, -ī, n. *order.*
praefectus, -ī, m. *officer, prefect.*
audeō, audēre, *dare.*
dēbeō, dēbēre, *owe, ought.*
dēsinō, dēsinere, *cease.*
incipiō, incipere, *begin.*
maneō, manēre, *remain.*
possum, posse,[1] *be able.*
properō, properāre, *hasten.*
soleō, solēre, *be accustomed.*

169. EXERCISES

1. Italī in oppidō manēre dēbent.
2. Praefectus in castra cum equitibus venīre nōn properābat.
3. Is iussa Caesaris imperātōris facere magnopere cupiēbat, sed in eō locō manēre nōn audēbat.
4. Rōmānī cum iīs pugnāre dēsinēbant et cum Italīs bellum gerere incipiēbant.
5. Capita virōrum puerōrumque in mūrō vidēbantur.
6. Num verba barbarōrum intellegī possunt?
7. Nōnne vidērī scūta hastaeque Rōmānōrum poterant?

[1] Irregular infinitive for **pot-esse** made by the combination of **pot-** and **esse.**

8. Imperātor castra mūrō fossāque mūnīre dēbēbat
9. You ought to destroy the guards for[1] (their[2]) treachery.
10. I shall begin to lead great forces of horsemen into the deep woods.
11. The boy wished greatly to be praised by (his[2]) father for[1] (his[2]) courage.
12. The officer is accustomed to be heard.

LESSON XXI

170. REVIEW

1. Give the meaning and inflect the present indicative active of: **capere**; **fugere**; **rapere**. Give the future and the imperfect indicative active in the first person singular. How do these verbs differ from **regō** in inflection?

2. Give the nominative singular from each of the following stems, give the meaning, and decline:

Mīlit-; rēg-; patr-; tempor-; imāgin-; vulner-; comit-; lēg-; lībertāt-; gener-.

3. Where are the following forms made? Translate them:

1. Audiam. 2. Capiēbātur. 3. Laudor. 4. Docēbō. 5. Reguntur. 6. Capiet. 7. Scrībēbam. 8. Dēfenditur. 9. Audītur. 10. Dēfendētur.

4. Give the Latin for:

1. We are calling. 2. They are called. 3. He will be taken. 4. They seize. 5. They will seize. 6. They will teach.

[1] Equivalent to what in English? [2] Omit.

7. They will write. 8. We flee. 9. They punish. 10. They were throwing.

5. Translate the following forms and explain the use of the case:

1. Fīdus imperātōrī. 2. Propinquus rīpae. 3. Inimīcus hominī. 4. Grātus prīncipī. 5. Fīnitimus castrīs. 6. Ā prīncipe amātur. 7. Ab agricolā capiētur. 8. Ā nautīs pūnītur. 9. Hominēs tēlō interficiet. 10. Hominēs tēlō ab eō interficientur.[1]

6. Give the Latin for:

1. To free from faults. 2. To deprive of help. 3. To need grain. 4. To keep from liberty. 5. To deprive of gifts.

7. Translate:

1. Culpā līberātur. 2. Lēgātus prōvinciā caret. 3. Mīlitēs ē perīculō servābuntur. 4. Imperātor pecūniā eget. 5. Italī oppidō prohibēbuntur.

8. Give the form of the present, imperfect, and future indicative of **possum**: *a.* in the first singular; *b.* in the second singular; *c.* in the third singular; *d.* in the third plural.

9. Give the Latin for:

1. We ought to remain. 2. He dares to come. 3. They are accustomed to do this. 4. He will be able to find the man. 5. We can see Publius the tribune.

10. Translate:

1. Comitēs Gallōrum pugnāre possunt et audent. 2. Num līberī Cicerōnis cōnsulis librōs scrībere poterant? 3. Potesne Caesarem imperātōrem reperīre? 4. Nōnne poterunt nūntiī in castra venīre? Num mīlitēs barbarōs adiuvāre audēbunt?

[1] Distinguish carefully between the ablative of agent and the ablative of means.

LESSON XXII

171. PREPOSITIONS

The prepositions in Latin govern either the accusative or the ablative. A few govern both the accusative and the ablative, with a difference of meaning.

The prepositions in most common use are the following:

1. Governing the accusative:

ad, *to, towards.*
ante, *before* (of place or time).
apud, *near, with, in the presence of, at the house of.*
circum, *around, about.*
contrā, *against.*
inter, *between.*
per, *through.*
post, *after.*
propter, *on account of.*
trāns, *across.*

For example:

ante oppidum, *before the town:* **apud prīncipēs,** *in the presence of the chiefs;* **contrā Galliam,** *opposite Gaul;* **trāns flūmen,** *across the river.*

2. Governing the ablative:

ā, ab, *from, by, after.*
cum, *with.*
dē, *from, concerning.*
ex, ē, *from, out of.*
prō, *for, in behalf of, instead of.*
sine, *without.*

For example:

cum Caesare, *with Caesar:* **dē homine,** *concerning the man;* **sine culpā,** *without fault.*

a. **Ab, ex,** and **dē,** all mean *from.* Strictly, **ab** means *from the outside of,* **ex,** *from within,* while **dē** often

means *down from;* but the three are sometimes used without difference of meaning.

b. Of the double forms **ab**, **ā**, and **ex**, **ē**, use **ā** and **ē** before all consonants; **ab** and **ex** before vowels and **h**.

3. Governing the accusative with the idea of *motion towards*, and the ablative with the idea of *rest in*:

in, *into, in, towards, against.* **sub**, *up to, under, at the foot of.*

For example:

in urbem, *into the city;* **in urbe**, *in the city;* **sub pontem**, *up to the bridge;* **sub ponte**, *under the bridge.*

172. VOCABULARY

Memorize the lists of prepositions given above.

Britannī, -ōrum, m. pl., *Britons.*
Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain.*
flūmen, flūminis, n., *river.*
lībertās, lībertātis, f., *liberty, freedom.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light.*
paucī, -ae, -a, *few.*
subitō, adv., *suddenly.*
tempestās, tempestātis, f., *weather, storm, tempest.*
nāvigō, nāvigāre, *sail.*

173. EXERCISES

1. Caesar cum mīlitibus per eam prōvinciam properābat.
2. Britannī trāns flūmen sine perīculō nūntiōs mittunt.
3. Magna tempestās mīlitēs in castrīs post proelium tenēbat.
4. Propter Britannōrum virtūtem Caesar eam prōvinciam vāstāre nōn poterat.

5. Mīlitēs obsidēs sub mūrō propter eōrum verba interficiunt.
6. Propter virtūtem incolārum lībertātem iīs dabimus.
7. Mārcus prō Sextō ā barbarīs interficitur.
8. Inter oppidum et flūmen erant mūrus fossaque.
9. The enemy will sail around the island after the battle.
10. We will send a letter to Publius concerning the liberty of the hostage.
11. Opposite Gaul is Britain, a large island.
12. We will send soldiers across the river to Caesar's camp.

LESSON XXIII

174. THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*); I-STEMS

a. Review Lessons XVI and XIX.

b. All vowel stems of the Third Declension end in -i and most of them have the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive, i. e., are *parisyllabic.*

EXAMPLES

	cīvis, *m.*, *citizen*	sēdēs, *f.*, *seat*	pars, *f.*, *part*	
Stems	cīvi-	sēdi-	parti-	
		Singular		Endings
Nom.	cīvis	sēdēs	pars	-s
Gen.	cīvis	sēdis	partis	-is
Dat.	cīvī	sēdī	partī	-ī
Acc.	cīvem	sēdem	partem	-em
Abl.	cīve	sēde	parte	-e

Plural

NOM.	cīvēs	sēdēs	partēs	**-ēs**
GEN.	cīvium	sēdium (**-um**)	partium	**-ium**
DAT.	cīvibus	sēdibus	partibus	**-ibus**
ACC.	cīvīs (cīvēs)	sēdīs (sēdēs)	partēs	**-īs -ēs**
ABL.	cīvibus	sēdibus	partibus	**-ibus**

	mare, n., *sea*	vectīgal, n., *revenue*	
Stems	mari-	vectīgāli-	
	Singular		
NOM.	mare	vectīgal	—
GEN.	maris	vectīgālis	**-is**
DAT.	marī	vectīgālī	**-ī**
ACC.	mare	vectīgal	—
ABL.	marī	vectīgālī	**-ī**
	Plural		
NOM.	maria	vectīgālia	**-ia**
GEN.	marium[1]	vectīgālium	**-ium**
DAT.	maribus	vectīgālibus	**-ibus**
ACC.	maria	vectīgālia	**-ia**
ABL.	maribus	vectīgālibus	**-ibus**

c. The endings are the same as those of the consonant stems, except for the following peculiarities:

1. Nearly all have **-ium** in the genitive plural.

2. Nearly all have both **-īs** and **-ēs** in the accusative plural.

3. A few nouns have **-im** only; a few others **-im** or **-em** in the accusative singular (see Appendix, **420**).

4. A few retain **-ī** in the ablative singular (neuters regularly do this and also nearly all adjectives).

5. Neuters have **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural.

[1] The form **marum** occurs; also **mare** in abl. sing.

d. The following are, with a few exceptions, **i**-stems: —

1. Parisyllabic[1] nouns ending in **-is** or **-ēs**, as for example **cīvis, sēdēs.**

2. Neuter nouns with nominative ending in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**; as **mare,** etc.

3. Nouns of one syllable with stems ending in two consonants;[2] as **pars.**

4. Nouns of more than one syllable which end in **s** or **x** preceded by a consonant; as **cohors.**

175. VOCABULARY

cīvis, cīvis, m., *citizen.*
collis, collis, m., *hill.*
fīnis, fīnis, m., *end;* pl. *territory.*
gēns, gentis, f. *tribe.*
hostis, hostis, m., *enemy.*
iuvenis, iuvenis, m. *youth.*
mare, maris, n., *sea.*
nāvis, nāvis, f., *ship.*
pars, partis, f., *part.*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*
sēdēs, sēdis, f., *seat.*
turris, turris, f., *tower* (acc. sing. often **turrim**).
tuus, tua, tuum, poss. adj., *thy, your.*
vectīgal, vectīgālis, n., *revenue, tax.*
stō, stāre, *stand.*

176. EXERCISES

1. Amīcōs tuōs in fīnibus earum gentium reperīre nōn poterimus.
2. In eā parte nāvis altam turrim aedificābimus.
3. Trāns pontem multae turrēs stant.
4. In nāvibus hostium sunt tua vectīgālia.
5. Propter vectīgālia bellum cum cōpiīs hostium gerēbātur.

[1] See *b* above.

[2] Sometimes termed mixed stems. The distinction seems unnecessary here

6. Sēdēs in eō colle reperiēmus.
7. Iī iuvenēs in turrī stābant.
8. Lātī sunt fīnēs hostium, et multōs collēs habent.
9. The citizens will build ships on the sea.
10. The youths of this tribe will wage war with their enemies among[1] the hills.
11. Can you see the tower on the bridge?
12. In this part of the territory you will find many towns.

LESSON XXIV

RELATIONS OF PLACE (*continued*)

177. *a.* See Lesson VII.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Urbs Rōma in Italiā est.** *The city of Rome is in Italy.*
2. **Caesar Rōmae, Cicerō Athēnīs erat.** *Caesar was in Rome, Cicero in Athens.*
3. **Pūblius Corinthī[2] est.** *Publius is in Corinth.*
4. **Caesar ex Italiā in Galliam veniet.** *Caesar will come from Italy to Gaul.*
5. **Caesar Rōmā Athēnās veniet.** *Caesar will come from Rome to Athens*

178. Rule. — PLACE WHERE *is expressed by the ablative with the preposition* **in** (see Lesson VII).

But, if the noun denoting place is the name of a town or a small island, the locative case is used instead.

[1] *Among*, i. e., *in*.
[2] See Introd. (66, *c*) for pronunciation of *th*.

b. The locative case is in form like the genitive in the singular of the First and Second Declensions. It is like the dative or ablative in form in the plural of these declensions and in the Third Declension.

179. Rule. — PLACE FROM WHICH *is expressed by the ablative with the preposition* **ab** (**ā**), **dē**, or **ex** (**ē**).

180. Rule. — PLACE TO WHICH *is expressed by the accusative with the preposition* **ad** or **in**.

But, if the noun denoting place is the name of a town or small island, the preposition is omitted with either the accusative or the ablative.

181. Memorize the following expressions:

c. From Rome, **Rōmā**.
To Rome, **Rōmam**.
In (at) Rome, **Rōmae**.

d. From Athens, **Athēnīs**.
To Athens, **Athēnās**.
In Athens, **Athēnīs**.

e. From Corinth, **Corinthō**.
To Corinth, **Corinthum**.
In Corinth, **Corinthī**.

f. From Gaul, **ē (ab, dē) Galliā**.
To Gaul, **in (ad) Galliam**.
In Gaul, **in Galliā**.

g. From Italy, **ex (ab, dē) Italiā**.
To Italy, **ad Italiam**.
In Italy, **in Italiā**.

h. From the city, **ex (ab, dē) urbe**.
To the city, **ad urbem**.
In the city, **in urbe**.

182. VOCABULARY

Athēnae, Athēnārum, f. pl., *Athens*.
Corinthus, -ī, f., *Corinth*.
Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*.
urbs, urbis, f., *city*.
vestis, vestis, f., *garment*.

183. EXERCISES

1. Iuvenēs Rōmam ē Galliā veniunt.
2. Num potes cum tuō patre Corinthum venīre?
3. Ī hominēs Rōmae nōn Athēnīs manēbunt.
4. In Gallōrum fīnibus sunt multae turrēs pontēsque.
5. Erant[1] in eō colle vestēs hostium.
6. Is iuvenis Corinthō Rōmam veniet et in Italiā manēbit.
7. Tuī hostēs in pontibus turribusque stābant.
8. Erant[1] in lītore magnae hostium nāvēs.
9. They will come not from Gaul, but from Rome.
10. The general desires greatly to send the citizens to Rome.
11. In Corinth the youth will see the father of Publius, in Athens the brother of Marcus.
12. These youths have[2] allies in Rome.

LESSON XXV

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS AND SUM

184.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE OF SUM

I	II	III		IV	
laudō	**doceō**	**regō**	**capiō**	**mūniō**	**sum**
		Singular			
1. lau'dem	do'ceam	re'gam	ca'piam	mū'niam	sim
2. lau'dēs	do'ceās	re'gās	ca'piās	mū'niās	sīs
3. lau'det	do'ceat	re'gat	ca'piat	mū'niat	sit
		Plural			
1. laudē'mus	doceā'mus	regā'mus	capiā'mus	mūniā'mus	sīmus
2. laudē'tis	doceā'tis	regā'tis	capiā'tis	mūniā'tis	sītis
3. lau'dent	do'ceant	re'gant	ca'piant	mū'niant	sint

[1] *There were*, etc. [2] Express in two ways. See **139**, *d*.

185. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Nūntium in urbem mittāmus.** *Let us send a messenger into the city.*

2. **Lēgātus mīlitēs vocet.** *Let the lieutenant call the soldiers.*

3. **Nē in oppidō maneāmus.** *Let us not remain in the town.*

4. **Veniō ut eum videam.** *I am coming to (in order that I may) see him.*

5. **Maneō nē id videam.** *I am remaining in order that I may not see this.*

a. Sentences in Latin may be simple, compound, or complex, as in English. See Introduction, **40**, **46**, **47**.

b. The sentences numbered 1, 2, 3 are simple. Those numbered 4, 5 are complex.

c. The subjunctive is translated in different ways according to its use.

d. The sentences 1, 2, and 3 express an exhortation or a command; sentences 4 and 5 are complex, and contain in the dependent clauses statements of purpose. Sentence 4 consists of a principal clause **veniō** (containing a complete subject and predicate, *I come*), and the dependent or subordinate clause **ut videam**, which gives my object or purpose in coming; while in sentence 5 the dependent clause **nē videam** gives in a negative form my purpose in remaining.

186. Rule. — *The subjunctive is used in principal clauses to express an exhortation or a command.*

187. Rule. — *The subjunctive is used in dependent clauses introduced by* **ut** *affirmative, and* **nē** *negative, to express purpose.*

188. VOCABULARY

ut, conj., *that, in order that, to.*
nē, conj., *that not, in order that not, not to, lest.*
noster, nostra, nostrum, poss. adj., *our.*
aperiō, aperīre, *open.*
labōrō, labōrāre, *labor.*
perveniō, pervenīre, *arrive.*
vincō, vincere, *conquer.*

189. EXERCISES

1. Mūrō fossāque castra mūniant.
2. Imperātor nostrōs mīlitēs mittit, ut pontem dēleant.[1]
3. Prīnceps hastās scūtaque hominibus dat, ut oppidum sociōrum iīs [2] dēfendant.
4. Dux nūntiōs vocābit, ut iīs dōna praemiaque det.
5. Equitēs in Gallōrum fīnibus relinquāmus, ut nostrōs sociōs ā perīculō servent.
6. Lēgātus viam in Belgārum fīnēs aperīre poterit, ut ea gēns auxilium ad Caesarem mittat.
7. Rōmānī ducem mīlitēsque in Galliam mittent, nē Belgae bellum cum nostrīs amīcīs gerant.
8. Pīrātās miserōs interficiāmus sed perfugās ad nostrum imperātōrem mittāmus.
9. Let us open a way into the deep woods.
10. Let us wait for our general, lest our enemies defeat [1] (conquer) us. [4]
11. Our slaves will labor with great boldness to free [3] us [4] from peril.
12. They are digging a ditch and building a wall in order to defend the territory of (their) friends.

[1] Observe that the verb of the subordinate clause in each sentence is in the present tense, and that the verb of the principal clause is either present or future. The reason will appear later.

[2] An ablative of means.

[3] *To free* is equivalent to *in order that they may free.* Purpose must never be expressed in Latin by the infinitive.

[4] *Nos*, see 210.

LESSON XXVI

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

190. *IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE OF SUM*

	I	II	III
	laudō	**doceō**	**regō**
		Singular	
1.	laudā′**rem**	docē′**rem**	reg′**erem**
2.	laudā′**rēs**	docē′**rēs**	reg′**erēs**
3.	laudā′**ret**	docē′**ret**	reg′**eret**
		Plural	
1.	laudārē′**mus**	docērē′**mus**	regerē′**mus**
2.	laudārē′**tis**	docērē′**tis**	regerē′**tis**
3.	laudā′**rent**	docē′**rent**	reg′**erent**

	III	IV	
	capiō	mūniō	**sum**
		Singular	
1.	cap′**erem**	mūnī′**rem**	es′**sem**
2.	cap′**erēs**	mūnī′**rēs**	es′**sēs**
3.	cap′**eret**	mūnī′**ret**	es′**set**
		Plural	
1.	caperē′**mus**	mūnīrē′**mus**	essē′**mus**
2.	caperē′**tis**	mūnīrē′**tis**	essē′**tis**
3.	cap′**erent**	mūnī′**rent**	es′**sent**

a. Observe that the imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings, *-m*, *-s*, *-t*, etc., to the present active infinitive of any verb.[1] For example: **laudā′re, laudā′rem ; esse, essem.**

[1] It is not, of course, derived from the infinitive.

191. VOCABULARY

auxilia, -ōrum, n. pl., *re-enforcements* (cf. *auxilium*, **129**).
diū, adv., *long, for a long time.*
multitūdō, multitūdinis, f., *multitude.*
obses, obsidis, m., *hostage.*
pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*
porta, -ae, f., *gate.*
posteā, adv., *afterwards.*
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice.*
dēpellō, dēpellere, *drive away.*
perturbō, perturbāre, *throw into disorder.*
petō, petere, *seek, ask for.*
superō, superāre, *overcome, surpass.*

192. EXERCISES

1. Praefectus ad sociōs auxilia mittēbat, nē hostēs eōs perturbārent.[1]
2. Posteā lēgātī ex oppidō ad castra veniēbant, ut pācem peterent.[1]
3. Caesar ad eōs cum auxiliīs nāvigābat, nē multitūdō hostium eōs superāret.[1]
4. Ut castra mūnīret,[1] praefectus ad eum locum properābat.
5. Posteā gentēs Belgārum, ut pāx esset, fīliōs ad Caesarem obsidēs mittēbant.
6. Nē hostēs castra caperent, mīlitēs magnam fossam fodiēbant.
7. Nautae in marī, peditēs equitēsque in terrā, diū pugnābant, ut hostēs ā nostrīs fīnibus dēpellerent.
8. Athēnās properēmus auxiliaque petāmus.
9. I stood for a long time on the hill that I might see the buildings of the town.
10. Afterwards citizens came from Athens to Rome to[2] ask for peace.

[1] Observe that when the verb of the principal clause is in a tense denoting past time (here the imperfect), the tense of the verb in the dependent clause is also past (here the imperfect). The reason will appear later. See **189**, footnote 1.

[2] *to = that they might.* See **189**, footnote 3.

11. The officers remained a long time on the hill that the cavalry of the enemy might not throw the allies into disorder.

12. He called the young men loudly[1] that Sextus might hear.

LESSON XXVII

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

193.

	I	II	III	
	laudō	**doceō**	**(a) regō**	**(b) capiō**
		PRESENT		
		Singular		
1.	lau'der	do'cear	regar	ca'piar
2.	laudē'ris (-re)	doceā'ris (-re)	regā'ris (-re)	capiā'ris (-re)
3.	laudē'tur	doceā'tur	regā'tur	capiā'tur
		Plural		
1.	laudē'mur	doceā'mur	regā'mur	capiā'mur
2.	laudē'minī	doceā'minī	regā'minī	capiā'minī
3.	lauden'tur	docean'tur	regan'tur	capian'tur
		IMPERFECT		
		Singular		
1.	laudā'rer	docē'rer	re'gerer	ca'perer
2.	laudārē'ris (-re)	docērē'ris (-re)	regerē'ris (-re)	caperē'ris (-re)
3.	laudārē'tur	docērē'tur	regerē'tur	caperē'tur
		Plural		
1.	laudārē'mur	docērē'mur	regerē'mur	caperē'mur
2.	laudārē'minī	docērē'minī	regerē'minī	caperē'minī
3.	laudāren'tur	docēren'tur	regeren'tur	caperen'tur

[1] *with a loud (great) voice.*

IV

mūniō

	Present		Imperfect	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
1.	mu'niar	mūniā'mur	mūnī'rer	mūnīrē'mur
2.	mūniā'ris -re	mūniā'minī	mūnīrē'ris (-re)	mūnīrē'minī
3.	muniā'tur	mūnian'tur	mūnīrē'tur	mūnīren'tur

194. VOCABULARY

adulēscēns, adulēscentis, m., *a young man, a youth.*
intrā, preposition with accusative, *within.*
ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., *rank, company.*
pater, patris, m., *father.*
scelus, sceleris, n., *crime.*
sed, conjunction, *but.*
signum, -ī, n., *standard.*
accūsō, accūsāre, *accuse, blame.*
ostendō, ostendere, *show.*
parō, parāre, *prepare.*
premō, premere, *press, press hard.*
vītō, vītāre, *avoid.*

195. EXERCISES

1. Fīliōs dēlēctēmus, ut ā patribus eōrum laudēmur.[1]
2. Posteā vectīgālia mittēbant, nē ā Rōmānīs accūsārentur.[1]
3. Iī adulēscentēs propter scelera accūsentur sed patrēs eōrum diū laudentur.
4. Patrēs ab adulēscentibus accūsentur.
5. Multī cīvēs, ut perīculum vītārētur, intrā mūrum veniēbant.
6. Imperātor ad flūmen mīlitēs mittēbat ut signa in pontibus ostenderentur.
7. Mūrī fossaeque ab adulēscentibus parentur.

[1] For the tense of the subjunctive in these subordinate clauses, see the footnote 1 on **189** and **192**.

8. Mīlitēs intrā mūrum castrōrum fugiēbant, nē ab hostibus premerentur.
9. Afterwards let them not be avoided but let them be accused.
10. Let the sons be accused by (their[1]) fathers on account of (their[1]) crimes.
11. The Belgians for a long time pressed hard (upon[1]) the Romans, that the ranks of (their[1]) enemies might be thrown into disorder.
12. Let the standards be shown on the wall.

LESSON XXVIII

196. REVIEW

1. How does an **i**-stem of the Third Declension differ in declension from a consonant stem? How can you determine that any particular noun has an **i**-stem? Mention four classes of nouns having **i**-stems, and give an example of each class.

2. Give, both in the active and the passive, the endings[2] of the present subjunctive of a verb of the first conjugation (**-em**, **-ēs**, **-et**, etc.); then of a verb of the second conjugation; of the third; of the fourth. Compare these endings in the third and fourth conjugations with those of the future indicative active, giving the latter endings.

[1] Omit.

[2] Give, not the personal endings simply, which do not differ, but everything distinguished by black-faced type in the inflection of the forms in the Lessons and Appendix, i. e., the personal endings combined with tense and mood suffixes

3. Give also the endings[1] of the present indicative active and passive of a verb of the third conjugation and of the fourth, and of **capiō**.

4. Give the endings,[1] active and passive, of verbs of the four conjugations, including **capiō**, in the imperfect subjunctive.

From what other part of the verb can these most directly be formed?

5. What two uses of the Latin subjunctive do you know? Give short English sentences which illustrate these.

6. Locate exactly the following forms; if any of them can be found in more than one place, give all of these; give the meaning of the verb (not of the form):

1. Vincam. 2. Dēlēcter. 3. Labōrārem. 4. Essēs. 5. Petēbātur. 6. Labōrēmus. 7. Aperiam. 8. Maneātis. 9. Dēpellat. 10. Videātur. 11. Adiuvet. 12. Oppugnāret. 13. Inveniat. 14. Dīmitterētur. 15. Recipiās.

7. Write in Latin:

1. Let me see him. 2. Let us call them. 3. Let us send men to find him. 4. Where will you send? 5. I will come to lead you away.

8. Give orally the Latin for:

1. He remains at Athens, at Rome, at Corinth, in the city.
2. He will send re-enforcements to Athens, to Rome, to Corinth, to the city, and the camp.
3. He will send a messenger from Athens, from Rome, from Corinth, from the city, and the camp.

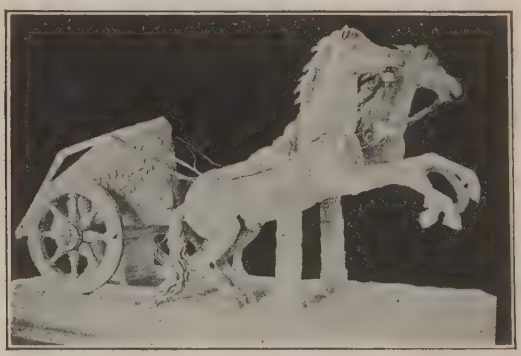
[1] See footnote 2, p. 98.

State when the Latin preposition must be used and when omitted in expressing place "to which," "at which," and "from which." What do you mean by locative forms? Do other than proper nouns generally have these forms?

9. Tell the probable use of the datives and ablatives in the following phrases:

1. Ā fīliō. 2. Cum audāciā. 3. Belgīs inimīcī. 4. Est eī scūtum. 5. Virtūte cōnservātur. 6. Lībertāte prīvātur. 7. Tēlō ab hoste interficitur. 8. In finitimīs maribus. 9. Imperātorī fīdus. 10. Puerō frātrēs nōn sunt.

10. Give, with their meanings, five Latin prepositions which govern the accusative case only; five which govern only the ablative; one which governs both. Form prepositional phrases by combining each of these prepositions with some noun or pronoun which you know, and translate each of these phrases.



Roman Chariot

LESSON XXIX

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION, PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

197. **EXAMPLES**

ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION

praesēns, *present* (*Stem*, praesenti-)		audāx, *bold* (*Stem*, audāci-)	
		Singular	
m. and *f.*	*n.*	*m.* and *f.*	*n.*
praesēns	praesēns	audāx	audāx
praesentis	praesentis	audācis	audācis
praesentī	praesentī	audācī	audācī
praesentem	praesēns	audācem	audāx
praesentī (-e)	praesentī (-e)	audācī (-e)	audācī (-e)
		Plural	
praesentēs	praesentia	audācēs	audācia
praesentium	praesentium	audācium	audācium
praesentibus	praesentibus	audācibus	audācibus
praesentēs (-īs)	praesentia	audācēs (-īs)	audācia
praesentibus	praesentibus	audācibus	audācibus

a. These are called adjectives of one termination, as the masculine, feminine, and neuter are alike in the nominative. But the accusative singular neuter and the nominative and accusative plural neuter have different forms from the masculine and feminine.

b. Present active participles are declined like **praesēns** except that they commonly have **e**, not **ī**, in the ablative singular. They always form the nominative singular in **-ns**.

c. Decline: **laudāns**, *praising;* **docēns**, *teaching;* **regēns**, *ruling;* **capiēns**, *taking;* **mūniēns**, *fortifying.*

198. EXAMPLES

ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS		*ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS*		
fortis, *strong* (Stem, forti-)		ācer, *sharp, keen* (Stem, ācri-)		
		Singular		
m. and *f.*	*n.*	*m.*	*f.*	*n.*
fortis	forte	ācer	ācris	ācre
fortis	fortis	ācris	ācris	ācris
fortī	fortī	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
fortem	forte	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
fortī	fortī	ācrī	ācrī	acrī
		Plural		
fortēs	fortia	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
fortium	fortium	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
fortibus	fortibus	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
fortēs (-īs)	fortia	ācrēs (-īs)	ācrēs (-īs)	ācria
fortibus	fortibus	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

d. Most adjectives of the Third Declension are declined like **fortis**, and have one form in the nominative singular for both masculine and feminine, and another form for the neuter; from this fact they are called adjectives of two endings. They are declined in the masculine and feminine like **cīvis**, (except the ablative singular, which regularly has **ī**,) and in the neuter like **mare**.

e. A number of adjectives in **-er** are declined like **ācer** and have a separate form for the nominative singu-

lar masculine, but are otherwise declined like **fortis**. They are called adjectives of three terminations.

f. Decline like **audāx**: **fēlīx**, *happy;* **supplex**, *submissive* — like **fortis**: **brevis**, *short;* **crūdēlis**, *cruel;* **fidēlis**, *faithful;* **trīstis**, *sad;* **facilis**, *easy* — like **ācer**, *active;* **equester**, *cavalry* (adj.); **celer**, *swift* (this keeps **e** throughout, **celeris**, **celerī**, **celerem**).

ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

199. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Dux nātūrā crūdēlis erat. *The general was cruel in his nature.*

2. Puer frātrem virtūte superat. *The boy surpasses his brother in courage.*

3. Puer Mārcus nōmine vocātur. *The boy is called Marcus by name* (i. e., *by the name of Marcus*).

g. In each of these sentences the ablative answers a question, "In what respect?" In the first sentence the full form of the question would be, "In what respect was the general cruel?" In the second, "In what respect does the boy surpass his brother?" The ablative, when employed to answer such questions, is called an Ablative of Respect or Specification.

200. Rule. — *The ablative of specification or respect is used to show in what respect the action of a verb or the quality of an adjective is asserted.*

201. VOCABULARY

ācer, ācris, ācre, *active, spirited.*
amīcitia, -ae, f., *friendship.*
animus, -ī, m., *mind, soul, spirit.*
audāx, gen. **audācis**, *bold.*
celeritās, celeritātis, f., *swiftness.*
crūdēlis, crūdēle, *cruel.*
dīves, gen. **dīvitis**, *rich.*

equester, -tris, -tre, *cavalry, of cavalry.*
fēmina, -ae, f., *woman.*
fidēlis, fidēle, *faithful.*
fortis, forte, *brave.*
magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, f., *greatness, size.*
nātūra, -ae, f., *nature.*
nōmen, nōminis, n., *name.*
omnis, omne, *all.*
pedester, -tris, -tre, *infantry, of infantry.*
similis, simile, *similar, like.*

202. EXERCISES

1. Eius fīlium, Sextum nōmine, in oppidō diū manentem vidēbam.
2. Nōnne fortūna fortēs [1] adiuvat?
3. Omnēs cōpiae equestrēs cōpiās pedestrēs celeritāte magnopere superant.
4. Dux Gallōrum animō crūdēlis est, sed amīcitiā fidēlis.
5. Fidēlēs eōrum prīncipēs nōn sunt dīvitēs pecūniā.
6. Ācrēs et fortēs sunt mīlitēs, sed dux eōrum eōs ex castrīs nōn dūcet.
7. Omnia facta [2] fortia audācia [3] verba virtūte magnopere superant.
8. Nōn omnēs equī sunt ācrēs.
9. Gaul is not like Italy in size.
10. Our brave women are not cruel in (their) nature.
11. All men are not like these [4] in courage.
12. That woman is rich in money, but cruel in heart.

[1] An adjective used as a noun.
[2] In the nominative case, the subject of the verb.
[3] An adjective in the neuter accusative plural.
[4] For case of *these* see **146**.

LESSON XXX

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN **QUĪ**, — *WHO, WHICH*

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

203. *DECLENSION OF QUĪ*

	Singular			*Plural*		
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. The interrogative pronoun **quis** (substantive), *who, what,* is declined in the same way as the relative, except that in the singular —

1. The feminine has the same form as the masculine.
2. **quis** replaces **quī** in the nominative masculine singular.
3. **quid** replaces **quod** in the nominative and accusative neuter.

m. and *f.*	*n.*
quis	quid
cuius	cuius
cui	cui
quem	quid
quō	quō, etc.

b. The interrogative adjective **quī**, *what, what kind of,* is declined in exactly the same way as the relative pronoun.

quī **quae** **quod, etc.**

USE OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

204. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Homō quem vidēs meus frāter est. *The man whom you see is my brother.*

2. Hominēs quōs vidēs meī frātrēs sunt. *The men whom you see are my brothers.*

3. Hastāe quās iacis longae sunt. *The spears which you are hurling are long.*

c. Observe that the relative in each of these sentences is in the accusative case, because it is the object of the verb in its own (the relative) clause. But its gender and number are determined by the gender and number of the antecedent in each sentence. In the first sentence, *quem* is masculine and singular because *homō* (its antecedent) is masculine and singular; in the second, *hominēs* is plural and masculine and *quōs* assumes the same form; in the third, the gender and number of *quās* are determined in the same way by its antecedent *hastae*, but not its case.

205. Rule. — *The case of a relative pronoun is determined by its construction within its own clause. It agrees with its antecedent in gender, person, and number.*

4. Hominem mittam, quī mīlitēs dūcat. *I will send a man to*[1] *lead the soldiers.*

d. This relative clause has its verb in the subjunctive and is equivalent to a purpose clause introduced by *ut*, and may be translated in the same way.

[1] *to* is equivalent to *in order that he may.*

206. Rule. — *The relative pronoun (equivalent to* **ut is, ut iī,** *etc.) is often used with the subjunctive to express purpose.*

207. VOCABULARY

autem, conj., *but, however.*
cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort.*
dictātor, dictātōris, m., *dictator* (a Roman magistrate).
iam, adv., *now, already.*
legiō, legiōnis, f., *legion.*
praetor, praetōris, m., *praetor* (a Roman magistrate).
tum, adv., *at that time, then.*
uxor, uxōris, f., *wife.*
āmittō, āmittere, *lose.*
ēdūcō, ēdūcere, *lead out.*
impetrō, impetrāre, *obtain.*
inveniō, invenīre, *find.*
oppugnō, oppugnāre, *attack, besiege.*

208. EXERCISES

1. Crassus[1] et Pompēius,[1] quī tum cōnsulēs erant, amīcī erant Caesarī praetōrī.
2. Quis dūcet cohortēs peditum, quī urbem dēfendant?
3. Dictātor, Crasse,[2] mittet praefectum cum equitibus, quī oppidum oppugnet.
4. Rōmānī multās cohortēs ēdūcent, quae locum mūrō fossāque mūniant.
5. Ubi ea signa, quae dictātōrī dōnāre cupis, impetrāre potes?
6. Tuus imperātor, praefecte,[2] mittat equitēs quī Pompēium[1] adiuvent.
7. The cavalrymen, whom the general is already sending, can present this letter to Crassus.[1]

[1] See General Vocabulary.
[2] The vocative case. See Lesson V.

8. Afterwards the citizens of Athens will find men in the city to[1] build a tower and a bridge.
9. Who will conquer Pompey? What will Crassus lose?
10. Who will send messengers to ask for peace from[2] our bold enemies?

209. READING EXERCISE

GĀIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR[3]

Gāius Iūlius Caesar fīlius erat Gāī Iūlī Caesaris, praetōris Rōmānī, et Aurēliae, fēminae clārae. Iam adulēscēns patrem āmittit et Cornēliam, quae Cinnae fīlia erat, uxōrem dūcit. Lūcius Sulla, dictātor, inimīcus erat Cinnae, Cornēliae patris; Caesar autem uxōrem nōn repudiat. Ergō Sulla eum bonīs prīvat et interficere cupit. Sed Caesar Rōmā fugit.

Notes

3.[4] **adulēscēns:** in apposition with the subject of *āmittit;* translate by a clause with *when.*

āmittit: the present tense in Latin is often used of a past action. This is called the "historical present." Translate by a past tense in English: so **dūcit** (4), **repudiat, prīvat** (6), **cupit** and **fugit** (7).

[1] Use the relative with the proper construction. See footnote 1, Lesson XXV.

[2] **Petō**, *ask*, *ask for*, or *ask from*, followed by the ablative of the person with **ā** or **ab**, and the accusative of the thing ("peace").

[3] For all words not given in the Vocabularies see General Vocabulary at the end of the book.

[4] These numbers refer to the lines of the exercise.

6. **bonīs**: an adjective used as a noun, neuter plural. In the ablative of separation. Translate by *of*.

repudiat, from **repudiō, repudiāre**, *put away, divorce*.

Ergō: adv., *therefore, for this reason*.

7. **Rōmā**: names of towns omit the preposition in expressing relations of place.

LESSON XXXI

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS **EGŌ** AND **TŪ**, AND THE REFLEXIVES AND POSSESSIVES

210. *USE OF THE REFLEXIVE*

PERSONALS

Singular

NOM.	ego, *I*.	tū, (*thou*) *you*.	——
GEN.	meī, *of me*.	tuī	suī, *of himself*, etc.
DAT.	mihi, *to me*, etc.	tibi	sibi
ACC.	mē	tē	sē
ABL.	mē	tē	sē

Plural

NOM.	nōs, *we*.	vōs, *you*.	——
GEN.	nostrum, nostrī	vestrum, vestrī	suī
DAT.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
ACC.	nōs	vōs	sē
ABL.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē

POSSESSIVES

meus,	mea,	meum,	*my, mine*, etc.
tuus,	tua,	tuum,	*your*, etc.
suus,	sua,	suum,	*his, hers, its*, etc.
noster,	nostra,	nostrum,	*our*, etc.
vester,	vestra,	vestrum,	*your*, etc.
suus,	sua,	suum,	*their*, etc.

a. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are not expressed in the nominative except when it is desired to emphasize the subject of the verb.

b. The pronoun **suī** (having no nominative) is used reflexively only, i. e., referring back to the subject of the verb. For example:

Mārcus sē interficiet. *Marcus will kill himself.* But **Mārcus eum interficiet.** *Marcus will kill him* (i. e., *some one else*).

c. When a reflexive of the first or second person is needed, the oblique [1] cases of the personal pronouns *ego* and *tū* are used, as:

Ego mē recipiam in urbem.	*I shall betake myself into the city.*
Tū tē recipiēs	*You will betake yourself*, etc.
(Nōs) nōs recipiēmus	*We will betake ourselves*, etc.

d. Suus, the possessive pronoun of the third person, is used reflexively like the corresponding personal *suī*. It refers to the subject of the sentence or clause in which it stands, as:

Caesar suōs mīlitēs videt. *Caesar sees his* (*own*) *soldiers.* But:

Caesar eius mīlitēs videt. *Caesar sees his* (i. e., some one else's) *soldiers* (literally, *the soldiers of that one*).

e. The personal pronouns of the third person are most frequently represented by some form of *is*.

f. The possessives are declined like *magnus*, or like *sacer*, adjectives of the Second and First Declensions.

[1] Any case except the nominative or vocative.

211. VOCABULARY

deinde, adv., *thence, next.*
expugnātiō, expugnātiōnis, f., *storming.*
proelium, proelī, n., *battle.*
tamen, adv., *nevertheless.*
ūtilis, ūtile, *useful.*
dīmittō, dīmittere, *send away.*
legō, legere, *read.*
postulō, postulāre, *demand.*
sē recipere, *betake oneself.*

212. EXERCISES

1. Ūtilēs librī mihi et tibi dabuntur, ut eōs legāmus.
2. Praefectus mē meaque omnia in urbem Athēnās dīmittet.
3. Post proelium nōs[1] in castra recipiēmus ut imperātōrī nostrō ūtilēs sīmus.
4. Nōnne tū tuusque frāter eum miserum obsidem adiuvātis?[2]
5. Ī puerī nōn dīligentēs sunt; ego eōs nōn laudābō.
6. Mārcus vōbīs ea nārrābit; ego diū manēre nōn possum.
7. Let the young men betake themselves to the camp; after the battle they will demand a reward.
8. We shall demand soldiers to protect (defend) you and your children from peril.
9. The books will be read by me, by him, by you, by us all.
10. On account of these gifts Pompey is pleased, but I am miserable.

[1] *Ourselves,* a reflexive pronoun; see **210** *c.*

[2] When a verb has two subjects of different persons, if one of the subjects is in the first person and the other in either the second or third, the verb will be in the first person plural; if one is in the second person and the other in the third, the verb will be in the second person plural.

He and I (we) are coming.	Ego et ille venīmus.
You and I (we) are coming.	Ego et tū venīmus.
You and he (you) are coming.	Tū et ille venītis.

213. READING EXERCISE

GĀIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR (*continued*)

Posteā Caesaris amīcī ad Sullam veniunt, ut veniam adulēscentī impetrent. Is autem diū recūsāt, dīcēns: "In eō adulēscente multī Māriī sunt." Tamen veniam dat et Caesar Rōmam sē recipit. Deinde in Asiam iter facit, ut bellum gerat. In expugnātiōne Mitylēnārum magnam virtūtem ostendit et imperātor eī corōnam cīvicam dōnat.

Notes

1. veniunt: see note on **āmittit, 209**, line 3.
veniam: from **venia, -ae,** f., *pardon.*

3. Māriī: Marius was a bitter enemy of Sulla and his party.
veniam, see note on line 1.

4. Rōmam: see note on *Rōmā*, **209**, line 7. Compare *in Asiam.*

5. Mitylēnārum: a city on the island of Lesbos, on the western coast of Asia Minor.

7. corōnam cīvicam: *a civic crown;* this was given for saving the life of a fellow-citizen, and was highly prized.

Civic Crown

LESSON XXXII

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE OF THE IMPERATIVE PRESENT, CONJUGATIONS I–IV; IMPERATIVE OF **SUM**

GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

214. *ENDINGS*

	Singular	*Plural*
ACTIVE	—	**-te**
PASSIVE	**-re**	**-minī**

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	2d sing.	*2d pl.*	*2d sing.*	*2d pl.*
I	laudā,	laudā**te**, *praise.*	laudā**re**,	laudā**minī**, *be praised.*
II	docē,	docē**te**, *teach.*	docē**re**,	docē**minī**, *be taught.*
III *a.*	rege,	regi**te**, *rule.*	rege**re**,	regi**minī**, *be ruled.*
b.	cape,	capi**te**, *take.*	cape**re**,	capi**minī**, *be taken.*
IV	mūnī,	mūnī**te**, *fortify.*	mūnī**re**,	mūnī**minī**, *be fortified.*
	es,	es**te**, *be.*	——	——

a. Observe that in the singular the present active imperative is the same as the stem of the verb.

b. Observe that in the passive the singular has the same form as the present infinitive active, the plural the same as the present indicative passive second person plural.

215. *GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION*

The great variety of endings in this declension makes it difficult to fix in mind the gender of the individual words. The following rules will be found useful and should be carefully memorized and applied. The ex-

ceptions to them should be memorized when they are met with.

MASCULINE:

Nouns ending in **ō, or, ōs;**
in **er,** and **es** (when the genitive has a greater number of syllables than the nominative).

FEMININE:

Nouns ending in **s** (with a consonant just preceding it);
in **x;**
in **ās, is, ēs** (having the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive).
in **iō;**
in **dō, gō** (gen. in **-inis**);
in **ūs** (gen. in **-ūtis**).

NEUTER:

Nouns ending in **e, t, al, ar, ur, en, us** (gen. in **-oris** or **-eris**).

216. Review the meanings of the following nouns and give the gender of each, stating the rule in full which covers the word given:

frīgus, frīgoris, *cold.*
flūmen, flūminis, *river.*
fortitūdō, -inis, *bravery.*
frāter, frātris, *brother.*
gēns, gentis, *tribe.*
genus, generis, *race, kind.*
imperātor, -ōris, *general.*
lībertās, lībertātis, *liberty.*
mare, maris, *sea.*
mīles, mīlitis, *soldier.*
mōs, mōris, *custom.*
nāvis, nāvis, *ship.*
obses, obsidis, *hostage.*
pars, partis, *part.*
pedes, peditis, *foot-soldier.*
pāx, pācis, *peace.*
turris, turris, *tower.*
urbs, urbis, *city.*
vestis, vestis, *garment.*
virtūs, virtūtis, *virtue, courage.*
caput, capitis, *head.*
comes, comitis, *companion.*
foedus, foederis, *treaty, compact.*

a. Observe that genitives in **-ōris** are from masculine nouns; those in **-oris** from neuter nouns.

217. VOCABULARY

ars, artis, f., *skill.*
ēloquentia, -ae, f., *eloquence.*
ōrātor, ōrātōris, m., *orator.*
vīta, -ae, f., *life.*
discō, discere, *learn.*
excēdō, excēdere, *go out, withdraw.*

218. EXERCISES

1. Send your friends to learn eloquence.
2. Defend your life.
3. Do[1] this which we say.
4. Lead[1] the boy to Rome.
5. Lead[1] out all our forces from the city.
6. Teach this art to your brother.
7. Throw all the garments into the sea.
8. Build a tower to[2] protect your city.
9. Lead[1] out troops from Rome.
10. Withdraw into the town.

219. READING EXERCISE

GĀIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR (*continued*)

Tum Sulla ē vītā excēdit et Caesar Rhodum nāvigat, ut ā Molōne, ōrātōre clārō, ēloquentiae artem discat. Nāvigantem eum pīrātae capiunt et magnam pecūniam prō vītā postulant. Caesar servōs et amīcōs dīmittit, quī pecūniam petant. Tum eam pīrātīs dōnat, quī eum līberant.

[1] **Dīcō,** *say,* **dūcō,** *lead,* and **faciō,** *do,* drop the **e** final of the present imperative active, second singular, **dīcō** having **dīc, dūcō, dūc,** and **faciō, fac.** So also **ferō.**

[2] I. e., *which may,* a relative clause of purpose.

NOTES

1. **Rhodum:** an island southwest of Asia Minor. Names of smaller islands, like names of towns, omit the preposition in expressing relations of place.

2. **discat:** for the quantity see Introd., **83.**

3. **Nāvigantem:** translate by a clause.

LESSON XXXIII

220.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS **HĪC,** *THIS,* AND **ĪDEM,** *THE SAME*

	Singular				*Singular*	
NOM.	hīc	haec	hōc	īdem	eadem	idem
GEN.	huius	huius	huius	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hōc	eundem	eandem	idem
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
	Plural			*Plural*		
NOM.	hī	hae	haec	iīdem	eaedem	eadem
GEN.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.	hīs	hīs	hīs	iīsdem (eīsdem) *throughout*		
ACC.	hōs	hās	haec	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
ABL.	hīs	hīs	hīs	iīsdem (eīsdem) *throughout*		

a. The demonstratives are constantly used substantively, *i.e.*, with no noun expressed, *e.g.*, **hī,** *these men;* **haec,** *these things;* **eadem,** *the same things.*

b. **Īdem** is simply a strengthened *is*. *M* becomes *n* everywhere before *d*, and some of the forms are shortened at times, as **iīdem** (nom. plural) and **iīsdem** (dat. or abl. plural), becoming respectively **īdem** and **īsdem.**

221. VOCABULARY

arma, -ōrum, n. pl., *arms.*
cīvitās, cīvitātis, f., *state.*
classis, classis, f., *fleet.*
cōnsilium, consilī, n., *plan.*
cum,[1] preposition with the ablative, *with* (see **124**).
factum, -ī, n., *deed, act.*
gravis, grave, *heavy, severe.*
imāgō, imāginis, f., *statue.*
quaestor, quaestōris, m., *quaestor*, a Roman magistrate.
statim, adv., *immediately.*
accipiō, accipere, *receive, accept.*
creō, creāre, *elect.*
opprimō, opprimere, *crush, over power.*
ōrnō, ōrnāre, *equip, adorn.*

222. EXERCISES

1. Haec cīvitās, propter cōnsilia prīncipum, foedus nōn accipiet.
2. Ego hās legiōnēs iīsdem armīs ōrnāre nōn poterō.
3. Haec foedera cīvitātibus Britanniae nōn erant grāta.
4. Haec classis quae ex Italiā mittitur ā Britannīs nōn opprimētur.
5. Arma Belgārum et Gallōrum eadem erant.
6. Hī ducēs urbem Rōmam multīs aedificiīs ōrnābunt.
7. The plans of this brave general will not be accepted.
8. The states of Gaul will at once elect the same general to wage war with these Britons.
9. Will he not be able to crush them with these forces which he has with him?
10. You cannot accept the same hostages, can you?

[1] It is placed after and joined to the ablative of all personal and reflexive pronouns, and of the relative, — as *quibuscum, nōbiscum.* When used in this way it is called an *enclitic.* See Introd. **71**, *c.*

223. READING EXERCISE

GĀIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR (*continued*)

Deinde Caesar Mīlētum statim sē recipit et classem parat. Cum hāc classe in eam partem ubi pīrātae erant nāvigat, eōs superat, et in fugam dat. Multōs ex iīs capit, quī gravem poenam dant. Posteā Rōmānī Caesarem quaestōrem creant et in Hispāniam mittunt, ubi nōn diū manet. Nam Gādibus in Herculis templō Magnī Alexandrī imāginem videt et statim Rōmam sē recipit, ut eum factīs aemulet.

NOTES

1. Mīlētum: a city in the southwestern part of Asia Minor. See note on *Rōmā*, **209**, line 7.

6. Gādibus: a city in the southern part of Spain.

8. aemulet: *strive to equal*, or *excel*, from **aemulō, aemulāre**.

Alexander the Great

LESSON XXXIV

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS **ILLE** AND **ISTE**, *THAT*; THE INTENSIVE **IPSE**, *SELF*

224. EXAMPLES

	Singular			*Plural*		
NOM.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
NOM.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

a. **Iste** is declined in exactly the same way as **ille.** It is sometimes called the demonstrative of the second person, so often does it refer to something near or belonging to the person addressed; as, **istud,** *that of yours.*

b. **Ipse,** otherwise declined in the same way as **ille,** has *ipsum* in the neuter singular nominative and accusative; as, **ipse, ipsa, ipsum,** etc.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Hīc vir fortis, ille ignāvus est.** *This man is brave, that one cowardly.*

2. **Rōmānī et Belgae pugnant; hī fugient, illī manēbunt.** *The Romans and Belgians are fighting; the latter will flee, the former will remain.*

3. **Haec ego et tū faciēmus;**[1] **illa Sextus (faciet).** *You and I will do these things; Sextus (will do) those.*

4. **Caesar ipse haec faciēbat.** *Caesar himself was doing these things.*

[1] See p. 111, footnote 2.

c. **Ille** is used, in contrast with **hīc**, of an object further away; **hīc** of an object nearer at hand, as in the above sentences.

d. **Ille** and **iste**, just as **hīc** and **īdem**, are constantly used as substantives without the nouns being expressed with which they properly agree. **Is** is also used in the same way, but is not emphatic.

e. **Hīc** is often translated *the latter*, and **ille** *the former*.

f. **Ipse**, literally *self*, may sometimes be translated in other ways for emphasis; as, **in ipsīs rīpīs**, *on the banks themselves*, or *on the very banks*, or *right on the banks*.

225. VOCABULARY

aedīlis, aedīlis, m., *aedile*, a Roman magistrate.
aes, aeris, n., *copper*, *money*.
aliēnus, -a, -um, *of another*; **aes aliēnum**, *debt*, i. e., *another's money*.
crūdēlitās, crūdēlitātis, f., *cruelty*.
ignāvus, -a, -um, *cowardly*.
lūdus, -ī, m., *game*.
nihil, indeclinable noun, n., *nothing*.
nōtus, -a, -um, *known*, *well-known*.
populus, -ī, m., *people*.
quoque, adv., *also*.
societās, societātis, f., *alliance*.
administrō, administrāre, *manage*, *control*.

226. EXERCISES

1. Ego[1] illum, ille ipse tē laudābit.
2. Hīc quoque mīles vōbīs omnia cōnsilia illīus imperātōris dīcet.

[1] Supply the form **laudābō**, of which **ego** is the subject, from **laudābit**.

3. Illī et hī, suntne amīcī?
4. Ista[1] virtūs ignāvam crūdēlitātem populī superābit.
5. Societātem quam tū ipse postulās, ille prohibēbit.
6. Virtūs huius aedīlis nōta est populō, et crūdēlitās illīus praetōris.
7. That man himself will describe to you the games about which you wish to know.
8. Is that alliance of yours known to the Roman people?
9. Let the aedile sail in that ship in order that he may see those games of yours.
10. You yourself will see their cruelty, and will not desire to wage war with them.

227. READING EXERCISE

GĀIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR (*continued*)

Aedīlis Caesar Rōmam magnīs aedificiīs ōrnat et lūdōs facit, ut populī animōs sibi conciliet. Iīs lūdīs magnam pecūniam expendit et magnum aes aliēnum cōnflat. Tum populus eum cum Mārcō Bibulō cōnsulem creant. Bibulus autem nihil facere potest; nam Caesar cum Gnaeō Pompēiō et Mārcō Crassō societātem facit, ut cīvitātem inter sē administrent.

NOTES

1. **aedīlis**: in apposition with **Caesar**. Translate by a clause with *when*. Compare **adulēscēns, 209**, line 2.
2. **conciliet**: pres. subjunct. of **conciliō, -āre**, *win over*.
   lūdīs: ablative of cause.
3. **magnam**: *large* (*amount of*).
   expendit: from **expendō, -ere**, *pay out*.
4. **cōnflat**, from **cōnflō, cōnflāre**, *blow together*, i. e., *cause, contract*.

[1] See note *a* above.

LESSON XXXV

228. REVIEW

PRESENT STEM OF VERB

1. Memorize the following synopses so that they can be given with great rapidity:

	I		II	
	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
		Indicative		
Pres.	laudō	laudōr	doceō	doceor
Impf.	laudābam	laudābar	docēbam	docēbar
Fut.	laudābō	laudābor	docēbō	docēbor
		Subjunctive		
Pres.	laudem	laudēr	doceam	docear
Impf.	laudārem	laudārer	docērem	docērer
		Imperative		
Pres.	laudā	laudāre	docē	docēre
		Infinitive		
Pres.	laudāre	laudārī	docēre	docērī
		Participle		
Pres.	laudāns		docēns	

	III		III (-iō)	
Pres.	regō	regor	capiō	capior
Impf.	regēbam	regēbar	capiēbam	capiēbar
Fut.	regam	regar	capiam	capiar
		Subjunctive		
Pres.	regam	regar	capiam	capiar
Impf.	regerem	regerer	caperem	caperer
		Imperative		
Pres.	rege	regere	cape	capere

	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
		Infinitive		
Pres.	regere	regī	capere	capī
		Participle		
Pres.	regēns		capiēns	

IV

Pres.	mūniō	mūnior	Imperative	
Impf.	mūniēbam	mūniēbar	Pres. mūnī	mūnīre
Fut.	mūniam	mūniar	Infinitive	
	Subjunctive		Pres. mūnīre	mūnīrī
Pres.	mūniam	mūniar	Participle	
Impf.	mūnīrem	mūnīrer	Pres. mūniēns	

Observe that in the Third and the Fourth Conjugations, the form of the future indicative and the present subjunctive is the same in the first person singular. Is this true of the other persons?

2. Give synopses in the same manner throughout the present stem of each of these verbs in the third person, singular and plural, omitting the imperative.

3. Give the meaning of each of the following nouns, and write its form in the genitive singular and accusative plural, with the pronouns **hīc, īdem,** and **ille,** in the correct form for agreement:

Sevēritās; rēx; mors; genus; virtūs; mare; nāvis; fortitūdō; arbor; timor.

4. State the general rule by which you determine the gender of each of the nouns in the third question.

5. Decline together:

1. **Id templum ingēns.** 2. **Eae cōpiae omnēs.** 3. **Is puer audāx.** 4. **Vir fortis et ācer.**

6. What kind of a pronoun is **sē**? Decline it in full. What kind of a pronoun is **ipse**? Give its genitive singular and plural. What kind of a pronoun is **ille**? Give its dative singular. Explain the meanings of the names given to distinguish these different sorts of pronouns (see Introd. **33**).

7. Give the personal pronouns with their meanings, and decline them. Give the possessives. Give the relative. How does the declension of the interrogative differ from that of the relative? State the rule for the agreement of the relative.

8. Give the Latin for:

1. You and I[1] will do this. 2. Let us do everything which he asks. 3. Let him betake himself home from the city. 4. I shall flee to save myself. 5. I shall send out the soldiers that you and he[1] may remain.

9. What uses of the Latin subjunctive have you studied? Give an English and a Latin example of each.

[1] See **212**, footnote 2.

Temple

LESSON XXXVI

THE FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS — STEMS IN -U

229. EXAMPLES

	impetus, -ūs, m., *attack.*	**cornū, -ūs,** n., *horn.*
Stems	**impetu-**	**cornu-**
	Singular	
Nom.	impetus	cornū
Gen.	impetūs	cornūs
Dat.	impetuī	cornuī (-ū)
Acc.	impetum	cornū
Abl.	impetū	cornū
	Plural	
Nom.	impetūs	cornua
Gen.	impetuum	cornuum
Dat.	impetibus	cornibus
Acc.	impetūs	cornua
Abl.	impetibus	cornibus

Case Endings

	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Neut.*
	Singular		*Plural*	
Nom.	**-us**	**-ū**	**-ūs**	**-ua**
Gen.	**-ūs**	**-ūs**	**-uum**	**-uum**
Dat.	**-uī (-ū)**	**-uī (-ū)**	**-ibus (-ubus)**	**-ibus (-ubus)**
Acc.	**-um**	**-ū**	**-ūs**	**-ua**
Abl.	**-ū**	**-ū**	**-ibus (-ubus)**	**-ibus (-ubus)**

a. Most nouns of this declension end in **-us** in the nominative singular and are masculine. But **domus,** *house,* and **manus,** *hand,* with a few others are feminine.

b. Neuters, which are few, are declined like **cornū,** ending in **-ū** in the nominative singular.

c. Some nouns have **-ubus** in the dative and ablative plural, as **lacus,** *lake;* others allow either **-ubus** or **-ibus,** as, **portus,** *harbor.*

d. **Domus,** *house,* properly belonging to this declension, has some forms from a stem in **-o** of the Second Declension, as **domī** (locative, see **178,** pp. 89–90) *at home;* **domō, domōrum, domōs.**

230. VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, m., *approach, arrival.*
cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing* (of an army).
dexter, dextra, dextrum, *right.*
equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry.*
exercitus, -ūs, m., *army.*
fīlia, -ae, f., *daughter.*
impetus, -ūs, m., *attack.*
intereā, adv., *meanwhile.*
lacus, -ūs, *m., lake.*
manus, -ūs, f., *hand, band.*
portus, -ūs, m., *harbor.*
tot, indec. adj., *so many.*
incolō, incolere, *inhabit.*
pertineō, pertinēre, *reach, extend.*
redigō, redigere, *bring, reduce.*
sustineō, sustinēre, *withstand, endure.*

231. EXERCISES

1. Intereā nōs vestrum exercitum propter perfidiam ducis vestrī vincēmus.
2. Lacus ab illīs montibus ad fīnēs Belgārum pertinet.
3. Equitātus in[1] dextrum cornū exercitūs impetum faciet.
4. Tot impetūs hostium nostrōrum sustinēre nōn possumus.
5. Post adventum nostrī equitātūs hostēs fugient.
6. Dux mittat ex illō Italiae portū exercitum quī magnās cōpiās hostium opprimat.

[1] **In,** *upon, against.*

7. Meanwhile send a band of soldiers to defend the harbor from the attack of the pirates.
8. Let the right wing of our army sustain the attack of the enemies' cavalry.
9. In the harbors and on the lakes are many ships.
10. After the arrival of so many bands of allies our army will be able to sustain your attack.

232. READING EXERCISE

GĀIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR (*continued*)

Tum Caesar Galliam prōvinciam accipit, quam in potestātem populī Rōmānī redigit. Pontem in flūmine Rhēnō facit et Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, superat. Deinde in Britanniam nāvigat et Britannōs superat et obsidēs ab iīs accipit. Intereā Crassus in fīnēs Parthōrum iter facit, quī eum vincunt et interficiunt. Iūlia quoque, Caesaris fīlia, quae Pompēī uxor erat, ē vītā excēdit.

NOTES

1. prōvinciam: in apposition with **Galliam**; translate by a phrase with *as*.

6. Parthōrum: a people east of Syria and south of the Caspian Sea, with whom the Romans waged many wars.

Coin of Alexander

LESSON XXXVII

THE FIFTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS— STEMS IN -Ē

ABLATIVE EXPRESSING TIME WHEN OR WITHIN WHICH
ACCUSATIVE EXPRESSING TIME HOW LONG

233. EXAMPLES

	diēs, m. (f.), *day.*			rēs, f., *thing.*		
Stems,	diē-			rē-		
	Singular		Endings	*Plural*		Endings
Nom.	diēs	rēs	-ēs	diēs	rēs	-ēs
Gen.	diēī	reī	-eī	diērum	rērum	-ērum
Dat.	diēī	reī	-eī	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus
Acc.	diem	rem	-em	diēs	rēs	-ēs
Abl.	diē	rē	-ē	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus

a. All nouns of this declension are feminine except **diēs** (which is occasionally feminine in the singular).

b. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of this declension which are declined throughout the entire singular and plural.

c. Most nouns of this declension lack the plural; a few, as **spēs**, *hope*, and **aciēs**, *battle-line*, have in the plural only the nominative and accusative.

ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE OF TIME

234. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Tribus diēbus hōc audiētis.** *Within three days you will hear this.*

2. **Tertiō diē hōc audiētis.** *On the third day you will hear this.*

3. **Trēs diēs hōc audiētur.** *For three days this will be heard.*

d. Sentence 1 states that something is to be heard at some time in the course of the next three days — not the particular day *on which*, but the limit of time, three days, *within which* it is to be heard. For this idea the Latin uses the ablative.

Sentence 2 states definitely the time *when* it will be heard, not on the first day or the second, but on the third day. This also the Latin expresses by the ablative.

Sentence 3 states that all through three days this will be heard, giving the duration of the time. For this the Latin uses the accusative.

235. Rule. — *The* TIME WHEN *an event happens, or the* TIME WITHIN WHICH *it occurs, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; the* TIME DURING WHICH *it continues, by the accusative.*

236. VOCABULARY

absēns, absentis, gen., *absent.*
aestās, aestātis, f., *summer.*
aliquot, indef. indecl. pron., *several.*
annus, -ī, m., *year.*
brevis, breve, *short.*
cōnsulātus, -ūs, m., *consulship.*
diēs, -ēī, m. (f.), *day.*
hiems, hiemis, f., *winter, storm.*
hōra, -ae, f., *hour.*
iterum, adv., *again.*
prīmō, adv., *at first, first.*
posterus, -a, -um, *following.*
rēs, reī, f., *thing, affair.*
trēs, tria (see Appendix *432*), *three.*
terrā marīque (phrase, old locative form), *by land and by sea.*
discēdō, discēdere, *depart.*
nēgō, negāre, *deny, refuse, say no.*

237. EXERCISES

1. Tribus annīs Caesar cum magnō exercitū in Italiam perveniet.
2. Trēs annōs bellum terrā marīque gerētur.
3. Aliquot hōrās impetūs eōrum sustinēre poterimus.

4. Hanc hiemem Sextus in hōc portū Belgārum manēbit, sed aestāte posterā discēdet.
5. Hanc diem Rōmānī sociīque fortēs eōrum cum hostibus terrā marīque pugnābant.
6. Posterō diē ē castrīs discēdēmus et ad urbem perveniēmus.
7. Within three days the battle will be fought.
8. For several hours we shall be in great danger.
9. On the arrival of the general these things will be known.
10. That day I shall see him, but on the following day I shall depart.

238. READING EXERCISE

GĀIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR (*continued*)

Propter hās causās prīmō inter Caesarem et Pompēium aemulātiō erat, deinde bellum. Caesar, quī cum Gallīs bellum gerit, absēns cōnsulātum petere cupit, sed Pompēius et senātus negant. Tum Caesar ā Galliā cum omnibus cōpiīs venit et trāns Rubicōnem flūmen, quī prōvinciae eius fīnis erat, iter facit. Multās urbēs vī capit et Brundisium properat, ut cum Pompēiō bellum faciat. Ille autem in Ēpīrum fugit.

Notes

2. aemulātiō, see General Vocabulary.

3. absēns: candidates for the consulship had to be at Rome; Caesar, as governor of Gaul, could not leave his province.

5. Rubicōnem: a small stream flowing into the Adriatic Sea, between Umbria and Cisalpine Gaul.

7. Brundisium: a town in Apulia in southeastern Italy.

LESSON XXXVIII

SUBSTANTIVE (NOUN) CLAUSES WITH **UT** OR **NĒ**, RESEMBLING PURPOSE CLAUSES

INFINITIVE CLAUSES WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

239. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Venīre possum.** *I am able to come*, or *I can come.*
2. **Tē venīre cupiō.** *I desire you to come.*
3. **Iubeō tē venīre.** *I order you to come.*
4. **Imperō (tibi) ut veniās.** *I order you to come.*
5. **Imperō (tibi) nē veniās.** *I order you not to come.*

An infinitive may be used: (*a*) alone, to fill out or complete the meaning of another word (complementary infinitive; see **167** and *b*); (*b*) with a subject in the accusative, as the object of another verb.

In the illustrative sentences above, **1** contains a complementary infinitive; sentences **2** and **3**, an infinitive with subject accusative (taken together as a noun) used as the object of the verbs **cupiō** and **iubeō**; while **4** and **5** contain clauses having exactly the same force as the infinitive clauses in **2** and **3**, but in these **ut** and **nē** with the subjunctive replace the infinitive with subject accusative.

The translation of the substantive clauses with **ut** or **nē** may be given, not by the English infinitive, as in **4** and **5**, but by the longer and more literal (I order) "that you come" or "that you do not come"; the connection must in each case determine which is the better translation.

240. Rule. — *Verbs meaning to* **ask, demand, persuade, advise,** *and* **imperō,** *to* **command,** *are followed by object clauses in the subjunctive introduced by* **ut** *or* **nē. Iubeō,** *to* **command, cupiō,** *to* **desire, vetō,** *to* **forbid,** *and others, are followed by object clauses in the infinitive with subjects in the accusative.*

241. VOCABULARY

domus, -ūs, f., *house.* (See Appendix for forms of Declens. II.)
domum (acc. of **domus**), *home.* This omits the preposition like names of towns. (See Lesson XXIV.)
domō (abl. of **domus**), *from home,* — place from which. (See Lesson XXIV.)
domī (locative), *at home.*
eō, adv., *thither, to that place.*
lēgātus, -ī, m., *lieutenant, ambassador, envoy.*
rūs, rūris, n., *country.*
rūrī (locative), *in the country.*
rūs (acc.), *to the country.* Cf. **domum.**
imperō, imperāre, *order, command.*
iubeō, iubēre, *order, command.*
ōrō, ōrāre, *beg, entreat.*
persuādeō, persuādēre, *persuade.*
rogō, rogāre, *ask.*

242. EXERCISES

1. Lēgātus nōs omnēs vōbīscum rūrī manēre iubet.
2. Quis tibi imperābit ut domō discēdās?
3. Potesne lēgātō[1] persuādēre ut imperātōrī haec verba nūntiet?
4. Hunc rogābō ut veniat, sed persuādēre nōn poterō.
5. Eum moneāmus nē domum veniat.

[1] Verbs of *commanding* (except **iubeō**) and *persuading* (and others) take a dative of the indirect object, usually translated without *to.*

6. Ab illīs petit[1] ut domī maneant.
7. I advise and demand that you go away from this place at once.
8. Let us persuade these boys not to stay at home.
9. I beg you to tell me the names of these friends of yours (these your friends).
10. We ask you to come home, but you wish to depart to the country.

243. READING EXERCISE

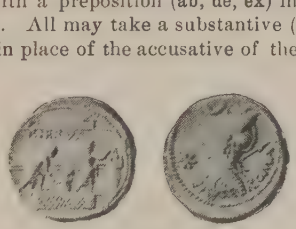
GĀIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR (*continued*)

Caesar Brundisiō Dyrrachium gravī hieme nāvigat et cōpiās eō venīre iubet. Deinde Pompēium proeliō Pharsalicō superat. Ille ad Ptolemaeum Aegyptī rēgem, fugit, quī eum interficit. Caesar cum Ptolemaeō bellum gerit et eum vincit. Tum in Pontum properat et Pharnacem, Mithridātis fīlium, superat; deinde in Āfricam iter facit, ubi cēterōs Pompēiānōs vincit.

NOTE

2. **Eō**, here an adverb of place meaning *thither, to that place.*

[1] Some verbs of *asking* take two objects accusative in Latin. Some take an ablative with a preposition (**ab, dē, ex**) instead of the accusative of the person. All may take a substantive (noun) clause introduced by **ut** or **nē** in place of the accusative of the thing.



A Roman Coin

LESSON XXXIX

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS. THE PERFECT STEM. THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE

244. *EXAMPLES OF THE PERFECT STEM*

laudō	**doceō**	**regō**	**mūniō**	**capiō**
laudāv-	**docu-**	**rēx-** (rēgs-)	**mūnīv-**	**cēp-**

a. The perfect stem is formed in several ways: (1) by adding *v* to the present stem, as **laudā-, laudāv-**; **mūnī-, mūnīv-**; (2) by adding *u* to the root (see Introd. **25**), as **doc-, docu-**; (3) by adding *s* to the root, as **rēx-** from **reg-** (for **rēgs-**); (4) by lengthening the root with change of its vowel, as **cēp-** from **capiō**. To these stems are added the various endings.

ENDINGS OF THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Singular	*Plural*
-ī	**-imus**
-istī	**-istis**
-it	**-ērunt** or **-ēre**

I have praised, etc.

laudā′vī	**do′cuī**	**rē′xī**	**mūnī′vī**	**cē′pī**
laudāvis′tī	**docuis′tī**	**rexis′ti**	**mūnīvis′ti**	**cēpis′tī**
laudā′vit	**do′cuit**	etc.	etc.	etc.
laudā′vimus	**docu′imus**			
laudāvis′tis	**docuis′tis**	See Appendix for complete conjugation		
laudāvē′runt	**docuē′runt**			
laudāvē′re	**docuē′re**			

b. The perfect participle is passive in sense. It is declined like **magnus, magna, magnum**, and of course, like an adjective, agrees with the noun or pronoun it

qualifies. It has the nominative ending, **-tus, -ta, -tum** (often **-sus, -sa, -sum**), which is added sometimes to the present stem (as **laudā-tus**, *having been praised*), sometimes to the root (as **doc-tus**, *having been taught*; **duc-tus**, *having been led*).

c. Four parts of a Latin verb must be known in order that we may be able to give any other form needed. These, called the Principal Parts, are as follows: —

EXAMPLES

	Present Indic.	Present Infin.	Perfect Indic.	Perfect Part., n.
I.	**laudō**	**laudāre**	**laudāvī**	**laudātum**
II.	**doceō**	**docēre**	**docuī**	**doctum**
	dēleō	**dēlēre**	**dēlēvī**	**dēlētum**
III.	**regō**	**regere**	**rēxī**	**rēctum**
	capiō	**capere**	**cēpī**	**captum**
IV.	**mūniō**	**mūnīre**	**mūnīvī**	**mūnītum**

d. These principal parts are formed from three stems: 1. the present; 2. the perfect; 3. the supine. The supine always has the same form as the neuter of the perfect participle. It should be carefully observed that the perfect participle is not formed from the perfect stem, but from the supine stem.

245. VOCABULARY

fēlīx, fēlīcis, *happy.*
opus, operis, n., *work.*
perpetuus, -a, -um, *perpetual.*
superbus, -a, -um, *proud, haughty.*

cōnspiciō, cōnspicere, cōnspexī, cōnspectum, *catch sight of, see.*
cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtum, *determine, appoint.*

dīcō,	**dīcere,**	**dīxī,**	**dictum,**	*say, tell.*
expellō,	**expellere,**	**expulī,**	**expulsum,**	*expel.*
faciō,	**facere,**	**fēcī,**	**factum,**	*do, make.*
fugiō,	**fugere,**	**fūgī,**	**fugitum,**	*flee.*
imperō,	**imperāre,**	**imperāvī,**	**imperātum,**	*command.*
iubeō,	**iubēre,**	**iussī,**	**iussum,**	*order.*
maneō,	**manēre,**	**mānsī,**	**mānsum,**	*remain.*
mittō,	**mittere,**	**mīsī,**	**missum,**	*send.*
pōnō,	**pōnere,**	**posuī,**	**positum,**	*place.*
premō,	**premere,**	**pressī,**	**pressum,**	*press, press hard.*

246. EXERCISES

1. Docuistī.[1] Capiet. Positus. Manēbitis. Iussit. Cōnspiciam. Cōnspeximus. Cēpit. Mīsērunt. Cōnstitūtum.
2. Expulistis.[1] Expulsus. Mānsistī. Mīsimus. Posuit. Pressit. Mīsī. Fēcērunt. Pōnet. Pōnit.
3. Dux noster mē sēcum manēre iussit.
4. Impetum fēcimus in exercitum hostium.
5. Caesar equitātum Belgārum ā[2] dextrō cornū cōnspexit.
6. Aliquot obsidēs multōs annōs in oppidīs Gallōrum mānsērunt.
7. Having been taught (nom. plural masc.). Having been expelled (accus. sing. masc.).
8. The Belgians destroyed the first and second battle-line of the Romans.
9. The cavalry on the right wing of the enemy fled to the lake.
10. Within these days Caesar has expelled his enemies from Rome.

[1] Give, before translating, the tense, mood, voice, person (where it is indicated), and number.

[2] In this and similar phrases the Latin often should be translated by *on* rather than by *from*.

247. READING EXERCISE

GĀIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR (*continued*)

Tum Gnaeus Pompēius, Magnī Pompēī fīlius, bellum in Hispāniā fēcit. Caesar eō properāvit et apud Mundam Pompēium vīcit et interfēcit. Tum Rōmam sē recēpit, ubi omnibus inimīcīs veniam dedit. In animō habēbat multa opera Rōmae facere, ut urbs pulchra et cīvēs fēlīcēs essent. Intereā sē dictātōrem perpetuum creāvit et superbus esse incipiēbat. Mārcus Antōnius, quī cum Caesare cōnsul erat, eum rēgem facere cupīvit.

NOTE

5. **pulchra** and **fēlīcēs** are predicate adjectives. Translate after **esset** (to be supplied with **urbs** from **essent**) and **essent**.

LESSON XL

FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE. FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE OR GERUNDIVE

248. *FIRST AND SECOND PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. DATIVE OF THE AGENT.*

FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE	*FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE (GERUNDIVE)*
laudāt**ūrus**, *about to praise*, etc.	laud**andus**, *to be praised*, etc.
doct**ūrus**	doc**endus**
rĕct**ūrus**	reg**endus**
capt**ūrus**	capi**endus**
mūnīt**ūrus**	mūni**endus**

a. By joining the Future Active Participle with **sum** in its various forms we get the First Periphrastic Con-

jugation, as it is called, **laudātūrus sum**, *I am going to praise.* This is simply an emphatic future. Observe that it is an active form, although it consists of a participle and the verb **sum.**

b. By joining the Future Passive Participle or Gerundive with the forms of **sum** we get the Second Periphrastic Conjugation, **laudandus est,** *he is to be praised, he must be praised.* This expresses obligation (translated by *ought*) or necessity (translated by *must*).

With the gerundive construction the person on whom the necessity rests, i. e., the agent, is expressed by the dative, and not, as with most passive forms, by the ablative with **ā** or **ab** (see Lesson XVII).

c. Study the synopsis of these two conjugations as given in the Appendix, (**446**, **447**).

249. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Hunc puerum laudātūrus sum,	*I am about to praise this boy.* *I am going to praise this boy.*
2. Hīc puer mihi laudandus est,	*This boy must be praised by me.* *This boy is to be praised by me,* *This boy ought to be praised by me.* *I must praise this boy.*

a. In the first sentence **laudātūrus sum** is an instance of the use of the First or Active Periphrastic Conjugation, simply replacing **laudābō** with more emphasis.

The second sentence illustrates the Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation; it is to be translated in one of the ways denoting necessity or obligation, and is

accompanied by a dative of the agent, **mihi**, instead of the ablative with the preposition **ā** or **ab**.

250. Rule. — *With the Second Periphrastic Conjugation, or with the Gerundive alone, the noun or pronoun denoting the agent must be put in the dative instead of in the ablative with a preposition.*

251. VOCABULARY

coniūrātus, -ī, m., *conspirator.*
Īdūs, Īduum, f. pl., *the Ides*, middle of month (13th or 15th day).
Mārtius, -a, -um, *of March.*
nam, conj., *for.*
nēmō, gen. **nūllīus**, dat. **nēminī**, acc. **nēminem**, abl. **nūllō**, m., *no one.*
reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, rest of.*
vulnus, vulneris, n., *wound.*

arcessō,	**arcessere,**	**arcessīvī,**[1]	**arcessītum,**	*summon.*
dēligō,	**dēligere,**	**dēlēgī,**	**dēlēctum,**	*choose.*
incendō,	**incendere,**	**incendī,**	**incēnsum,**	*set on fire.*
iungō,	**iungere,**	**iūnxī,**	**iūnctum,**	*join.*
lacessō,	**lacessere,**	**lacessīvī,**[1]	**lacessītum,**	*provoke, attack.*
possum,	**posse,**	**potuī,**	———[2]	*be able.*
sum,	**esse,**	**fuī,**	**futūrus,**[2]	*be.*
sūmō,	**sūmere,**	**sūmpsī,**	**sūmptum,**	*take* (**poenam sūmere dē**, with ablative, *inflict punishment upon*).[3]
trādūcō,	**trādūcere,**	**trādūxī,**	**trāductum,**	*lead across.*

[1] These verbs and some others have irregularly a perfect indicative and a perfect participle of the fourth conjugation. Other irregularities are frequent in the perfect and supine stems. Hence the greater need of memorizing carefully the principal parts entire.

[2] Some verbs lack the supine stem, some lack the perfect and the supine, and some (as **sum**) have the future active participle but not the perfect passive participle and supine.

[3] Literally, *take punishment from;* compare **poenam dare**, *give (suffer) punishment.*

252. EXERCISES

1. Nēmō haec reliqua aedificia incēnsūrus est.
2. Illa castra mīlitibus nostrīs dēlenda sunt.
3. Reliquī captīvī mīlitibus ex castrīs in īnsulam Īdibus Mārtiīs trādūcendī sunt.
4. Poena dē omnibus hostibus nostrīs nōbīs est sūmenda.
5. Hōc oppidum ā Caesare captum prōvinciae Rōmānōrum iungendum est.
6. Quis dē iīs poenam sūmptūrus est? Nēmō.
7. I am going to write a letter to my friend.
8. I must write it immediately.
9. My enemies must be punished.[1]
10. On the Ides of March we[2] must summon the remaining soldiers home from Corinth to Rome.

253. READING EXERCISE

GĀIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR (*continued*)

Propter hās causās Mārcus Brūtus et Gāius Cassius coniūrātiōnem fēcēruṇt, ut Īdibus Mārtiīs Caesarem in senātū interficerent. Multa indicia futūrī perīculī erant; tamen Caesar uxōrem Calpurniam nōn audīvit et eō diē in senātum vēnit. Ibi coniūrātī eum multīs vulneribus cōnfodiunt et eum interficiunt, M. Brūtō dīcentem: "Tū quoque, mī fīlī?"

NOTES

2. Īdibus Mārtiīs: the Ides were the 15th of March. An ablative of time *when*.

[1] *i. e., punishment must be taken from my enemies.*

[2] *i. e., the remaining soldiers must be summoned by us;* the gerundive is, of course, always passive.

3. indicia: neuter plural nominative of **indicium, -ī**, *sign, indication.*

futūrī, *coming*, adj. in genitive modifying **perīculī.**

4. audīvit: *hear*, i. e., *listen to, heed.*

6. cōnfodiunt: *stab.*

7. mī fīlī: vocative of **meus fīlius.** The sentence is incomplete (see Introd. **60**); supply **mē cōnfodis,** or something similar.

LESSON XLI

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE IN THE ACTIVE VOICE FORMED ON THE PERFECT STEM

254. *PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE. ENDINGS*

PERFECT INDIC.	PERFECT SUBJ.	FUT. PERF. INDIC.	PLUPERF. INDIC.	PLUPERF. SUBJ.
-ī	**-erim**	**-erō**	**-eram**	**-issem**
-istī	**-eris**	**-eris**	**-erās**	**-issēs**
-it	**-erit**	**-erit**	**-erat**	**-isset**
-imus	**-erimus**	**-erimus**	**-erāmus**	**-issēmus**
-istis	**-eritis**	**-eritis**	**-erātis**	**-issētis**
-ērunt, -ēre	**-erint**	**-erint**	**-erant**	**-issent**

a. Inflect these tenses of **laudō, doceō, regō, capiō, mūniō,** and **sum,** by adding the proper endings to the perfect stems: **laudāv-, docu-, rēx-, cēp-, mūnīv-, fu-.** See Appendix, **439–444.**

b. The perfect active infinitive of any verb may be formed by adding the ending **-isse** to the perfect stem; hence we have:

laudāvisse, *to have praised.*
docuisse, *to have taught.*
rēxisse, *to have ruled.*
cēpisse, *to have taken.*
mūnīvisse, *to have fortified.*
fuisse, *to have been.*
potuisse, *to have been able.*

c. Observe that the endings of the future perfect indicative and those of the perfect subjunctive are identical[1] except in the first person singular: **laudāverō**, future perfect indicative; but **laudāverim**, perfect subjunctive.

d. Observe that the subjunctive has no forms corresponding to the future or future perfect of the indicative.

e. Just as the imperfect subjunctive of any verb may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive, so the pluperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the perfect active infinitive: **laudāre, laudārem; docēre, docērem; regere, regerem: laudāvisse, laudāvissem; docuisse, docuissem; rēxisse, rēxissem.**

255. VOCABULARY

modus, -ī, m., *manner, way.*

compleō,	**complēre,**	**complēvī,**	**complētum,**	*fill.*
dēfendō,	**dēfendere,**	**dēfendī,**	**dēfēnsum,**	*defend.*
discēdō,	**discēdere,**	**discessī,**	**discessum,**	*depart.*
gerō,	**gerere,**	**gessī,**	**gestum,**	*do, wage.*
habeō,	**habēre,**	**habuī,**	**habitum,**	*have, hold.*
iaciō,	**iacere,**	**iēcī,**	**iactum,**	*throw.*
impediō,	**impedīre,**	**impedīvī,**	**impedītum,**	*hinder.*
interficiō,	**interficere,**	**interfēcī,**	**interfectum,**	*kill.*
inveniō,	**invenīre,**	**invēnī,**	**inventum,**	*find.*
moveō,	**movēre,**	**mōvī,**	**mōtum,**	*move.*

[1] There was originally a difference in the quantity of the **i**.

256. EXERCISES

1. Mīseram.[1] Discesserō.[1] Iēceram.[1] Impedīvisse.[1] Gesserit.[1] Gessissem.[2] Mōverim.[2] Gestus.[2] Habuissem.[2] Iēceris.[2]
2. Rōmānī multōs annōs bella cum Gallīs gessērunt.
3. Equitēs oppidum aliquot diēs dēfenderant.
4. Quis līberōs prīncipis in flūmen iacī iusserat?
5. Belgae omnia haec loca mīlitibus complēvērunt.
6. Illī mīlitēs nōs omnēs tēlīs dēfendere potuērunt.
7. Those men had not been able to find their friends.
8. They had defended themselves bravely,[3] and were retreating[4] to their camp.
9. Within three days they will have filled their ships and departed.
10. Did they not kill their prisoners and then break[5] camp?

257. READING EXERCISE

GĀIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR (*concluded*)

Coniūrātī Rōmā fugiunt et prīmō in Asiam deinde in Graeciam sē recipiunt, ubi M. Antōnius et C. Octāvius Brūtum et Cassium apud Philippōs vīcērunt. Illī sē interfēcērunt et omnēs coniūrātī miserīs modīs ē vītā excessērunt. Posteā Octāvius, quī ā Caesare testāmentō

[1] Give (*a*) present indicative active first singular, (*b*) where made, (*c*) translation of form.

[2] Give (*a*) present indicative active first singular, (*b*) where made, (*c*) principal parts of the verb.

[3] *i. e.*, with valor.

[4] **sē recipere.**

[5] *i. e.*, move, **moveō.**

adoptātus C. Iūlium Octāviānum sē appellāvit, cum Antōniō bellum fēcit et apud Actium eum vīcit. Tum Rōmānī eum imperātōrem fēcērunt et posteā Augustum appellāvērunt.

NOTES

2. C.: abbreviation for **Gāius**: see Introd. 62, note.

4. miserīs modīs: it is said that no one of the assassins of Caesar died a natural death.

5. testāmentō: (from **testāmentum, -ī**, n., *will*), abl. of means; translate by a phrase with *in*.

6. adoptātus, perf. pass. part. of **adoptō**, *adopt*.

C.: abbreviation for **Gāium**; see note on line 2.

LESSON XLII

258. REVIEW

1. Give (*a*) the genitive singular of a noun of each of the five declensions, placing before each, in the proper form for agreement, the corresponding form of **is**; (*b*) the dative singular in the same way; (*c*) the genitive plural; (*d*) the ablative plural.

2. Which of the cases are used to express "time"? With what difference between them?

Name all the uses of the ablative you know, and illustrate them with short English and Latin examples.

3. What is meant by the term "a substantive clause"?

Do you know any verbs which may take two objects, both in the accusative?

Give some verbs which are followed by a dative of the indirect object, which is often to be translated without "to."

4. "I ask you to call him." Write this sentence in Latin, using **rogō** for "*I ask.*" Then substitute each of the following verbs in turn for **rogō**, employing with each the proper construction for the pronoun "*you*," and for the clause "*to call him*": **petō, moneō, cupiō, iubeō, persuādeō, quaerō, imperō, ōrō, postulō.**

5. Name the three stems of a verb.

Why are certain forms called the "Principal Parts" of a verb?

Give, with examples, four ways of forming the perfect stem.

From which stem is the perfect indicative formed? the perfect participle?

6. Form the present indicative from the perfect stem **tēx-** (*cover*), **vītāv-** (*avoid*), **dēbu-** (*owe*), **fīnīv-** (*finish*), **scrīps-** (*write*).

Form the perfect active infinitive, and the pluperfect subjunctive active first singular, from the perfect stems **iuss-** (**iubeō**, *order*), **vīc-** (**vincō**, *conquer*), **dēfend-** (**dēfendō**, *defend*).

7. Form the present infinitive and the imperfect subjunctive active from the present stems: **pōne-** (**pōnō**, *place*), **sedē-** (**sedeō**, *sit*), **relinque-** (**relinquō**, *leave*), **aperī-** (**aperiō**, *open*).

8. Tell where each of the following forms is made, and give its present indicative active with meaning: **iusserit, dēfendit, dēfendet, cōnspexisset, fūgerit, fugeret,**

faciet, fēcerit, expulissēmus, mānserō, mīseris, pressisse, potuerant, poterant, discēdent, discēdant, iēcērunt, habuisse, habuerit, complēverant.

9. Give all participles, active and passive (with meanings) of: **rogō, iubeō, expellō, mittō, faciō.** How are the future participles, active and passive, chiefly used?

10. What two ways are there of expressing the personal agent with the passive voice? When is each used?

Form the Second Periphrastic Conjugation of **dēfendō**, and give a synopsis of it through the indicative and subjunctive; give also its infinitives.

LESSON XLIII

CUM CLAUSES

259. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Cum mīlitēs nostrī fortēs sint, hostēs nōn timēbimus. *Since our soldiers are brave, we shall not fear the enemy.*

2. Cum cēterī fūgissent, nōs tamen remanēbāmus. *Though the rest had fled, we nevertheless remained.*

3. Cum ad urbem pervēnissēmus, prīncipem arcessīvimus. *When we had arrived at the city, we summoned the leader.*

260. Rule. — *a.* **Cum,** *when it may be translated by* **since** or **because,** *is called* **cum causal**; *it is always followed by the subjunctive.*

b. **Cum,** *when it may be translated by* **although** *is called* **cum concessive,** *and is always followed by the subjunctive.*

c. **Cum,** *meaning* **when,** *is called* **cum temporal,** *and is usually followed by the subjunctive in the imperfect and pluperfect tenses, never in other tenses.*

261. VOCABULARY

cēterī, -ae, -a, *the rest.*
cum, conj., *when, since, although.*
fortiter, adv., *bravely.*
ita, adv., *thus, so.*
iter, itineris, n., *way, road* (nom. and acc. sing. have a different stem from the other cases).
mercātor, mercātōris, m., *merchant, trader.*
mōns,[1] **montis,** m., *mountain.*
praeter, prep. with accus., *except, besides.*
regiō, regiōnis, f., *region.*
tamen, adv., *nevertheless, yet.*
vīcus, -ī, m., *village.*
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum, *become acquainted with, examine.*
intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum, *understand, know.*
subveniō, subvenīre, subvēnī, subventum, *help.*

262. EXERCISES

1. Cum haec ita sint, hostibus fortiter respondeāmus.
2. Cum aliquot diēs in vīcīs huius regiōnis remanērēmus, tamen rēgem gentis nōn vīdimus.
3. Cum cēterī mīlitēs pervēnissent, per montēs iter fēcimus.
4. Cēterōs diēs iter fēcerat per montēs.
5. Cum amīcōs nostrōs in perīculō relīquissēmus manum mīlitum quī iīs [2] subvenīrent mīsimus.
6. Cum vīcōs huius regiōnis vīderis, nūntiā tuō imperātōrī.

[1] Exception to the rule of its declension in gender.
[2] Most verbs of *helping* take the dative in Latin.

7. Since he had bravely done everything which he could, he departed from the town.
8. The rest of the soldiers remained in the city, although we had ordered them to march at once.
9. When he had bravely conquered the enemy, he wrote a letter to the general.
10. You didn't understand me, did you? Yes,[1] I understood, and I desire to help you.[2]

263. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN

Cum Caesar in Galliā esset, in Britanniam nāvigāre cupīvit, ut cum Britannīs bellum gereret. Nam hī ad hostēs nostrōs auxilia mīserant. Parva aestātis pars erat reliqua et in iīs locīs longae sunt hiemēs. Tamen īnsulam vidēre cupīvit et loca, portūs, aditūs cognōscere. Ea omnia neque ā Gallīs neque ā mercātōribus, quī in Britanniam nāvigābant, reperīre poterat. Mercātōrēs enim nihil praeter eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliam cognōverant.

Notes

3. **nostrōs**: from the Roman point of view. So **nostrī**, "*our men*," means the Roman soldiers.

7. **nāvigābant**: imperfect of a customary action. Translate accordingly.

[1] Latin has no word for "yes." The verb of the question is usually repeated, or frequently "ita" is used (Introd. **41**, note).

[2] Most verbs of *helping* take the dative in Latin.

LESSON XLIV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON. ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

264. EXAMPLES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātus (lāto-), *wide*	lāt**ior**, *wider*	lāt**issimus**, *widest*
audāx (audāci-), *bold*	audāc**ior**, *bolder*	audāc**issimus**, *boldest*
fidēlis (fidēli-), *faithful*	fidēl**ior**, *more faithful*	fidēl**issimus**, *most faithful*
necessārius (necessārio-), *necessary*	**magis** necessārius, *more necessary*	**maxīmē** necessārius, *most necessary*
ācer (ācri-), *sharp*	ācr**ior**, *sharper*	ācer**rimus**, *sharpest*
miser (misero-), *wretched*	miser**ior**, *more wretched*	miser**rimus**, *most wretched*
pulcher (pulchro-), *beautiful*	pulchr**ior**, *more beautiful*	pulcher**rimus**, *most beautiful*
celer (celeri-), *swift*	celer**ior**, *swifter*	celer**rimus**, *swiftest*
facilis (facili-), *easy*	facil**ior**, *easier*	facil**limus**, *easiest*
similis (simili-), *similar*	simil**ior**, *quite similar*	simil**limus** *very similar*

a. The ordinary form of the adjective is called the *positive* to distinguish it from the derived forms, the *comparative* and the *superlative.*

b. The comparative (see Introd. **21**) is formed by adding **-ior** to the base (not to the stem) of the positive; the superlative (see Introd. **21**), by adding **-issimus**. A few do not add these endings, but prefix to the positive the adverb **magis**, *more*, and the adverb **maximē**, *most*, to form the comparative and superlative.

c. Adjectives which have a positive ending in **-er** form the superlative by adding the ending, **-rimus** to the form of the nominative singular masculine.

d. **Facilis**, *easy*, **similis**, *similar*, and their opposites, **difficilis**, *difficult*, and **dissimilis**, *dissimilar*, form their superlatives by adding **-limus** to the base.

e. The positive and superlative forms are declined like **bonus**.

f. The comparatives are declined like consonant stems of the Third Declension except in the ablative singular and in the accusative plural.

265. EXAMPLE

Singular		*Plural*	
m. and *f.*	*n.*	*m.* and *f.*	*n.*
lātior, *wider*	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs (-īs)	lātiōra
lātiōrī (-e)	lātiōrī (-e)	lātiōribus	lātiōribus

266. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Fīlia pulchrior est quam māter,**
   or
2. **Fīlia pulchrior mātre est.**

The daughter is more beautiful than the (her) mother.

3. Fīlius fortior est quam pater, *The son is stronger*
or *than his father.*
4. Fīlius fortior patre est.

a. When two objects or persons are compared, English requires the comparative degree of the adjective followed by the conjunction *than* to stand between them. The Latin word **quam** (*than*) may be used in the same way, as in the two sentences **1** and **3** given above; but more usually in Latin an ablative called the *ablative of comparison* takes the place of the phrase with **quam**, as in the sentences **2** and **4** above.

b. These sentences tell us that the daughter is more beautiful than her mother, the son stronger than his father, but they do not tell us *how much* stronger or *how much* more beautiful. A second ablative, which answers the question "(by) how much more beautiful," states the amount, degree, or measure of difference, as:

5. Fīlia multō pulchrior mātre est. *The daughter is much* (*i. e.*, by much) *more beautiful than her mother.*
6. Fīlius paulō fortior patre est. *The son is somewhat* (*i. e.*, by a little) *stronger than his father.*

267. Rule. — *An ablative translated by* **than** *is frequently used with a comparative* (*Ablative of Comparison*).

268. Rule. — *Words expressing comparison* (as verbs, comparative adjectives, or adverbs) *may be followed by an ablative indicating the degree or measure of difference* (*Ablative of Degree of Difference*).

269. VOCABULARY

Alpēs, Alpium, m, pl., *the Alps* (mountains).
celer, celeris, celere, *swift.*
interim, adv., *meanwhile.*
mīlle (with neuter singular accusative **mīlle**), pl. **mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus,** *a thousand.*
multō, adv., *much, by much* (abl. of **multum**).
onerārius, -a, -um, *of burden;* **nāvis onerāria,** *a ship of burden, transport.*
passus, -ūs, m., *pace;* **mīlle passūs,** *a thousand paces, a mile.*
paulō, adv., *a little, by a little* (abl. of **paulum**).
sapiēns, sapientis, *wise.*
tardus, -a, -um, *slow.*
conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum, *come together, assemble.*
explōrō, explōrāre, explōrāvī, explōrātum, *explore, examine.*

270. EXERCISES

1. Quī audāciōrēs Rōmānīs sunt? Quī sapientiōrēs?
2. Hī montēs paulō altiōrēs Alpibus sunt.
3. Belgārum nāvēs multō longiōrēs sunt nāvibus Rōmānōrum.
4. Multō tardiōrēs Rōmānī Belgīs sunt.
5. Nāvēs onerāriae nāvibus longīs nōn celeriōrēs sunt.
6. Hōc iter brevius est illō mīlibus passuum tribus.
7. Marcus is wiser than Publius.
8. The Alps are much higher than these mountains.
9. You cannot find a transport ship much faster than this.
10. I have never seen men braver than the Romans.

271. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Itaque C. Volusēnum cum longā nāve in Britanniam praemīsit, ut omnia explōrāret. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs

in eam Galliae partem properāvit, unde erat brevissimum in Britanniam iter. Ad eum locum nāvēs ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus convenīre iussit et classem quam ad Veneticum bellum aedificāverat. Interim barbarī dē eius cōnsiliīs ā mercātōribus audīvērunt et multae īnsulae cīvitātēs lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt, ut pācem peterent.

Notes

1. C.: of what name is this the abbreviation? See note on **257**, l. 2.

2. praemīsit: *sent ahead.* A large number of compound verbs are made from simple verbs by means of prefixes (see Introd., 24). Of these, **prae-** usually means *ahead, in front;* **con-,** *together;* **re-,** *back* or *again;* **per-,** *through, to the end, continually, thoroughly;* **trāns-,** *across;* **dis-,** *apart, in all directions;* **dē-,** *down from, away from.*

5. convenīre: see note on **praemīsit**, l. 2.

6. ad Veneticum bellum: *for the war with the Veneti.* **Veneticum** is an adjective.

Coin with Prow of Roman Ship

LESSON XLV

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

PARTITIVE GENITIVE

272. Adverbs, like adjectives, admit of comparison They are not declined.

The following is the method for deriving adverbs from adjectives of the Second and First Declensions:

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Adj.	lātus (lāto-), *broad*	lātior	lātissimus
Adv.	lātē, *broadly*	lātius	lātissimē
Adj.	cārus (cāro-), *dear*	cārior	cārissimus
Adv.	cārē, *dearly*	cārius	cārissimē
Adj.	clārus (clāro-), *famous*	clārior	clārissimus
Adv.	clārē, *famously*	clārius	clārissimē
Adj.	altus (alto-), *high, deep*	altior	altissimus
Adv.	altē, *highly, deeply*	altius	altissimē

a. The positive form of the adverb may usually be derived from the positive form of the adjective by adding -ē to the base. In the same way the superlative of the adverb may be derived from the superlative of the adjective.

b. The comparative of all adverbs has the same form as the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective.

273. Adverbs from adjectives of the Third Declension are formed as follows:

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Adj.	**fortis** (forti-), *brave*	**fortior**	**fortissimus**
Adv.	**fortiter**, *bravely*	**fortius**	**fortissimē**
Adj.	**brevis** (brevi-), *short*	**brevior**	**brevissimus**
Adv.	**breviter**, *shortly*	**brevius**	**brevissimē**
Adj.	**turpis** (turpi-), *shameful*	**turpior**	**turpissimus**
Adv.	**turpiter**, *shamefully*	**turpius**	**turpissimē**
Adj.	**sapiēns** (sapienti-), *wise*	**sapientior**	**sapientissimus**
Adv.	**sapienter**,[1] *wisely*	**sapientius**	**sapientissimē**
Adj.	**dīligēns** (dīligenti-), *diligent*	**dīligentior**	**dīligentissimus**
Adv.	**dīligenter**, *diligently*	**dīligentius**	**dīligentissimē**
Adj.	**audāx** (audāci-), *bold*	**audācior**	**audācissimus**
Adv.	**audācter**, *boldly*	**audācius**	**audācissimē**
Adj.	**fēlix** (felīci-), *fortunate*	**fēlīcior**	**fēlīcissimus**
Adv.	**fēlīciter**, *fortunately*	**fēlīcius**	**fēlīcissimē**

c. The positive form of adverbs derived from adjectives of the Third Declension ends in **-ter** or **-iter** instead of **-ē**. A few, as **facilis**, *easy* (adv. **facile**, *easily*), and **dulcis**, *sweet* (adv. **dulce**, *sweetly*), use the ending **-e** like adjectives of the Second and First Declensions. Observe, however, that these two adverbs have the final **-e** short, unlike the final **-ē** long of other adverbs. It is really the accusative singular neuter of the adjective used adverbially.

274. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Omnium hominum hī sunt fortissimī.** *Of all men these are the bravest.*

2. **Pars mīlitum ex oppidō fūgit.** *Some of the soldiers fled from the town.*

3. **Quis vestrum hōc vīdit?** *Who of you has seen this?*

[1] For *sapientiter;* so with others from adjectives in **-ēns** (see dīligenter).

a. The genitive in each of these sentences signifies the whole of something, a part of which is indicated by another word upon which the genitive depends, as **fortissimī** in **1**; **pars** in **2**; and **quis** in **3**.

275. Rule. — *The genitive, signifying the whole, may be used to limit a word indicating a part, and is then known as a Partitive Genitive.*[1]

276. VOCABULARY

auctōritās, auctōritātis, f., *authority, influence.*
audācter, adv., *boldly.*
crūdēliter, adv., *cruelly.*
dīligenter, adv., *diligently.*
iūcundus, -a, -um, *pleasant.*
laetus, -a, -um, *joyful, happy.*
minus, adv., *less.*
sententia, -ae, f., *opinion.*
turpiter, adv., *disgracefully, shamefully.*
adsum, adesse, affuī, affutūrus, *be present.*
nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātum, *announce, report.*
perspiciō, perspicere, perspexī, perspectum, *look at, examine.*
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsum, *reply.*

277. EXERCISES

1. Nēmō vestrum[2] cōnsulī haec audācter nūntiāvit.
2. Caesar fuit omnium Rōmānōrum clārissimus.
3. Hārum arborum aliquot sunt altissimae.[3]
4. Cum trēs ex captīvīs[4] crūdēlissimē interfēcissent, cēterī minus audācter respondēbant.

[1] Sometimes more properly called the *Genitive of the Whole.*

[2] The forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** (from **ego** and **tī**) are always employed for the partitive genitive, not **nostrī** and **vestrī**.

[3] The superlative is often translated by *very* instead of *most*, as here, *very tall.*

[4] **Ex** with the ablative is frequently used in place of the partitive genitive, especially with cardinal numerals.

5. Cum nūntiī haec turpissimē fēcissent, imperātor gravissimum supplicium dē iīs sūmpsit.
6. Ex hīs laetīs hominibus dīligentissimē petam nē hostibus [1] nostrīs suā auctōritāte subveniant.
7. In the time of Caesar the months of summer were not very pleasant [2] in the city (of) Rome.[3]
8. At this time few of the cavalry were present; no one of the leaders.
9. What is more pleasant than summer?
10. All (of) [4] these men replied very [2] briefly, but helped us less diligently.

278. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Caesar lēgātōs Britannōrum laetus vīdit et iīs imperāvit, ut in eā sententiā permanērent. Tum eōs domum remīsit et cum iīs Commium, quem ipse rēgem Atrebātum fēcerat. Is Caesarī fidēlis erat et auctōritātem magnam in iīs regiōnibus habēbat. Huic Caesar imperāvit, ut ad cīvitātēs Britanniae iter faceret et iīs persuādēret, ut fidēlēs populō Rōmānō essent. Volusēnum, quem Caesar in Britanniam praemīserat, nāvem relinquere nōn audēbat sed ā nāvī regiōnēs perspexit.

[1] Dative instead of the accusative following a verb meaning *help*.

[2] The superlative is often translated by *very* instead of *most*, as in sentence 3, *very tall*.

[3] "Rome" denotes the same thing as "city," which it describes. What should be its case? See 119.

[4] "All" is not a word denoting a part of anything, hence "men" should be in the nominative case.

NOTES

1. laetus: the adjective has the force of an adverb.

2. permanērent: see note on **praemīsit, 271**, l. 2. So with **remīsit** (3), **perspexit** (9).

4. Atrebātum, *of the Atrebates.* The genitive plural from **Atrebās, Atrebātis,** the name of a Gallic tribe.

LESSON XLVI

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

ABLATIVE OF QUALITY

279. Some of the adjectives and adverbs in most frequent use are compared by bringing together forms which are from different stems.

EXAMPLES

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
ADJ.	**bonus,** *good.*	**melior,** *better.*	**optimus,** *best.*
ADV.	**bene,** *well.*	**melius,** *better.*	**optimē,** *best.*
ADJ.	**magnus,** *great.*	**maior,** *greater.*	**maximus,** *greatest.*
ADV.	**magnopere,**[1] *greatly.*	**magis,** *more.*	**maximē,** *most.*
ADJ.	**malus,** *bad.*	**peior,** *worse.*	**pessimus,** *worst.*
ADV.	**male,** *badly.*	**peius,** *worse.*	**pessimē,** *worst.*
ADJ.	**multus,** *much.*	**plūs,** *more.*	**plūrimus,** *most.*
ADV.	**multum,**[2] *much.*	**plūs,** *more.*	**plūrimum,** *most.*
ADJ.	**parvus,** *small.*	**minor,** *smaller.*	**minimus,** *smallest*
ADV.	**parum,** *little.*	**minus,** *less.*	**minimē,** *least.*
ADJ.	**(superus),** *above.*	**superior,** *higher.*	**suprēmus,** *last.* **summus,** *highest.*
ADV.		**superius,** *more highly.*	**summē,** *most highly.*

[1] For **magnō opere.**

[2] Neut. acc. sing. of **multus,** used as an adverb.

a. Observe that the adjectives are not only themselves irregular, but have adverbs corresponding to them which are also irregular in form, as **bene**, irregular adverb from **bonus**, where **bonē** would be the regular form; **parum** from **parvus** instead of **parvē**.

280. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Caesar erat vir summā auctōritāte.** *Caesar was a man of the greatest (highest) influence.*

2. **Mīlitēs magnā virtūte nōn saepe victī sunt.** *Soldiers of great valor are seldom vanquished.*

a. These ablatives answer the question, *Of what sort? What sort of a man was Caesar? What sort of soldiers are seldom vanquished?*

b. The genitive case may be used in the same way, and the translation of ablative or genitive in this construction is the same: either (1) by an adjective (Caesar was *a most influential* man), or (2) by the help of the preposition *of* as given above.

281. Rule. — *A noun in the ablative qualified by an adjective in agreement may be used like an adjective to describe another noun, or to give a quality of it (Ablative of Quality.)*

This ablative is also known as the *Ablative of Characteristic or Description.*

282. VOCABULARY

Catō, Catōnis, m., *Cato.*
enim, conj. (postpositive[1]), *for.*
in, prep., with acc., *towards* (see vocabs. 7, 10, 22).

[1] A word is called "postpositive" when it never stands at the beginning of a sentence or clause.

ingenium,[1] **-ī,** n., *ability, talent.*
praesidium,[1] **-ī,** n., *guard, force.*
quot, indecl., inter. and rel. pron., *how many, as many.*
satis, adv., *enough.*
Suēbī, Suēbōrum, m. pl., *the Suabians,* a German tribe.
summus, -a, -um, *highest.*
tālis, tāle, *such, of such a sort.*
ventus, -ī, m., *wind.*

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, *drive together, collect.*
distribuō, distribuere, distribuī, distribūtum, *distribute, apportion.*
trānsportō, trānsportāre, trānsportāvī, trānsportātum, *carry across, transport.*

283. EXERCISES

1. Suēbī hominēs summā virtūte esse dīcēbantur.
2. Cognōverāsne [2] magnum ingenium ducis, quī hunc exercitum in Galliam trānsportāvit?
3. Summā prūdentiā exercitum parvum per fīnēs Suēbōrum ille dūxit.
4. Optimō animō vōs esse dēbētis in vestrōs cōnsulēs.
5. Catō vir maximā auctōritāte erat apud Rōmānōs.
6. Cum imperātōrem tālī ingeniō habeāmus, fortiter impetum faciāmus.
7. He asked me most eagerly [3] to [4] collect very many men.
8. The soldiers are most zealous,[5] the commander most brave.[5]

[1] Genitives, inge'nī, praesi'dī.

[2] Cognōscō in the perfect tense means *know;* hence the pluperfect here, *Did you know?*

[3] *i. e.*, with the greatest eagerness. What case should be used, and why?

[4] See 240.

[5] Express by the ablative of quality.

9. Caesar was famous for his courage; for he was a man of the greatest boldness.

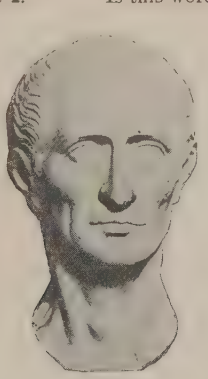
10. Since you are kindly disposed [1] towards me, send me [2] Cato with a force of soldiers.

284. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Cum Volusēnus ad Caesarem sē recēpisset et omnia eī nūntiāvisset, ille multās nāvēs onerāriās coēgit, ut cōpiās sēcum in Britanniam trānsportāret. Nāvēs longās quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Erant quoque nāvēs onerāriae quae ventō tenēbantur et in eundem portum venīre nōn poterant; hās equitibus distribuit. P. Sulpicium Rūfum cum eō praesidiō quod satis erat, portum tenēre iussit.

[1] Compare sentence 4. [2] Is this word the direct object?



Julius Caesar

LESSON XLVII

285. SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES OF DECLENSIONS II AND I

Nine adjectives of the Second and First Declensions are somewhat irregular in their inflection. The irregularities are confined to the singular; the plural is regular.

These adjectives are:

alius, *another.* **alter,** *the other.*
uter, *which* (of two). **neuter,** *neither.*
sōlus, *only, alone.* **tōtus,** *the whole.*
ūllus, *any.* **nūllus,** *no.*
ūnus, *one, alone.*

EXAMPLES

	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
Nom.	sōlus	sōla	sōlum	uter	utra	utrum
Gen.	sōlīus	sōlīus	sōlīus	utrīus	utrīus	utrīus
Dat.	sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	utrī	utrī	utrī
Acc.	sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	utrum	utram	utrum
Abl.	sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	utrō	utrā	utrō
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
Gen.	alīus	alīus	alīus	alterius	alterius	alterius
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

a. Observe that these adjectives have **-īus** as the genitive ending of all genders (instead of **-ī, -ae, -ī**), except **alter**, which has **-ius**, and that they have **-ī** as

the dative ending of all genders (instead of **-ō, -ae, -ō**). Cf. the pronouns **is** (Lesson XIII), **hīc**, **ille**, and **iste** (Lessons XXXIII and XXXIV).

b. **Alius** has **aliud** in the neuter nominative and accusative. Cf. **ille** (Lesson XXXIII).

c. **Alius** has as its genitive **alīus**, not **aliīus**, but dative **aliī**. **Alterius** is, however, commonly used instead of **alīus**.

d. Some of these adjectives lack the plural, but when they have a plural it is regular in its declension.

286. VOCABULARY

Memorize the list of adjectives given above.

celeriter, adv., *quickly*.
continēns, continentis, f., *mainland*.
facile, adv., *easily*.
imprūdentia, -ae, f., *imprudence, thoughtlessness*.
coniciō, conicere, coniēcī, coniectum, *throw*.
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn*.

287. EXERCISES

1. Eō tempore barbarī aliud bellum cum Rōmānīs gerēbant.
2. Belgae aliam equitum manum ē castrīs mīsērunt, ut agricolās adiuvārent.
3. Tōtam eius reī culpam in nūntium conicere facillimē poterunt.
4. Lēgātus cīvitātī tōtī imperāvit,[1] ut quam celerrimē[2] obsidēs Rōmam mitteret.
5. Utrī prīncipī persuāsērunt[1] cīvēs, ut ante Rōmānōrum adventum profugeret?

[1] See 242, footnote 1.
[2] **Quam** with a superlative = *as . . . as possible*; see **quam primum**, 292.

6. Cum plūrimī vīcī in eā regiōne essent, tamen nūllum cōrum hostēs vāstāvērunt.
7. Let us make another ship, in order that we may sail from the island to the mainland.
8. The chief will give the whole state many gifts on account of the virtue of one man.
9. Which man (of the two) will sail in a ship of burden from Gaul to Britain?
10. Let us give a letter to the other man (of the two), that he may carry it to the Belgians.

288. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Iam omnia parāta erant. Itaque Caesar ā Galliā nocte nāvigāvit, equitēsque ad nāvēs quae ventō tenēbantur sē recipere iussit. Ī autem paulō tardiōrēs erant et ipse cum suīs nāvibus ante eōs ad Britanniam vēnit et in omnibus collibus hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cum ex altīs locīs tēlum in lītus conicī posset, Caesar in ancorīs exspectābat, dum reliquae nāvēs, quae equitēs portābant, convenīrent.

NOTES

2. quae ventō tenēbantur: see **284**, l. 5.

6. conicī: = **coniicī**, from **con-** and **iaciō**. **Con-** here has an intensive force, *hurl*.

7. in ancorīs: we should say *at anchor*.

8. convenīrent: dum, meaning *until*, is followed by the subjunctive when there is an idea of purpose or anticipation.

LESSON XLVIII

NUMERALS

TEMPORAL SENTENCES

289. Read carefully the lists of Cardinals and Ordinals in the Appendix, **432**. Commit to memory the first ten in each column. Learn the declension of **ūnus**, *one*, **duo**, *two*, **trēs**, *three*.

	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	duōs	duās	duo
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

	m. and f.	n.
Nom.	trēs	tria
Gen.	trium	trium
Dat.	tribus	tribus
Acc.	trēs (trīs)	tria
Abl.	tribus	tribus

a. With the irregular genitive in **-īus** and dative in **-ī** of **ūnus** compare the adjectives in **285**; also compare the genitive singular of **is, hīc, ille, iste**.

b. The Cardinals beginning with **quattuor**, *four*, up to and including **centum**, *hundred*, cannot be declined. The hundreds are declined like the plural of **magnus**. For the declension of **mīlle**, see **269**.

c. The Ordinals are declined like **magnus**, *great*. These are called Ordinals because they answer the question *Which in order?*

d. The Numeral Adverbs answer the question *How many times?*

290. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Cum omnia vīdissem, discessī.** *When I had seen everything, I went away.*

2. **Postquam librum lēgī, frātrī meō dedī.** *As soon as I had read the book, I gave* (it) *to my brother.*

3. **Ut tē audīvī, vēnī.** *When I heard you, I came.*

e. Conjunctions meaning *when, after, as soon as* are called temporal and, with the occasional exception of **cum**, are used only with the indicative.

291. **Rule.** — *The most frequently occurring temporal conjunctions* (*as* **cum, ut, postquam,** etc.) *are used only with the indicative mood, except* **cum,** *which usually takes the subjunctive of the imperfect and pluperfect tenses, the indicative of the others.*

f. The pluperfect indicative rarely follows these conjunctions; but the Latin perfect indicative may be translated by the English pluperfect.

292. VOCABULARY

aestus, -ūs, m., *tide.*
cum, temporal conj., *when, after.*
postquam, conj., *after, as soon as.*
quam prīmum, *as soon as possible.*
secundus, -a, -um, *second, favorable.*
spatium, -ī, n., *space, distance.*
statiō, statiōnis, f., *guard;* **in statiōne,** *on guard.*
ut, temp. conj., *when, as;* **ut prīmum,** *as soon as.*
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum, *hear.*
cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtum, *set, place, arrange* (see **245**).
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, *have, hold, deliver* (of a speech).
perturbō, perturbāre, perturbāvī, perturbātum, *disturb, throw into confusion.*

perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum, *arrive.*
praemittō, praemittere, praemīsī, praemissum, *send ahead.*
veniō, venīre, vēni, ventum, *come.*
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, *conquer.*

203. EXERCISES

1. Dux Suēbōrum postquam multitūdinem hostium vīdit, in silvās profūgit.
2. Ut quīnque praefectōs legiōnis nōnae interfēcērunt, barbarī omnēs ōrdinēs perturbāvērunt.
3. Cum haec omnia dē duōbus frātribus suīs audīvisset, Mārcus quam prīmum ex urbe discessit.
4. Noster dux, ut prīmum pervēnit, in oppidum cum tribus legiōnibus ter impetum fēcit.
5. Postquam imperātor hanc ōrātiōnem apud illum exercitum habuit, multō ācriōrēs erant mīlitēs.
6. Lēgātus postquam tria mīlia[3] passuum cum exercitū iter fēcit, ad imperātōrem nūntiōs mīsit.
7. When Caesar arrived at the camp, he at once placed four cohorts on guard.
8. But I advise you not[1] to leave[2] the city without the tenth legion.
9. Three times I ordered the lieutenant to march with these two cohorts.
10. In this small city there were four large temples of the gods.

[1] Do not render by **nōn** and the infinitive; see **239**, Sentence **5**.
[2] = depart from.
[3] The accusative without a preposition is used to express extent of space or duration of time.

294. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Interim Caesar lēgātōs et tribūnōs convocāvit et ea quae Volusēnus dīxerat iīs ostendit. Deinde eōs dīmīsit, et cum ventum aestumque eōdem tempore secundum habēret, longum spatium ab eō locō nāvigāvit et in apertō et plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit. At barbarī, ut cōnsilium Rōmānōrum intellexērunt, equitēs praemīsērunt et cum reliquīs cōpiīs ad lītus properāvērunt, ut nostrōs ab aditū prohibērent.

Notes

5. apertō and **plānō**: see General Vocabulary.
ut: how is it to be translated when used with the indicative?

8. nostrōs: note on **263**, l. 3.
aditū: abl. of **aditus**, *approach*, here trans. *from landing*.

A Roman Road

LESSON XLIX

295. REVIEW

1. Distinguish between **cum** *temporal*, **cum** *causal*, and **cum** *concessive*. Give an English sentence and a Latin one as an example of each. Is **cum** always followed by the same mood? Does the mood differ with the tense employed?

2. How are adverbs formed from adjectives? Form and compare adverbs from **longus, lātus, clārus,** giving meanings.

3. Decline in full: **ille homō clārior; is vir ācrior.**

4. What adjectives do not form their superlatives with the ending **-issimus?** How may adjectives be compared without using these or other special terminations?

5. Does the partitive genitive itself name a part of anything? What is perhaps a more fitting name than partitive for this use of the genitive?

6. Write the following in Latin, explaining the use of the mood wherever you use the subjunctive in any sentence or phrase, and the case if anywhere you use the genitive or ablative:

1. To have summoned. 2. About to join. 3. About to be taken. 4. To be chosen by us (translate in two ways). 5. To have set on fire. 6. The army is to be led across by me (must be, etc.). 7. Marcus is taller than Labienus. 8. Sextus is a head taller than his friend. 9. I sent him to find you. 10. He ought to have found you. 11. I asked him to find you. 12. Since you know everything (all things), tell me this.

7. Decline, if declinable, the numerals for *one, ten, twenty, one hundred, two hundred, one thousand.*

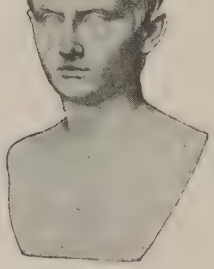
By what different Latin words may *after* or *when* be expressed? What mood and tense is used with each of the conjunctions having these meanings?

8. Give the Latin for:

1. To another journey. 2. Of no soldier. 3. With no companions. 4. To that good general. 5. On account of which reason? 6. Concerning the bravery of neither hostage. 7. Friendly (nom. sing. masc.) to all Italy. 8. With him alone, without any other friend. 9. Another time will come. 10. Which of these is the boy more like?

9. Give the dative and the ablative singular of **is, ille, hīc, alius, alter, miser, trīstis, melior, sōlus, ācer, audāx, neuter, pulcher, similior, similis.**

10. Give the genitive singular and plural feminine of **is, sōlus, miser, melior, ācer, neuter, pulcher, bonus, fidēlis, ille.**



Augustus

LESSON L

TENSES OF THE PASSIVE VOICE IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE FORMED ON THE SUPINE STEM; PERFECT PASSIVE INFINITIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

296. EXAMPLES

PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

Singular	*Plural*
I have been praised, was praised, etc.	
laudātus sum,	**laudātī sumus,**
es, est	**estis, sunt**

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

I had been praised, etc.	
laudātus eram,	**laudātī erāmus**
erās, erat	**erātis, erant**

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

I shall have been praised, etc.	
laudātus erō,	**laudātī erimus,**
eris, erit	**eritis, erunt**

See Appendix, **440–444** for these forms of **doceō**, **regō**, **capiō**, and **mūniō**, and for the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive.

PERFECT INFINITIVE PASS.

I. **laudātus esse,** *to have been praised.*
II. **doctus esse,** *to have been taught.*
III. **rēctus esse,** *to have been ruled.*
IV. **captus esse,** *to have been captured.*
V. **mūnītus esse,** *to have been fortified.*

a. These tenses in the passive voice are formed by joining the present, imperfect, and future indicative of **sum** to the perfect passive participle.

297. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Tam fortis est vir ut perīculum petat. *The man is so brave that he seeks danger.*

2. Socius meus tam longē aberat ut eum vidēre nōn possem.[1] *My ally was so far away that I could not see him.*

a. These sentences are complex (see Introd. **47**); they contain a principal and a dependent clause.

The dependent clause is introduced in each case by **ut**, and expresses an *effect, consequence,* or *result* of the statement contained in the principal clause.

Thus in the first sentence it is stated that *the man is brave,* and that as a result of this *he seeks danger.*

So in the second sentence, the result of my ally's *being so far away* was that *I could not see him.*

b. These dependent clauses containing a result are in Latin always expressed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut**, or if negative by **ut nōn**, the tense depending on that of the verb in the principal clause. (See footnote 1 under **189** and **192**.)

c. In the affirmative form, result clauses cannot be distinguished from purpose clauses in appearance, both taking the subjunctive introduced by **ut**. But in the negative they can be distinguished at once, as the purpose clause is introduced by **nē**, the result by **ut nōn**.

d. In result clauses the principal clause usually contains a word like **tam** or **ita**, some word which may be translated by *so* or *such*. For example, **sīc**, *so*, **tantus**, *so great*, **tālis**, *such*, occur in these principal clauses.

[1] The imperfect subjunctive of **possum**. See **190** *a*.

298. Rule. — *To express result the subjunctive is used in a dependent clause introduced by* **ut** *or* **ut nōn.**

299. VOCABULARY

angustus, -a, -um, *narrow.*
commeātus, -ūs, m., *supplies.*
litterae, -ārum, f. pl., *letter, despatch.*
simul, adv., *at the same time, together.*
stultus, -a, -um, *stupid.*
tam, adv., *so.*
vix, adv., *hardly, with difficulty.*
dēsiliō, dēsilīre, dēsiluī, dēsultum, *leap down.*
incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātum, *urge on, spur on.*
intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātum, *enter.*
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, *read.*
occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātum, *seize.*
perterreō, perterrēre, perterruī, perterritum, *terrify, startle greatly.*
prōcēdo, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prōcessum, *go forward, proceed.*

300. EXERCISES

1. Tam angusta est porta ut vix domum intrāre possīmus.
2. Tot librī in eō templō erant ut tribus annīs eōs legere nōn possēmus.
3. Ita ācriter mīlitēs nostrī impetum fēcērunt ut hostēs statim terga verterent.
4. Tam perturbātus sum hīs nūntiīs ut domum statim prōcēderem.
5. Hae litterae ita scrīptae erant ut eās legere vix possēmus.
6. Cum nēmō tam audāx sit ut in nōs impetum faciat, facillimē urbem occupābimus.
7. He is not so stupid as [1] to order the lieutenant to seize the town.

[1] As = that he will.

8. Though he was in great danger, he was so brave that no one dared to ask him to[1] flee into the city.

9. The road was so narrow that three men could hardly go forward together.

10. The enemy so (far)[2] surpassed the Romans in swiftness that the latter[3] could hardly find supplies by the help of friends and allies.

301. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Erat propter hās causās summa difficultās, quod magnae Rōmānōrum nāvēs ad lītus venīre nōn poterant, et mīlitibus, quī gravia arma portābant, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in aquā standum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum. Illī autem aut ex lītore aut in brevī aquā stantēs audācter tēla coniciēbant et equōs incitābant. Rōmānī iīs rēbus perterritī nōn idem studium ostendērunt quod in pedestribus proeliīs ostendēbant.

NOTES

3. mīlitibus: dative of the agent. See **248** *b*.

4. dēsiliendum . . . standum: supply **erat.** For the force of **dē-** see note on **praemīsit, 271**, l. 2.

7. perterritī: what is the force of **per-**? See note on **praemīsit, 271**, l. 2.

[1] To = that he. See **240**. [2] Omit. [3] Use a pronoun.

LESSON LI

DEPONENT VERBS; THE ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN DEPONENTS

302. Certain verbs are inflected only in the passive, but have active meanings; such verbs are called Deponent. They occur in all conjugations.

EXAMPLE

PRINCIPAL PARTS: moror, morārī, morātus sum

Synopsis:

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
PRES.	moror	morer	(morāre) [1]
IMPERF.	morābar	morārer	———
FUT.	morābor	———	(morātor) [1]
PERF.	morātus sum	morātus sim	———
PLUPERF.	morātus eram	morātus essem	———
FUT. PERF.	morātus erō	———	———

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
PRES.	morārī	morāns
FUT.	morātūrus esse	morātūrus (*active*)
		morandus (*passive*)
PERF.	morātus esse	morātus

a. Deponent verbs have the following active forms: the future infinitive and the present and future participles.

b. Two forms have a passive meaning: the future passive participle (the gerundive) always, and the perfect participle sometimes.

[1] Second person.

c. For synopses of deponent verbs of the other conjugations see Appendix **448.**

303. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Hostēs nāvibus ūtuntur. *The enemy use ships.*

2. Caesar hostium castrīs potītus est. *Cæsar got possession of the camp of the enemy.*

3. Tōta cīvitās pāce fruētur. *The whole state will enjoy peace.*

4. Mārcus hōc officiō fungitur. *Marcus performs this service.*

5. Mīlitēs frūmentō vescuntur. *The soldiers eat grain.*

a. Observe that these deponent verbs take their objects in the ablative, instead of the accusative.

304. Rule. — *The deponents* **ūtor,** *use,* **fruor,** *enjoy,* **fungor,** *perform,* **potior,** *get possession of,* **vescor,** *eat, and their compounds take the ablative case.*

305. VOCABULARY

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle.*
officium, offi'cī, n., *duty.*
convocō,[1] **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *call together.*
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *enjoy.*
fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, *perform.*
moror, morārī, morātus sum, *delay.*
partior, partīrī, partītus sum, *divide.*
potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *get possession of.*
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow.*
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *use.*
vescor, vescī, ———, *eat.*

[1] From this point on, the principal parts of regular verbs of the First Conjugation will be given in this abbreviated way.

306. EXERCISES

1. Eō diē Caesar duōbus hostium oppidīs potītus est.
2. Mārcus postquam ad imperātōris castra vēnit, paucōs diēs apud eum morātus est.
3. Ut hostēs discessērunt, licēbat agricolās [1] agrīs pulchrīs ūtī.
4. Caesar, officiō suō in prōvinciā fūnctus, Rōmam sē recēpit, ut ōrātiōnem apud populum habēret.
5. Mīlitēs decimae legiōnis bonā fortūnā ūsī, quīnque pulchrīs vīcīs potītī sunt.
6. Hī hominēs poenam dent, quod agrīs sacrīs contrā cīvitātis lēgēs ūtuntur.
7. We shall use great diligence, in order that we may sail to Britain as soon as possible.
8. Having followed the barbarians all that day, we enjoyed our camp at night.
9. When we had got possession of the beautiful fields of that region, we divided them among us.
10. The soldiers will eat the grain which the farmers have sent them.

307. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Quod cum Caesar vīdisset, nāvēs longās tēlīs hostēs dēpellere iussit. Tum barbarī ita territī erant, ut paulum ad lītus sē reciperent. Atque cum nostrī morārentur, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, is quī decimae legiōnis aquilam portābat, ōrāns ut ea rēs legiōnī

[1] Subject accusative of ūtī, which with **agricolās** forms the subject of **licēbat**. Cf. **333** sentence **4**.

fēlīciter ēvenīret, dīxit: "Dēsilīte, nē hostēs aquilam capiant. Ego ipse patriae et imperātōrī meum officium faciam." Hōc cum magnā vōce dīxisset, dē nāve dēsiluit atque in hostēs aquilam portābat.

NOTES

1. **Quod:** *this*, referring to the preceding Exercise.
hostēs: object acc. of **dēpellere**.

2. **dēpellere:** for the force of **dē-** see note on **praemīsit, 271**, l. 2.

5. **aquilam:** the standard of the legion was an eagle.

6. **ēvenīret:** **ē-** has the force of *out;* see note on **praemīsit, 271**, l. 2.

9. **portābat:** imperfect, denoting the beginning of an action.

LESSON LII

INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

308.

Interrogative, *who, what.* Indefinite, *some, any.*

	SUBSTANTIVE		ADJECTIVE		
	Singular				
	m. and f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
NOM.	quis	quid	quī	qua (quae)	quod
GEN.	cuius *throughout*		cuius *throughout*		
DAT.	cui *throughout*		cui *throughout*		
ACC.	quem	quid	quem	quam	quod
ABL.	quō *throughout*		quō	quā	quō

Plural of both

	m.	f.	n.
NOM.	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	quibus *throughout*		
ACC.	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quibus *throughout*		

a. Review the relative pronoun (**203**) and notice what is said of the forms common to the relative and the interrogative pronouns.

b. The indefinite pronouns **aliquis**, *some one*, **quīdam**, *a certain one*, are used both as substantives and adjectives. The first part of **quīdam** is declined throughout like **quī** the relative, but it also has **quiddam** in the neuter singular when used as a substantive:

	m.	f.	n.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam (quiddam)
Gen.	cuiusdam, etc.	See Appendix **438**.	

aliquis, *some one*, has a feminine form, **aliqua**, in the nom. sing., and a different form for the substantive and adjective in the masculine and neuter nominative singular, as follows:

	Singular		
	m.	f.	n.
Nom.	aliquis (aliquī, adj.)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod, adj.)
Gen.	alicuius, etc.		
	Plural		
Nom.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	aliquōrum etc.	aliquārum	aliquōrum

309. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

Interrogative Substantive	Interrogative Adjective
1. **Quis tē mīsit?** *Who sent you?*	3. **Quod dōnum ad eum mittēs?** *What gift will you send to him?*
2. **Quid tibi ille dedit?** *What did he give you?*	

a. **Quantus, -a, -um,** *how much, as great,* and **quālis, quāle,** *what sort of, as,* are used both as relatives and as interrogatives. When they are used as relatives the demonstrative words **tantus, -a, -um,** *so great,* and **tālis, tāle,** *such,* which correspond to them, are usually expressed in the main clause of the sentence.

b. **Quis,** *any one,* and **qui,** *any,* are declined like the interrogative, but **qua** replaces **quae,** except in the nominative plural feminine. These words usually occur with the particles **sī, nisi, nē, num.**

310. VOCABULARY

ācriter, adv., *fiercely.*

Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

memoria, -ae, f., *memory.*

salūs, salūtis, f., *safety.*

senātus, -ūs, m., *senate.*

singulī, -ae, -a, *one by one.*

tergum, -ī, n., *back* (**ā tergō,** *in the rear*).

appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *approach.*

certiōrem aliquem facere, *to make one more certain;* i. e., *to inform any one.*

circumsistō, circumsistere, circumstitī, ——, *stand around, surround.*

prōdō, prōdere, prōdidī, prōditum, *betray.*

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *ask.*

remaneō, remanēre, remānsī, ——, *remain.*

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, *hold.*

311. EXERCISES

1. Aliquis imperātōris verba memoriā tenēbit eaque hostibus prōdet.
2. Tanta dōna quanta tū mīsistī nunquam anteā accēpī.

3. Nōn omnia quae vīdī memoriā teneō.
4. Tālia quālia tū vīdistī nōs omnēs vidēre cupimus.
5. Quis tālia dōna ad senātum populumque Rōmānum mīsit?
6. Quīdam nāvibus[1] discessērunt ut salūtem fugā peterent; sed cēterī in īnsulā remānsērunt.
7. Since certain ones of our soldiers had approached the enemy[2] from the rear, we attacked boldly.
8. Let some one be sent to inform our friends of[3] our safety.
9. Who will ask you to betray this?
10. How large forces of cavalry have remained with Labienus?

312. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Tum nostrī, eum secūtī, omnēs ex nāve dēsiluērunt. Et iī quī in aliīs nāvibus erant, cum hōc vīdissent, idem fēcērunt et in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. Et barbarī et Rōmānī ācriter pugnāvērunt; nostrī tamen neque ōrdinēs servāre neque signa sequī poterant, et magnopere perturbābantur. Hostēs autem cum ex lītore mīlitēs singulōs ex nāve dēsilientēs vīdissent, in eōs impetum fēcērunt, et multī paucōs circumsistēbant.

NOTE

7. singulōs: *one by one.*

[1] *in ships*, abl. of means.
[2] appropinquō takes the dative, or ad with the accusative.
[3] dē with the ablative.

LESSON LIII

INDIRECT QUESTIONS; SEQUENCE OF TENSES

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

313.

DIRECT QUESTIONS	*INDIRECT QUESTIONS*
1. Quid ille facit? *What is he doing?*	**1a. Quaerō quid ille faciat.** *I ask what he is doing.*
	1b. Quaesīvī quid ille faceret. *I asked what he was doing.*
2. Quid ille faciet? *What will he do? What is he going to do?*	**2a. Quaerō quid ille faciat (factūrus sit).** *I ask what he is going to do.*
	2b. Quaesīvī quid ille faceret (factūrus esset). *I asked what he was going to do.*
3. Quid ille fēcit? *What did he do?* or *What has he done?*	**3a. Quaerō quid ille fēcerit.** *I ask what he did.*
	3b. Quaesīvī quid ille fēcisset. *I asked what he had done.*

A direct question becomes indirect when it is made the object (or subject) of another verb. This verb of which the question is made the object is usually one signifying to *ask*, to *know*, etc. The question, *What is he doing?* in sentence **1** is treated as a noun substantive, and is the object of the verb **quaerō**, *I ask*, in sentence **1a**, and its verb is changed to the subjunctive (compare **2** and **3** with **2a** and **3a**). The same change to the subjunctive is seen in examples **1b, 2b, 3b**, in which the same questions are made the objects of **quaesīvī**, *I asked*.

314. Rule. — *The verb of an Indirect Question is in the Subjunctive.*

315. *a.* The tenses of the Indicative and the Subjunctive are classified as *primary* or *secondary*.

Indicative Primary	Subjunctive Primary
Present.	Present (describing incomplete or future action).
Future.	
Perfect Definite (translated with "have").	Perfect (describing completed or previous action).
Future Perfect.	
Indicative Secondary	**Subjunctive Secondary**
Imperfect.	Imperfect (describing incomplete or future action).
Perfect Indefinite (translated without "have").	Pluperfect (describing completed or previous action).
Pluperfect.	

b. By what is called the "Sequence of Tenses," verbs in the subjunctive in dependent clauses correspond in their tenses to the tenses of the verbs in the principal clauses. Thus in examples **1a, 2a, 3a,** we find the primary tense of the indicative, **quaerō,** followed in the dependent clauses by the primary tenses of the subjunctive, **faciat,** and **fēcerit.**

So in examples **1b, 2b, 3b,** we find the secondary tense of the indicative, **quaesīvī,** followed in the dependent clauses by the secondary tenses of the subjunctive, **faceret** and **fēcisset.**

316. Rule. — *In dependent clauses the verb, if in the subjunctive for any reason, must be in a primary tense if the verb of the principal clause is in a primary tense; it must be in a secondary tense if the verb of the principal clause is secondary.*

a. To decide whether, in primary sequence, the present or the perfect of the subjunctive should be used, and in secondary sequence whether the imperfect or the

pluperfect of the subjunctive, it is necessary to determine whether incomplete and future action is being described or completed and previous action.

In examples **1** and **2**, **facit** and **faciet** denote incomplete action; so when they appear as dependent clauses in the subjunctive, in **1a** and **2a**, they are in the present tense, **faciat**, which expresses incomplete action in primary sequence. In **1b** and **2b**, however, the same two verbs are in the imperfect tense, **faceret**, because in those they depend upon a secondary tense, **quaesīvī**, in the main clause, and the imperfect subjunctive expresses incomplete action in secondary sequence.

b. In the same way we see that in example **3** **fēcit**, a tense of completed action in the indicative, must be changed in examples **3a** and **3b** only into tenses of the subjunctive which express completed action. In primary sequence this is the perfect subjunctive, and so we have **fēcerit** in **3a**; in secondary sequence the pluperfect subjunctive expresses completed action, and so we have **fēcisset** in **3b**.

317. We may group together the tenses of the subjunctive in two ways:

Primary Tenses	Secondary Tenses
Present.	Imperfect.
Perfect.	Pluperfect.

Tenses expressing

Incomplete Action	Completed Action
Present (primary).	Perfect (primary).
Imperfect (secondary).	Pluperfect (secondary).

318. EXERCISES

1. Quis vestrum quaesīvit quid ego fēcissem?
2. Quanta esset īnsula nēmō scīvit.
3. Quālem domum ille aedificāverit brevī tempore cognōscēmus.
4. Paucīs diēbus reperiēmus quis castra hostibus prōdiderit.
5. Ā Caesare quīdam missus est, quī Labiēnō nūntiāret quid cognitum esset.
6. Labiēnus cum ad īnsulam appropinquāvisset, reperīre nōn poterat quī eam incolerent.
7. Let us ask what soldiers have gone out from camp within three days.
8. Who of you can tell how many kings the Romans had?
9. What were the names of these kings[1] of Rome?
10. The officer demanded that[2] the messenger tell what he had done.

319. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Quod cum Caesar vīdisset, iīs quōs labōrantēs vīderat auxilium mittēbat. Ita nostrī ad lītus vēnērunt et hostēs in fugam dedērunt. Sed eōs longē sequī nōn poterant, cum equitēs cursum nōn tenuissent neque ad īnsulam vēnissent. Hostēs proeliō superātī ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt, quī pācem peterent. Cum hīs lēgātīs Commius vēnit, quī ā Caesare in Britanniam

[1] Put this in the dative case. Why?

[2] *i. e.*, demanded of (from) the messenger that he tell, etc.

praemissus erat, ut Britannīs persuādēret, ut fidēlēs populō Rōmānō essent.

NOTES

4. equitēs . . . tenuissent: see **288**, l. 3.
7. Commius: see **278**, l. 3.

LESSON LIV

PARTICIPLES ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

320. *ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE*

The four participles of a Latin verb are formed on two stems, the present and the supine.

ENDINGS

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
PRESENT **-ns, -ntis**	PERFECT	**-tus, -ta, -tum** (**-sus, -sa, -sum**)
FUTURE **-tūrus, -tūra, -tūrum** (**-sūrus, -sūra, -sūrum**)	FUTURE (gerundive)	**-ndus, -nda, -ndum**

Add these endings to the stems **laudā-**, **docē-**,[1] **rege-**,[1] **mūnī-**, and **capi-**,[1] inserting a vowel **ē** before the present ending **-ns** with **mūnī-** and **capi-** and other **-iō** verbs. For example, **capiēns** and **mūniēns.** In the Appendix are found the complete forms of the participles of all these verbs.

a. The Latin verb has no perfect participle of the active voice, and no present participle of the passive voice.

[1] See **244**, *b* and *d* for the formation of the perfect and future active of these and many other verbs.

b. All participles are adjectives and may be declined. The present active participle is of the Third Declension and is declined like **praesēns** (see **197**). The other participles are of the Second and First Declensions and are declined like **magnus** (see **102**).

c. Participles, being verbs as well as adjectives, may, in the active voice, take an object in the accusative, or in another case, if the verbs to which they belong take another case than the accusative.

d. The Latin participle is frequently used to represent English clauses introduced by *when*, *while*, *since*, *although*, *if*, etc.

321. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Cupiēns hōc cēpī. *Desiring this I took (it). Since I desired this I took (it).*

2. Eum laudantem Mārcum audiēbam. *I heard him praising Marcus.*

3. Caesarī bellum in Galliā gerentī epistulae Rōmā missae sunt. *Letters were sent to Caesar from Rome (while he was) waging war in Gaul.*

a. In these three sentences, the present participles are used in connection with (1) the subject, (2) the direct object, and (3) the indirect object of the main verb, qualifying them like ordinary adjectives; but they are also used as transitive verbs governing the accusative.

b. The ablative of a noun or pronoun is frequently used in Latin with a participle in agreement, or instead of the participle, with another noun or an adjective

in agreement, in a loose connection with the rest of the sentence, as follows:

4. Tē epistulam scribente ego hōc faciam. *While you are writing the letter I shall do this.*

5. Epistulīs scrīptīs nūntium vocāvit. *The letters being written, he called a messenger.* (Better, *Having written the letters*, or, *When he had written the letters.*)

6. Caesare cōnsule, inimīcī Labiēnī in urbe nōn remanēbant. *While Caesar was consul, the enemies of Labienus did not remain in the city.* (Literally, *Caesar being consul*, etc.)

7. Nūntius laudātus domum remissus est. *The messenger, having been praised, was sent back home.* (Or, *The messenger was praised and sent back home;* or, *The messenger, after being praised, was sent back home.*)

8. Caesar, nūntiō laudātō, tamen lēgātōs vocāvit. *Caesar, although he praised the messenger, nevertheless summoned the ambassadors.*

9. Obsidibus interfectīs sociōs dēlēctāvit. *By killing the hostages he pleased the allies.*

c. This construction is known as the *Ablative Absolute*, so slight is its connection with the rest of the sentence. The relation in which it stands, however, may be defined as Time, Cause, Condition, Concession, Manner, Means, etc., and may be translated by corresponding clauses in English with *When* or *After* (Time), *Since* (Cause), *If* (Condition), *Although* (Concession), *By*, *With* (Manner or Means). See examples **4**, **5**, **6**, **8**, **9**. Sometimes it is difficult to decide which of these relations is expressed.

d. When the participle may agree with a noun or pronoun in the sentence, such as the subject or object or indirect object of another verb, the Ablative Ab-

solute may not be used. Compare the sentences in **321** with those in **321** *b*.

322. Rule. — *A noun or pronoun in the ablative, accompanied by a predicate noun, adjective, or participle in the same case, may be loosely connected with the rest of the sentence. This is called the* **Ablative Absolute**. *An Ablative Absolute may be used as the equivalent of a clause or phrase expressing* **time, cause, condition, means,** *or other relation.*

323. VOCABULARY

Allobrogēs, Allobrogum, m. pl., *the Allobroges*, a Gallic tribe.

frūctuōsus, -a, -um, *fruitful.*

grātia, -ae, f., *favor, gratitude*; **grātiam habēre,** *be grateful*; **grātiās agere,** *thank.*

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum, *give over, surrender.*

dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give, put.*

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum *go forth, disembark* (**ē nāvī**).

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, *do, wage.*

indīcō, indīcere, indīxī, indictum, *proclaim, declare*; **bellum indīcere,** *declare war.*

sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum, *sit.*

324. EXERCISES

1. Omnibus rēbus gestīs domum vēnī.
2. Postquam Caesar, hōc proeliō pugnātō, in Allobrogum fīnēs pervēnit, omnēs reliquae gentēs Galliae eī sē dēdidērunt.
3. Hīc puer Mārcum librum legentem vīdit.
4. Ille postulāvit quis, pāce factā obsidibusque datīs, bellum indictūrus esset.

5. Quot gentēs Germāniae proeliīs victae Rōmānīs sē dēdidērunt?
6. Hostibus victīs viam facilem faciēmus.
7. A messenger came to me as I was sitting on the shore.
8. By destroying the farmers we make the fields less fruitful.
9. After reading the letter he sent men to thank Marcus.
10. I shall always be grateful to you for favors conferred.[1]

325. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Commium ē nāve ēgressum barbarī cēperant et in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō ad Caesarem eum mīsērunt. Cum pācem peterent, propter imprūdentiam veniam petiērunt. Caesar cum bellum sine causā fēcissent, tamen iīs veniam dedit obsidēsque postulāvit. Quōrum partem illī statim dedērunt, partem posteā missūrī erant. Intereā suōs in agrōs dīmīsērunt, prīncipēsque omnēs vēnērunt et sē cīvitātēsque Caesarī dedērunt. Itaque pāx facta est.

Notes

4. cum: notice the following **tamen**; how should **cum** be translated?

7. dīmīsērunt: note the force of **dī- (dis-)**. See note on **praemīsit, 271**, l. 2.

[1] *i. e.*, done.

LESSON LV

THE DATIVE WITH VERBS OF SPECIAL MEANINGS

326. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Mīlitēs Caesarī pārent.** *The soldiers obey Caesar.*
2. **Mārcus hominī ignōvit.** *Marcus pardoned the man.*
3. **Prīnceps id cīvitātī persuāsit.** *The chief persuaded the state of this;* literally, *made this acceptable to the state.*
4. **Dux mīlitibus imperāvit, ut impetum in hostēs facerent.** *The leader ordered the soldiers to make an attack on the enemy (that they should make).*
5. **Pūblius exercituī praefuit.** *Publius commanded the army;* literally, *was over, was in command of.*
6. **Hīc vir nōbīs succurret.** *This man will aid us;* literally, *will run under us;* i.e., *will run to our support.*

a. In the above sentences the verbs govern a dative.

b. This dative is in most cases a variety of the indirect object (Lesson VI). The verbs in **1**, **2**, and **3** take an indirect object because of their meaning. The dative, for example, in **1** is not the direct object of **pārent**, as *Caesar* is of *obey* in English, but the meaning of the verb is *be obedient to*, or *render obedience to*. In **5** and **6** the verbs **fuit** and **curret** acquire meanings which call for a dative because they are compounded with **prae** and **sub**.

c. Verbs of these two classes may be transitive or intransitive; if transitive, they may take a direct object as well as an indirect object. This may be a

noun or pronoun, as in **3**, or a substantive clause, as in **4**.

327. Rule. — *The dative is used* (1) *with many verbs of special meanings, such as* **favor, help, injure, please, displease, command, obey, serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, threaten, believe, persuade,** *and the like;* (2) *with many verbs compounded with* **ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** and **super.**

a. Neither part of this rule applies to all verbs of these two classes. Thus **iuvō** and **adiuvō**, *help*, **iubeō**, *command*, **dēlectō**, *please*, and many others, take a direct object in the accusative. **Conveniō**, *meet*, **subsequor**, *follow closely*, **interficiō**, *kill*, and many others, though compounded with prepositions found in the above list, take the accusative and not the dative.

Which verbs govern the accusative, and which the dative, must be learned by observation and experience.

328. VOCABULARY

lūna, -ae, f., *the moon.*
maximus, -a, -um, sup. of **magnus**, *greatest, largest.*
Ōceanus, -ī, m., *the Ocean.*
plēnus, -a, -um, *full.*
quattuor, num. adj., indec., *four.*
tandem, adv., *at length.*
frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, *break;* of ships, *wreck.*
ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtum, *pardon.*
pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, ———, *obey.*
praesum, praeesse, praefuī, fut. part., **praefutūrus,** *be over, be in command of*
succurrō, succurrere, succurrī, succursum, *run under, aid, help.*

329. EXERCISES

1. Magister puerīs quī hōc fēcērunt tandem ignōscet.
2. Cīvēs adulēscentī quī ducī nōn pāruit nōn ignōscent.
3. Cum lūna plēna esset, Caesar mīlitibus imperāvit, ut cursum tenērent.
4. Quattuor nāvēs quae in ancorīs [1] erant maximō aestū frāctae sunt.
5. Prīncipī tandem pāruimus et ex portū in Ōceanum nāvigāvimus.
6. Lēgātus quī eī oppidō praeest nōbīs maximīs cōpiīs succurret.
7. The father commanded the boy to obey his master.
8. The lieutenant who was in command of that ship could not aid Caesar.
9. The tides at-the-time-of [2] the full moon were so great that four ships were wrecked.
10. He persuaded the young men to hold their ship at anchor [3] on account of the storm.

330. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Cum Caesar in Britanniā quattuor diēs fuisset, nāvēs quae equitēs portābant ex portū nāvigāvērunt. Sed tanta tempestās erat, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēret. Eā nocte lūna plēna erat, quō tempore aestūs maximī in Ōceanō sunt, nostrīque id nōn intellegēbant. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quae in lītore erant,

[1] *At anchor.*

[2] Express by the abl. of time, **lūnā plēnā**.

[3] See sentence 4.

aestus complēvit, et onerāriās, quae in ancorīs erant, tempestās frangēbat, neque nostrī iīs succurrere poterant.

NOTES

4. aestūs maximī: there is practically no rise and fall of the tide in the Mediterranean, so that the Romans had made no provision for the high tides of the British coast.

6. in lītore erant: the Roman ships were so small that they could be drawn up on the shore in winter and at other times when they were not in use.

7. onerāriās: supply **nāvēs,** from line **6.**
in ancorīs: see **329,** note 1.

LESSON LVI

331. REVIEW

1. Define deponent verbs. Give a synopsis of **moror** in the third person singular, and of **sequor** in the third person plural.

2. Translate:

1. Puer bonīs librīs ūtētur. 2. Mīlitēs frūmentō vescēbantur quod ab oppidō cēperant. 3. Colle altō potiāmur. 4. Hīc cīvis officiō suō semper fūnctus est. 5. Cum Rōmam vēnissent, mīlitēs pāce fruēbantur.

3. Give a synopsis of **aedificō** in the third singular passive, of **cupiō** in the third plural passive, and of **audiō** in the second plural passive.

4. Translate into Latin:

1. He was so brave that he did not fear danger. 2. This boy reads such good books that his master praises him.

3. Who will announce this to the king? 4. Whom did you send to carry the letter to Rome? 5. No one will come, will there? No.

5. Define an indirect question. In what mood is the verb of an indirect question? What determines the tense of the verb?

6. Translate into Latin:

1. Whom did he see? 2. He asks whom he sees. 3. He asks whom he saw. 4. He asked whom he saw. 5. He asked whom he had seen.

7. Give all the participles of **aedificō, dēleō, dūcō,** and **audiō,** with the meaning of each.

8. Define the ablative absolute. To what sort of clauses may it be equivalent? When may it not be used?[1]

9. Give the rule for the dative with verbs of special meanings. Why is the dative used with these verbs? What prepositions in composition sometimes give verbs meanings which take the dative?

10. Translate:

1. Imperātōrī nostrō omnēs pāreāmus. 2. Mārcus Pūbliō, inimīcō suō, ignōscet. 3. Hīc adulēscēns multīs mīlitibus praeerat. 4. Dux rogāvit quī hōc fēcisset. 5. Caesar lēgātō imperāvit, ut in hostēs impetum faceret.

[1] See **321** *d*.

LESSON LVII

THE INFINITIVES ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE; THE INFINITIVE, ALONE OR WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE, AS THE SUBJECT OF **EST** *AND OF IMPERSONAL VERBS*

332.

The infinitive is a verbal noun. Like a noun, it may be used as the subject or object of a verb. Like a verb, it may itself have a subject or an object, and it is characterized by tense and voice.

The infinitives of the First Conjugation are as follows (for those of the other conjugations and of the verb **sum** see Appendix):

	Active	Passive
Pres.	laudā**re**, *to praise*	laudā**rī**, *to be praised*
Perf.	laudā**visse**, *to have praised*	laudā**tus esse**, *to have been praised*
Fut.	laudā**tūrus esse**, *to be about to praise*	laudā**tum īrī**, *to be about to be praised*

a. The ending of the active infinitive, except in the future, was **-se**, which in the present, where the **s** came between two vowels, was changed to **-re**, and in the perfect was preceded by **-is-**, making an ending **-isse**.

b. The ending of the present passive infinitive is **-rī**, except in the third conjugation, where it is **-ī**.

c. The future infinitive active and the perfect and future infinitives passive are periphrastic forms (see

Lesson XL). The first is formed from the future active participle (see Lesson XL) and **esse**, the second from the perfect passive participle (see Lesson LI) and **esse**, the third from the supine (see Lesson XXXIX) and the present passive infinitive of **eō**, *go*.

d. In the future active infinitive and the perfect passive infinitive, which are used mainly in indirect discourse, the participles agree with the subject of the infinitive in gender, number, and case.

333. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Bonum est nāvēs mittere. *It is (a) good (thing) to send the ships.*

2. Bonum est nōs nāvēs mīsisse. *It is (a) good (thing) for us to have sent ships.*

3. Licet oppidum mīlitibus complēre. *One may fill the town with soldiers.* (More literally, *To fill the town with soldiers is allowed.*)

4. Oportuit Caesarem in hostēs impetum facere. *Caesar ought to have made an attack on the enemy.* (More literally, (*For*) *Caesar to make an attack on the enemy was fitting.*)

5. Necesse est nāvēs mīlitibus complēre. *It is necessary to fill the ships with soldiers.*

a. In these sentences the infinitives are used as nouns, since they are the subjects of the verbs of the sentences. They are used as verbs, since they take an object, and in some cases a subject, as in sentences **2** and **4**.

b. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative case.

c. The infinitive may or may not have a subject accusative; cf. sentences **1** and **2**. So in **3** and **5** the infinitive might have had a subject.

d. In putting expressions of obligation into the past the *infinitive* is made past in English, the *auxiliary verb* (see Introd. § **17**) in Latin. Cf. the English and the Latin of sentence **4**.

334. **Rule.** — *The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative case.*

335. **Rule.** — *The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used as the subject of* **est** *and of impersonal verbs such as* **licet**, *one may*, **oportet**, *one ought*, **necesse est**, *it is necessary*, etc.

336. VOCABULARY

aciēs, aciēī, f., *line of battle, army* in line of battle.
iniūria, -ae, f., *injury, harm.*
inūtilis, -e, *useless.*
necesse, indec. adj., only in nom. and acc. sing. n. with **esse** or **habēre,** *necessary.*
subsidium, subsi'dī, n., *aid;* pl., *reserves.*
armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *arm.*
dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, fut. part. **dēfutūrus,** *be wanting, be lacking.*
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, ——, impers., *it is fitting, is necessary, one ought.*
prōdūcō, prōdūcere, prōdūxī, prōductum, *lead forward, prolong, protract.*
reficiō, reficere, refēcī, refectum, *make again, make over, repair.*

337. EXERCISES

1. Ducem servōs armāre necesse erit, cum subsidia eī[1] dēsint.
2. Quattuor nāvibus aestū frāctīs, reliquās reficere licēbit.

[1] Dative of possession with a compound of **sum**.

3. Nōs oportet nāvēs reficere et bellum in hiemem prōdūcere.
4. Malum est magistrōs puerīs inūtilēs librōs dare; iīs ignōscere nōn possumus.
5. Nōnne facile erit subsidia armāre et ad oppidum mittere, nē hostēs eī iniūriam faciant?
6. Aciē Rōmānōrum perturbātā, dux lēgātō, quī urbī praeerat, succurrere nōn potuit.
7. The teacher ought to have defended these boys from injury.
8. It will be useless to send aid to the line of battle, since arms are wanting to the soldiers.
9. It was necessary for the general to repair the ships and prolong the war until[1] summer.
10. One may send aid to the men who have fled from the line of battle.

338. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Multīs nāvibus frāctīs, cum reliquae ad nāvigandum inūtilēs essent, tōtus exercitus magnopere perturbābātur. Neque enim nāvēs erant, quibus ad Galliam portārentur,[2] et omnia deerant quibus nāvēs reficerentur,[2] et frūmentum in castrīs nōn erat. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, prīncipēs Britanniae, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs[2] deessent, bellō factō frūmentō nostrōs prohibēre et bellum in hiemem prōdūcere in animō habēbant.

[1] *i. e.*, into the summer.
[2] See top of page 200.

NOTES

3. portārentur . . . reficerentur: subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose.

7. Rōmānīs: dative of possession with a compound of **sum**; see **337**, note 1.

LESSON LVIII

SYNOPSES OF REGULAR VERBS IN THE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE OF THE INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, IMPERATIVE, INFINITIVES, AND PARTICIPLES

COMMANDS, AFFIRMATIVE AND NEGATIVE

339. For the full synopsis of **laudō** in the third person singular see Appendix, **445**.

Give similar synopses of **laudō** in the other persons and numbers, and in the various persons and numbers of **doceō**, **regō**, **capiō**, and **mūniō** (the infinitives and participles are the same in all persons and numbers). For the forms, see Appendix.

340. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mitte. *Send envoys to Caesar concerning peace.*

2. Veniat Mārcus cum hīs lēgātīs. *Let Marcus come with these envoys.*

3. Nōlī lēgātōs in Britanniam mittere. *Do not send envoys to Britain.* (Literally, *Be unwilling to send.*)

4. Cavē nē Mārcus cum lēgātīs veniat. *Do not let Marcus come with the envoys.* (Literally, *Beware lest Marcus come.*)

a. Observe that while an affirmative command is expressed by the imperative or by the subjunctive, a negative command, or prohibition, is *not* expressed by the negative of the imperative or subjunctive.

341. Rule. — *Commands are expressed in Latin by the imperative or by the subjunctive. Prohibitions, or negative commands, are expressed by* **nōlī** (*plural,* **nōlīte**,) *with the infinitive, or by* **cavē** (*plural,* **cavēte**) *with* **nē** *and the subjunctive.*

342. VOCABULARY

aut, conj., *or;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or.*
centuriō, centuriōnis, m., *centurion.*
concilium, conci'lī, n., *council, meeting, conference.*
quod, conj., *because.*
reditus, -ūs, m., *return.*
caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *beware.*
cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *attempt, try.*
nōlō, *be unwilling;* pres. imperat., **nōlī, nōlīte.** For conjugation in full, see Appendix, **451.**
proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, dep., *set out.*
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *think.*

343. EXERCISES

1. Iubē aut centuriōnem aut lēgātum epistulam dē hāc iniūriā scrībere.
2. Nōlīte bellum in hiemem prōdūcere, sed Rōmam cum mīlitibus proficīsciminī.
3. Conciliō habitō, barbarī in Rōmānōs coniūrātiōnem fēcērunt, ut eōs reditū prohibēre cōnārentur.
4. Quod necesse est centuriōnem Rōmam proficīscī, cavēte, mīlitēs, nē eum reditū prohibeātis.

5. Quod omnia deerant quibus nāvēs frāctae reficerentur, difficile erat subsidia ad Galliam nāvigāre.
6. Cum nāvēs maximō aestū inūtilēs factae essent, Caesarem eās reficere aut aliās parāre oportēbat.
7. Do not attempt to do injury to the centurion because he did not obey the lieutenant.
8. Since the barbarians have made a conspiracy, they will attempt to prevent us from returning.[1]
9. This man ought to have set out either to Gaul or to Britain, to seek aid.
10. The leaders, having held a conference, attempted to repair the wrecked ships.

344. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Hīs superātīs aut reditū prohibitīs, nēmō posteā (ut putābant) in Britanniam profectūrus erat, ut bellum faceret. Itaque coniūrātiōne factā, Britannī ex castrīs discēdēbant et suōs ex agrīs dūcēbant. Sed Caesar, cum eōrum cōnsilia nōn cognōvisset, tamen quod nāvēs suae frāctae erant et quod obsidēs nōn mittēbantur, bellum exspectābat. Itaque frūmentum ex agrīs in castra portābat et nāvēs reficiēbat. Quae ad nāvēs reficiendās ūtilia erant ex Galliā portārī iussit.

NOTES

4. suōs: see note on **263**, l. 3.

5. cum: notice the following **tamen**; how should **cum** be translated?

[1] *i. e.*, from a return.

LESSON LIX

THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE; SECOND PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION REVIEWED

345. The Future Passive Participle (see Lesson XL) is in some of its uses called the Gerundive. It is declined like an adjective of the Second and First Declensions.

The Gerund is a verbal noun, having forms identical with those of the Gerundive, but used only in the neuter singular of the Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative. The Gerunds of the first conjugation are as follows (for the others, see Appendix):

GEN. **laudandī,** *of praising*
DAT. **laudandō,** *to* or *for praising*
ACC. **laudandum,** *praising* (as object of a preposition)
ABL. **laudandō,** *with, from,* or *by praising*

a. **Sum** has neither gerundive nor gerund.

b. Like the infinitive (see Lesson LVII) the gerund is used in some of the constructions of a noun; and like a verb it may govern a noun or pronoun.

c. The infinitive supplies the place of the nominative of the gerund, and also of the accusative when used as the object of a verb.

346. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Haec causa veniendī erat.** *This was the reason for* (literally, *of*) *coming.*
2. **Haec morandō faciunt.** *They do this* (literally, *these things*) *by delaying.*

3. Caesar pontem faciendum cūrāvit. *Caesar had a bridge built;* literally, *cared for a bridge to be made.*

4. Prīnceps urbem mīlitibus dēlendam dedit. *The chief gave the city to the soldiers to destroy;* literally, *to be destroyed.*

5. (Caesar lēgātōs ad pācem petendum mīsit.) [1]
6. Caesar lēgātōs ad pācem petendam mīsit. } *Caesar sent envoys to seek peace.*

7. (Caesar lēgātos pācem petendī causā mīsit.) [2]
8. Caesar lēgātōs pācis petendae causā mīsit. } *Caesar sent envoys for the purpose of seeking peace.*

a. The gerundive in agreement with the object may be used with some verbs with the value of an object clause or to denote purpose; see sentences **3** and **4**.

b. Instead of the gerund with its object, we usually find a noun in the case in which the gerund would have been, with a gerundive in agreement with it. Compare sentences **5** and **6**, **7** and **8**. Sentences **5** and **7** are given merely to show the relation between the gerund and the gerundive constructions. They are very rarely found, and should not be imitated in writing Latin.

c. An important use of the gerundive is to form the Second Periphrastic Conjugation. See Lesson XXXVII, and review the second periphrastic conjugation.

347. Rule. — *The gerund is used in the genitive to limit a noun; in the accusative with* **ad** *to denote purpose; as an ablative of means, cause,* etc.

[1] This form is not in use, that in **6** being substituted for it.
[2] This form is seldom used, that in **8** being substituted for it.

348. Rule. — *The gerundive construction is commonly used instead of the gerund governing an object — always if the gerund is governed by a preposition.*

349. Rule. — *The gerundive in agreement with the object is used with* **dō, cūrō**, *and some other verbs, with the value of an object clause or to denote purpose.*

350. VOCABULARY

duodecim, num. adj., indec., *twelve.*
explōrātor, explōrātōris, m., *scout.*
prō, prep., *before, in front of.*
pulvis, pulveris, m., *dust.*
septimus, -a, -um, *seventh.*
suspīciō, suspīciōnis, f., *suspicion.*
cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtum, *place, station; decide, determine.*
cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *care for*; with gerundive, *cause.*
efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum, *cause, bring about.*

351. EXERCISES

1. Lēgātus mīlitēs, quibus praeerat, in statiōne prō castrīs cōnstituit.
2. Intereā nāvēs in lītore cōnstituendae sunt, nē aestus eās compleat.
3. Centuriō pontem faciendum cūrābit, ut, aciē trāns flūmen ductā, mīlitēs in statiōne ibi cōnstituat.
4. Cum magnus pulvis[1] suspīciōnem effēcisset, Caesar hōrā septimā explōrātōrēs praemīsit.
5. Ad eās rēs parandās centuriō cum duodecim mīlitibus septimae legiōnis ad oppidum missus est.
6. Dux explōrātōrēs mīsit, quī vidērent, quid tantum pulverem effēcisset.

[1] For the translation, see sentence 7.

7. Let us cause scouts to be sent ahead on account of the great (amount of) dust.
8. On the seventh day there was so great a tide in that place that our ships were filled with water.
9. On account of his suspicions Marcus placed twelve soldiers on guard before the town.
10. The farmers ought to have had a suspicion of war, and to have prepared grain.

352. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Cum mīlitēs eās rēs summō studiō facerent, duodecim nāvibus āmissīs, reliquae ita refectae sunt, ut ad nāvigandum ūtilēs essent. Ad id tempus nūlla bellī suspīciō erat, cum pars Britannōrum in agrīs manēret, pars etiam in castra venīret. Intereā ūnā legiōne, quae appellābātur septima, ut frūmentum parāret missā, pulvis magnus ab iīs quī prō castrīs in statiōne erant in ea parte vīsus est, quam in partem legiō iter fēcerat.

NOTES

1. eās rēs: referring to the last sentence in the preceding exercise.

7. in eā parte . . . quam in partem: = **in eā parte in quam.** The antecedent is sometimes repeated in the relative clause.

A Roman Coin

LESSON LX

CONJUNCTIONS

353. *INFLECTION OF POSSUM COMPLETED*

Conjunctions connect words, phrases, clauses, and sentences. See Introduction, **39**.

Coördinate conjunctions connect words, phrases, clauses, and sentences of similar construction and equal rank.

Subordinate conjunctions connect subordinate, or dependent, clauses to the principal sentence.

Coördinate conjunctions are classified as follows:

Copulative conjunctions *join* words, phrases, etc. As: **et, -que, atque,** *and;* **neque,** *and not.*

Disjunctive conjunctions *separate* words, phrases, etc. As: **aut,** *or.*

Adversative conjunctions denote *opposition.* As: **sed, vērō, autem,** *but, however;* **tamen,** *nevertheless*

Causal conjunctions express *cause* or *reason.* As: **nam, namque, enim,** *for.*

Subordinate conjunctions are classified according to the construction of the clauses which they introduce; for example:

Conditional conjunctions: **sī,** *if;* **nisi,** *if not, unless.*

Causal conjunctions: **cum,** *since;* **quod,** *because.*

Consecutive conjunction, introducing a clause of result: **ut,** *so that.*

Final conjunctions, introducing clauses of purpose: **ut,** *in order that;* **nē,** *in order that not, lest.*

Temporal conjunctions: **ubi, ut, cum,** *when;* **postquam,** *after;* **dum,** *while.*

Adversative and concessive conjunctions: **etsī, quamquam, cum,** *although.*

a. Causal and adverbative conjunctions occur both among coördinate and among subordinate conjunctions. The difference is that the former introduce independent, the latter dependent clauses.

b. Some conjunctions are used in pairs, as: **et . . . et,** *both . . . and;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or;* **neque . . . neque,** *neither . . . nor.*

354. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Mārcus et Sextus veniunt. *Marcus and Sextus come.*

2. Caesar mīlitēsque impetum facient. *Caesar and his soldiers will make an attack.*

3. Ad Galliam atque ad Britanniam iter facient. *They will journey (make a journey) to Gaul and also to Britain.*

4. Barbarī lēgātōs mīsērunt pācemque ā Caesare petīvērunt. *The barbarians sent envoys and sought peace from Caesar.*

5. Aestus nāvēs complēbit; plēna enim lūna est. *The tide will fill the ships, for it is the (time of the) full moon.*

6. Aut hīc aut ille hōc faciet. *Either this man or that will do this.*

a. **-que** is an enclitic and is joined to the second of the two words which it connects; see sentence **2.** When **-que** connects clauses or sentences, it is joined to the first word of the second clause or sentence; see sentence **4.** **Et** and **-que** have about the same force, but **-que** is a closer connective and is used to join words more intimately related; see sentence **2.** **Atque**

emphasizes the second member, and may often be translated *and also*.

b. **Enim** is postpositive; that is, it is placed after the first word in the sentence; see sentence **5**. The same thing is true of **autem**.

The irregular verb **possum** (see Lesson XX) is regular in the inflection of the perfect stem. It lacks the supine stem, and is found only in the active voice. For the conjugation of the present, imperfect, and future indicative, see 166. For the rest of the inflection, see Appendix **449**.

355. VOCABULARY

agmen, agminis, n., *line of march, army on the march.*
armātus, -a, -um, part. of **armō,** *armed.*
complūrēs, -a or **-ia, complūrium,** *very many.*
essedum, -ī, n., *chariot.*
numerus, -ī, m., *number.*
quamquam, conj., *although.*
cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *conceal, hide.*
circumdō, circumdare,[1] **circumdedī, circumdatum,**[1] *put around, surround.*
dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositum, *lay down.*
subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus sum, dep., *follow closely.*
suspicor, suspicārī, suspicātus sum, dep., *suspect.*

356. EXERCISES

1. Complūra esseda Britannōrum agmen Rōmānōrum subsequēbantur.
2. Centuriō mīlitēs armandōs cūrāvit; bellum enim suspicātus est.

[1] Note the short **a**; see Introd. **79** *a*.

3. Quamquam occupātī estis, nōlīte arma dēpōnere, nē hostēs vōs equitibus circumdent.
4. Cum bellum suspicēmur, mīlitēs complūrēs armēmus et in statiōne prō castrīs cōnstituāmus.
5. Quod agmen hostium in frūmentō parandō[1] occupātum equitibus circumdederāmus, arma dēposuērunt.
6. Britannī magnum armātōrum numerum in eō locō cēlābunt, ut in Rōmānōs occupātōs impetum faciant.
7. The Britons concealed very many chariots in that place, that they might surround the Romans.
8. Although the soldiers were busy in getting[2] grain, they ought not to have laid down their arms.
9. It will be difficult for the enemy to conceal themselves, for we shall closely follow their line of march.
10. Since you suspect war, do not attempt to cross the river and to place soldiers on guard there.

357. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Cum id nūntiātum esset, Caesar impetum barbarōrum suspicātus, mīlitēs quī in statiōne erant sēcum in eam partem ubi legiō erat proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās cohortēs in statiōne esse, reliquās armārī et sē subsequī iussit. Omnī enim frūmentō ex reliquīs partibus in castra portātō, ūna pars reliqua erat et ibi hostēs in silvīs sē cēlāverant. Tum in nostrōs, quī armīs dēpositīs in

[1] Here means *getting*.

[2] See sentence 5 and note.

frūmentō parandō occupātī erant, impetum fēcērunt, et equitibus essedīsque circumdedērunt.

NOTES

1. id: referring to l. 3 of the preceding Read. **Ex.**
2. sēcum = cum sē.
3. proficīscī: depends on **iussit** in l. 4.
reliquīs: supply **mīlitibus.**
4. reliquās: supply **cohortēs.**
subsequī: note the force of **sub-**; see Vocab.
7. armīs dēpositīs: *i. e.*, the Romans had laid down their arms, in order to reap the grain.

LESSON LXI

THE IRREGULAR VERB **EŌ**

THE SUPINE

358. The verb **eō**, *go*, while it belongs in general to the Fourth Conjugation, is in some respects irregular. For the inflection, see Appendix **454**. The following points may be noted:

a. The supine stem has *ĭ*, instead of the regular *ī* of the Fourth Conjugation.

b. The *i* of the root becomes *e* before *a*, *o*, and *u*.

c. The future is in *-bō*, instead of the regular *-am* of the Fourth Conjugation.

d. In those forms in which *v* comes between two vowels the *v* is usually dropped.

e. The simple verb *eō* is very rarely used in the passive, but compounds of *eō* usually have the passive.

It is formed regularly from the corresponding active forms.

359. Some verbs have, besides the forms which have already been given, still another verbal noun, called the Supine. It is found only in the accusative and the ablative, and has the same base as the perfect passive participle.

EXAMPLES

	I	II	III		IV
Acc.	laudātum	doctum	rēctum	captum	mūnītum
Abl.	laudātū	doctū	rēctū	captū	mūnītū

a. Not all the forms given above actually occur. Comparatively few verbs have either supine, and still fewer have both.

360. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Mīlitēs frūmentum petītum in agrōs iērunt. *The soldiers went into the fields to seek grain.*

2. Hōc inūtile est factū. *This is useless to do:* literally, *in respect to the doing.*

a. In the first sentence **petītum** gives the *purpose* of the soldiers in going into the fields. Purpose is also expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* (Lesson XXV, *d*) or with a relative (Lesson XXX) and by the gerundive with *ad* or *causā* (Lesson LIX). The supine cannot always be used to express purpose for two reasons:

(1) It is used only with verbs of motion.
(2) Only a few verbs have a supine in **-um**.

b. In the second sentence **factū** tells *in what respect* the action is useless. The supine in **-ū** is usually best translated by the English infinitive.

361. Rule. — *The supine in* **-um** *is used with verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion.*

362. Rule. — *The supine in* **-ū** *is used with adjectives and a few nouns as an ablative of specification.*

363. VOCABULARY

circiter, adv., *about.*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot;* abl., **pedibus**, *on foot.*
terror, terrōris, m., *terror.*
vehementer, adv., *strongly, exceedingly, very much.*
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *lead, drive.*
collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *place.*
perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum, *bring about, accomplish.*
profugiō, profugere, profūgī, profugitum, *flee, flee for refuge.*

364. EXERCISES

1. Cum pedibus pugnārēmus, magnō hostium numerō ad castra agēbāmur.
2. Nōn facile est dictū quantum terrōrem esseda Britannōrum effēcerint.
3. Prīncipēs circiter duodecim numerō ad castra vēnērunt, pācem petītum.
4. Ad eās rēs perficiendās Caesar centuriōnem cum subsidiīs praemīsit.
5. Quamquam Britannī complūra esseda in eam regiōnem agēbant, nihil perficere potuērunt.
6. Cum barbarī esseda circiter duodecim in eō locō collocāvissent, ea in nostrōs [1] occupātōs agēbant.

[1] See Note on **263**, line 3.

7. Because the barbarians had placed many chariots in their battle-line, our men [1] could accomplish nothing.
8. The soldiers who were fighting on foot were driven to their camp by the enemy.
9. The terror which the chariots of the barbarians caused is disgraceful to hear of. [2]
10. At about the seventh hour the chiefs came to Caesar to seek peace; for they could accomplish nothing by war.

365. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Britannī hōc modō ex essedīs pugnābant. Prīmō per omnēs partēs properābant et tēla coniciēbant atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et essedōrum ōrdinēs saepe perturbābant. Cum inter equitēs vēnissent, ex essedīs dēsiliēbant et pedibus pugnābant. Esseda intereā ex proeliō agēbantur et ita collocāta sunt, ut multitūdine hostium pressī barbarī ad ea sē recipere possent. Ita esseda et equitum et peditum officiō fungēbantur.

NOTES

1. hōc: *the following.*

3. ōrdinēs . . . equitēs: *i. e.* of the enemy.

5. pedibus: *on foot;* ablative of manner.

6. agēbantur: by the drivers, who remained in the **chariots** after the warriors had left them.

7. pressī: translate the participle by a clause with *when.*

8. officiō: for the construction see **304.**

[1] Express by the possessive pronoun; see sentence **6.**

[2] Trans. by the Supine.

LESSON LXII

THE IRREGULAR VERBS, VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, AND MĀLŌ

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN THE INDICATIVE

366. The verb **volō**, *wish*, with its compounds **nōlō** (**nōn volō**), *be unwilling*, and **mālō** (**magis volō**), *prefer*, are irregular in part. For the inflection, see Appendix **450-452**. The following points may be noted:

a. These verbs are irregular only in the present stem.

b. All three lack the supine stem.

c. The present and imperfect subjunctive are conjugated like **sim** and **essem**.

367 ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Sī barbarī lēgātōs mittunt, pācem petunt. { *If the barbarians send envoys, they seek peace.* / *If the barbarians are sending envoys, they are seeking peace.* }

2. Sī barbarī lēgātōs mīsērunt, pācem petīvērunt. *If the barbarians sent envoys, they sought peace.*

3. Sī barbarī lēgātōs mittent, pācem petent. *If the barbarians send*[1] *envoys, they will seek peace.*

4. Sī barbarī pācem petīverint, Caesar iīs dabit. *If the barbarians seek*[1] *peace, Caesar will give it to them.*

5. Sī auxilium vultis, ad castra īte. *If you wish aid, go to the camp.*

a. The above sentences are called conditional sentences. They consist of a condition, or protasis, introduced by **sī**, *if* (in place of which **nisi**, *if not, unless*

[1] See note *e*, below.

or sīn, *but if*, may be used), and a conclusion, or apodosis.

b. In all these sentences nothing at all is implied as to the *fulfilment* or *non-fulfilment* of the conditions. The barbarians may or may not be sending envoys. If they are, they are seeking peace. Notice that the indicative is used in all these conditions. The indicative is also used in the conclusion, unless the meaning of the sentence (apart from its use as a conclusion) requires the subjunctive or the imperative, as in **5**.

c. Future conditional sentences of this class are expressed in English (in the conclusion[1]) by *shall* or *will*. That is, they are expressed positively (or vividly). Hence they are sometimes called "more vivid future conditions," in distinction from the "less vivid future conditions" of the next Lesson. "More vivid future conditions," however, differ from other Indicative conditions only in tense, and there is no good reason for putting them in a class by themselves.

d. In a future condition, if the action of the condition is regarded as completed before the action of the conclusion begins, the *future perfect* is used, instead of the future.

e. It should be noticed that in future conditions of this class the *present* is commonly used in English, instead of the future or future perfect, so that present and future conditions in English often have the *same form in the protasis* (see sentences **1**, **3**, and **4**). Present and

[1] See *e*.

future conditions can, however, be distinguished in English by the form of the *apodosis* (compare sentence **1** with **3** and **4**).

368. **Rule.** — *In conditional sentences, with nothing implied as to the fulfilment of the condition, which are expressed positively* (or *vividly*), *any tense of the Indicative may be used in either the condition or the conclusion.*

369. VOCABULARY

aegrē, adv., *with difficulty.*
opportūnus, -a, -um, *favorable, opportune, convenient.*
supplicium, suppli'cī, n., *punishment;* **supplicium sūmere dē aliquō**, *inflict punishment on any one.*
timor, timōris, m., *fear.*
committō, committere, commīsī, commissum, *bring together, join;* **proelium committere**, *join battle.*
contineō, continēre, continuī, contentum, *hold fast, keep.*
intermittō, intermittere, intermīsī, intermissum, *intermit;* of time, *let pass.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *wish rather, prefer.*
redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductum, *lead back.*
volō, velle, voluī, *wish.*

370. EXERCISES

1. Sī tempore aliēnō proelium committere volueris, hostēs aegrē superābis.
2. Sī opportūnum est, mē hōc locō continēre mālō; diē septimō proelium committam.
3. Sī timor inter mīlitēs est, breve tempus ante proelium intermittere mālumus.
4. Mārcum mīlitēs, quī in statiōne erant, ad castra redūcere nōn oportēbat.

5. Nisi opportūnum est signum proelī committendī dare, aciem in oppidō continēte.
6. Sī puerī bonōs librōs legere nōlēbant, magister grave supplicium dē iīs sūmēbat.
7. If the place is favorable for leading out the army, do not allow time to pass.
8. If the signal for (of) joining battle was given, these soldiers concealed their fear with difficulty.
9. If he does not wish to join battle at an unfavorable time, the leader will remain where he is.[1]
10. Unless you prefer to surrender yourselves to the enemy, conceal your fear and join battle.

371. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Cum Caesar ad legiōnem vēnisset, mīlitēs premēbantur ab hostibus, quī ex omnibus partibus tēla coniciēbant, et eōrum impetum aegrē sustinēbant. Ad eōs Caesar opportūnissimō tempore cum suīs cōpiīs vēnit; nam eius adventū hostēs perturbātī erant et nostrī ex timōre sē recēpērunt. Hīs rēbus factīs, cum tempus ad committendum proelium aliēnum esset, Caesar suō sē locō continuit, et brevī tempore intermissō in castra cōpiās redūxit.

Notes

1. legiōnem: *i. e.* the one which he had sent to get grain: see **352**, lines 5–6.

3. eōs: *i. e.* the soldiers forming the legion mentioned in line 1.

7. suō . . . locō: *i. e.* where he was.

[1] See **371**, line 7 and note.

LESSON LXIII

THE IRREGULAR VERBS, **FERŌ, FĪŌ**, AND **DŌ**

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE

372. For the inflection of the irregular verbs **ferō, fīō,** and **dō**, see Appendix **453, 454, 456**. The following points may be noted:

a. **Ferō** is irregular in the present stem only in omitting the connecting vowel in some forms, — for example, in **fer-re, fer-ṣ, fer-t, fer-tis, fer-rem** (compare **reg-e-re, reg-i-s, reg-i-t, reg-i-tis, reg-e-rem**). It has the perfect **tulī** and the supine **lātum**, but the inflections are regular. The imperative is **fer**.

b. **Fīō** is used only in the present stem. The remaining forms are supplied from the passive of **faciō**, for which **fīō** serves in the present system. Observe that **fīō** has **ī** even before a vowel, except when **i** is followed by **er**; thus, **fīunt**, but **fierem**.

c. **Dō** differs from the regular verbs of Conjugation I in having **ă** instead of **ā**, except in the second person singular of the present indicative (**dās**), the singular of the present imperative (**dā**), and the present participle (**dāns**); and in having the perfect **dedī**, which is, however, regular in its inflection.

373. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Sī barbarī lēgātōs mittant, pācem petant. *If the barbarians should send envoys, they would seek peace.*

2. Sī barbarī pacem petierint, Caesar iīs det. *If the barbarians should seek peace, Caesar would give it to them.*

3. Sī frūmentum Rōmānīs deesset, pācem peterent. *If grain were lacking to the Romans, they would be seeking peace.*

4. Sī frūmentum Rōmānīs dēfuisset, pācem petīssent. *If grain had been wanting to the Romans, they would have sought peace.*

a. In all these conditional sentences the subjunctive is used in both the condition and conclusion. They fall into two classes. In **1** and **2** nothing is implied as to the *fulfilment* of the condition, and they differ from those in the preceding lesson only in being stated *less positively* (or vividly) — in English by *should* or *would*, instead of by *shall* or *will* (see **367**, notes *c* and *d*). Such conditions are usually in the future, and are sometimes called "less vivid future conditions." In **3** and **4** the *non-fulfilment* of the condition is implied. Such conditions are in the present or past, and called "conditions contrary to fact."

b. In subjunctive conditions with nothing implied as to their fulfilment, if the action of the condition is regarded as completed before the action of the conclusion begins, the *perfect* subjunctive is used instead of the present. See sentence **2**, and compare **367**, note *d*. In English, however, such conditions are usually translated by *should* rather than by *should have*.

374. Rule. — *Conditional sentences with nothing implied as to the fulfilment of the condition, which are expressed less positively* (or *vividly*), *take the present or perfect subjunctive in the condition and the present subjunctive in the conclusion.*

375. Rule. — *Conditions and conclusions contrary to fact take the imperfect subjunctive to denote present time and the pluperfect subjunctive to denote past time.*

376. Conditional sentences as a whole may be classified as follows:

A. *Indicative Conditional Sentences*

I. Conditions and conclusions in any tense with nothing implied as to the fulfilment of the condition and expressed positively.

B. *Subjunctive Conditional Sentences*

II. Conditions and conclusions, usually in the future, with nothing implied as to the fulfilment of the condition and expressed less positively. Present or perfect.

III. Conditions and conclusions, in the present or past, implying non-fulfilment. Imperfect or pluperfect.

We have three classes. Of these I is always in the indicative, II and III always in the subjunctive. As the indicative conditions are more numerous, we may say: Conditional sentences are in the indicative, unless they are stated less positively or imply non-fulfilment.

377. VOCABULARY

arbor, arboris, f., *tree.*
facultās, facultātis, f., *opportunity, supply, abundance.*
paucitās, paucitātis, f., *fewness, small number.*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear.*
fīō, fierī, factus sum, *become, be made;* of war, *be carried on, be waged.* Used as passive of **faciō.**

perpetuus, -a, -um, *perpetual;* **in perpetuum,** *forever.*
praeda, -ae, f., *booty.*
cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall, be killed.*
colloquor, colloquī, collocūtus sum, dep., *talk with, converse with.*
habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *live, dwell.*
īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum, *bring upon, inflict on;* **bellum īnferre,** with dat., *make war on.*

378. EXERCISES

1. Nisi in eō locō complūrēs arborēs fuissent, hostēs sē aegrē cēlāvissent.
2. Sī barbarī nōbīscum[1] colloquantur, paucitātem nostrōrum mīlitum cognōscant.
3. Sī Rōmānōs ex castrīs expulerimus, magnā praedā factā nōs in perpetuum līberēmus.
4. Sī centuriō cognōvisset quanta nāvium facultās hostibus esset, bellum iīs nōn intulisset.
5. Dum proelium fit,[2] iī quī in eō oppidō habitābant ad castra pācem petītum vēnērunt.
6. Sī hostēs oppidum cēpissent, magnam praedae faciendae facultātem habuissent.
7. If that tree had fallen, it would have done great injury to my house.
8. While Publius was[2] dwelling among the barbarians, he was made king by them.
9. Let us give the young man an opportunity of talking with us about the booty.
10. If the enemy should know the small number of our soldiers, they would be able to free themselves forever.

[1] See footnote, p. 117.

[2] The present indicative is usual with **dum**, *while*, in place of the imperfect.

379. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, reliquī barbarī quī erant in agrīs discessērunt. Secūtae sunt complūrēs diēs tantae tempestātēs, ut nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostēs ā pugnā prohibērent. Intereā barbarī in omnēs partēs nūntiōs mīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs nūntiāvērunt et iīs ostendērunt quanta praedae faciendae et in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, Rōmānīs ex castrīs expulsīs.

Notes

3. complūrēs diēs: acc. of duration of time.

6. suīs: used as a noun; see p. 104, footnote 1.

7. quanta: agrees with **facultās** in l. 8, on which the gerundives **praedae faciendae** and **suī līberandī** depend. **Quanta . . . facultās darētur** is an indirect question, the object of **ostendērunt**.

suī . . . līberandī: the gerundive corresponding to **sē līberandī** has this form even when **sē** and **suī** are plural, as here, instead of **suī līberandōrum**.

8. Rōmānīs . . . expulsīs: translate by a conditional clause.

Roman Aqueduct

LESSON LXIV

380. REVIEW

1. Give all the infinitives of the following verbs: **cūrō, habeō, iungō, cupiō, audiō.**

2. Translate:

1. Licet bonīs librīs ūtī. 2. Licuit ad rēgem dōna mittere. 3. Mīlitēs iubēte frūmentum ad castra portāre. 4. Necesse erit flūmen lātum trānsīre. 5. Eōs oportēbat Rōmam īre.

3. Give full synopses of **portō** in the third person singular; of **maneō** in the third person plural; of **mittō** in the second person singular; of **rapiō** in the first person plural; and of **veniō** in the second person plural.

4. Translate into Latin:

1. Seize the men who have made a conspiracy against the king. 2. Do not lead the army across the bridge. 3. Let us have a wall built in this region (use *cūrō* with gerundive). 4. He sent a messenger to Rome to ask for aid (translate the purpose clause in as many ways as possible).

5. Give synopses of **possum** in the first person plural; of **eō** in the third person plural; of **volō** in the second person singular; of **mālō** in the third person singular; and of **nōlō** in the second person plural.

6. Translate:

1. Hōc mīrum est dictū. 2. Sī hominem Rōmam mittēs, īre nōlet. 3. Sī puer bonus esset, magister dē eō supplicium nōn sūmeret. 4. Sī huius regiōnis incolās vīdissēmus, iīs bellum nōn intulissēmus. 5. Sī adulēscentem videāmus, eum ad cōnsulem nūntium mittāmus.

7. Conjugate the present indicative of **volō**, **nōlō**, and **mālō**; the present subjunctive of **volō**; the imperfect subjunctive of **mālō**.

8. Translate into Latin:

1. Do not go to the city. 2. If you should prefer to make war, we should be glad. 3. He ought to have been unwilling to do this. 4. If he had been made consul, he would have remained at Rome. 5. If he is made commander, he will lead the army into Italy.

9. Conjugate the present subjunctive of **possum**; the imperative of **eō**; the present indicative active of **ferō**; the present subjunctive active and the present indicative passive of **dō**.

10. Translate into Latin:

1. He is about to go to the territories of the Belgians. 2. The book must be sent to the master. 3. If he can cross the river, he comes to the town. 4. Do not give grain to the citizens of that town. 5. Let us give the pirates to the king to be killed.

Forum Relief

LESSON LXV

SIMPLE DECLARATIVE SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

381. When the words or thoughts of a person are quoted without change, we have Direct Discourse (*Ōrātiō Rēcta*). As: he said "I will come."

When, however, they are made to depend on a verb of saying, thinking, knowing, and the like, or on an expression equivalent to such a verb, we have Indirect Discourse (*Ōrātiō Oblīqua*). As: he said that he would come.

382. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. **Nāvem aedificat.** *He is building a ship.*
2. **Dīcit** } **sē nāvem aedificāre.** { *He says that he is building a ship.*
3. **Dīxit** } { *He said that he was building a ship.*
4. **Nāvem aedificābit.** *He will build a ship.*
5. **Dīcit** } **sē nāvem aedificātūrum esse.** { *He says that he will build a ship.*
6. **Dīxit** } { *He said that he would build a ship.*
7. **Nāvem aedificāvit.** *He has built a ship*, or *He built a ship.*
8. **Dīcit** } **sē nāvem aedificāvisse.** { *He says that he has built* (or *he built*) *a ship.*
9. **Dīxit** } { *He said that he had built* (or *he built*) *a ship.*

a. While indirect discourse in English is expressed by a finite verb introduced by *that*, in Latin it is expressed by the infinitive with subject accusative.

b. In English the tense of the verb in indirect discourse is affected by that of the verb of saying. Thus we say, he *says* that he *is* building a ship, but he *said* that he *was* building a ship. In Latin this is not the case; the present, future, and perfect infinitives denote time the same as, earlier than, or later than that of the *verb of saying*, regardless of the tense of the latter. Compare the English and the Latin of **2** and **3**, **5** and **6**, **8** and **9**.

383. Rule. — *In indirect discourse, principal declarative sentences are put in the infinitive with subject accusative. The tenses of the infinitive denote time present, past, or future to that of the verb of saying.*

384. VOCABULARY

Atrebās, Atrebātis, m., *an Atrebatian. one of the Atrebates,* a Gallic tribe.

Commius, Commī, m., *Commius,* one of the Atrebates.

etsī, conj., *even if, although.*

exitus, -ūs, m., *going out, outcome, result.*

superus, -a, -um, comp., **superior,** sup., **suprēmus** or **summus,** *above, higher;* comp., of time, *former.*

trīgintā, num. adj., indec., *thirty.*

accidō, accidere, accidī, ——, *befall, happen.*

animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversum, *turn one's mind to, perceive.*

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *think.*

385. EXERCISES

1. Commius, cum arbitrārētur sē magnam praedam factūrum esse, bellum Britannīs intulit.
2. Etsī dominus suspicātus est servum eius reī exitum cognōscere, eum līberāvit.
3. Caesar animadvertit Commium Atrebātem trīgintā equitēs coēgisse et inter arborēs cēlāvisse.
4. Sī id superiōre diē accidisset, magnam praedae faciendae facultātem habuissēmus.
5. Cum puer arbitrārētur magistrum dē sē[1] supplicium grave sūmere velle, vehementer perturbātus est.
6. Sī hostēs paucitātem equitum Rōmānōrum animadvertissent, proelium diē superiōre commīsissent.
7. If we can get together thirty horsemen, we shall be able to follow the enemy closely[2] when[3] they have been beaten.
8. The soldiers thought that the outcome of the battle the day before had been unfavorable.
9. If we had suspected that the enemy would save themselves by flight, we should have got together horsemen.
10. If this should happen, the outcome of the battle would be favorable.

386. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Hōc modō cum magnam multitūdinem peditum equitumque celeriter coēgissent, Britannī ad castra

[1] Refers to the subject of the main verb.

[2] Express by a preposition in composition with the verb.

[3] Express this clause by a participle.

Rōmānōrum vēnērunt. Caesar etsī suspicātus est idem futūrum esse quod superiōribus diēbus accidisset, et hostēs pulsōs sē celeritāte ā perīculō servātūrōs esse, tamen cum equitibus circiter trīgintā, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō anteā dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit, ut cum barbarīs proelium committeret.

NOTES

1. Hōc modō: referring to the last three lines of the preceding exercise.

5. pulsōs: translate the participle by a clause with *when* or *if*.

6. equitibus: with these he could follow up a victory.

7. dē quō . . . dictum est: see **319**, l. 7, **325**, l. 1.

LESSON LXVI

OBJECT CLAUSES WITH **UT** AND **NĒ** AFTER VERBS OF FEARING

DATIVE OF SERVICE OR PURPOSE

387. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Mārcus verētur ut amīcus veniat.
2. Mārcus verētur nē amīcus nōn veniat. } *Marcus fears that his friend will not come.*

3. Mārcus verētur nē amīcus veniat. *Marcus fears that his friend will come.*

4. Mārcus verēbātur ut amīcus venīret. *Marcus feared that his friend was not coming.*

5. Mārcus verēbātur nē amīcus vēnisset. *Marcus feared that his friend had come.*

a. In the above sentences the clauses introduced by **ut** and **nē** are substantive clauses, since they are the objects of the verbs of fearing. Observe that they are in the subjunctive mood.

b. In such sentences **ut** has the meaning *that . . . not,* and **nē** the meaning *that.* That is, they are chosen rather with reference to the *desire* of the subject of the verb of fearing than with reference to his *fear.* Thus in **1** and **4** Marcus *desires* the coming of his friend, but fears he will *not* come, and we have the affirmative **ut** with a negative meaning. In **3** and **5** he does *not* desire the coming of his friend, but fears he *will* come, and we have the negative **nē** with an affirmative meaning.

Hence the working rule: Determine the *desire* of the subject of the verb of fearing, and use **ut** if it is affirmative, **nē** if it is negative.

c. **Nē . . . nōn** is sometimes used in place of **ut.** See **2.**

388. Rule. — *Verbs of fearing are followed by the subjunctive introduced by* **ut, that . . . not,** *and* **nē, that. Nē . . . nōn** *is sometimes used instead of* **ut.**

389. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES (*continued*)

6. Diem colloquiō dīcit. *He names a day for a conference.*

7. Caesar locum castrīs dēliget. *Caesar will choose a place for a camp.*

8. Mīlitēs Caesarī auxiliō vēnērunt. *The soldiers came as an aid to Caesar* (literally, *for an aid*).

9. Haec ducī cūrae sunt. *These things are (for) a care to the leader.*

a. In sentences **6**, **7**, and **8** we have a dative translated by *for* and denoting the purpose or end of the action of the verb. In **9** we have a similar dative, which is not, however, translated by *for*, but as if it were a predicate nominative.

b. Such datives are not of general use; they are confined for the most part to abstract nouns, as in **8** and **9**, and to some expressions connected with military life.

c. The dative of purpose is often accompanied by another dative of the person, whence the construction is sometimes called that of the "two datives." See **8** and **9**.

390. Rule. — *The dative of some nouns, such as* **auxiliō, salūtī, cūrae,** *etc., may be used in the singular to express purpose.*

391. VOCABULARY

colloquium, collo'quī, n., *conversation, conference.*
īnfīrmus, -a, -um, *weak.*
ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f., *speech, oration.*
plūs, plūris, comp. of **multus,** *more.*
cōnfīdō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum, semi-dep.,[1] *trust, rely on; believe, be confident.*
patior, patī, passus sum, dep., *suffer.*
prōvideō, prōvidēre, prōvīdī, prōvīsum, *foresee, provide.*
vereor, verērī, veritus sum, dep., *fear.*

[1] In semi-deponent verbs the perfect system is passive in form, but active in meaning.

392. EXERCISES

1. Vereor ut īnfīrmīs nāvibus ā Galliā in Britanniam nāvigāre possīmus.
2. Prīnceps cōnfīsus est hostēs diem colloquiō dictūrōs esse.[1]
3. Plūrēs mīlitēs in aciem prōdūcāmus, ut praesidiō nostrīs pressīs[2] sint.
4. Nōs oportēbat in eō locō auxilia plūra prōvidēre, nē incolae ab hostibus iniūriam paterentur.
5. Nōlīte diūtius in Britanniā manēre, nē vōs īnfīrmīs nāvibus hieme nāvigāre necesse sit.
6. Cum Mārcus hās rēs ducī cūrae futūrās esse arbitrārētur, ōrātiōnem dē iīs fēcit.
7. The conspirators had provided men whose care it should be (to whom it should be a care) to make speeches to the people.
8. If we are unwilling to suffer injury longer from these men, we ought to lead out our army against them.
9. Unless you are confident that the foot-soldiers will be a protection to the camp, you ought to transport more horsemen into Gaul.
10. When the leader of the enemy had appointed a day for a conference, he made a long speech about peace.

393. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Commissō proeliō, nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt et in fugam sē dedērunt. Quōs

[1] **dīcō** with **diem** means *name* or *appoint*.
[2] Translate by a clause with *if*.

secūtī nostrī multōs ex iīs interfēcērunt, et omnibus aedificiīs flammā dēlētīs, sē in castra recēpērunt. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Ab hīs Caesar plūrēs obsidēs postulāvit quam anteā imperāverat eōsque in Galliam dūcī iussit, quod in Britanniā diūtius manēre et īnfīrmīs nāvibus hieme nāvigāre nōluit.

NOTES

2. et: we should say *but*.

7. eōsque: i. e., the hostages.

8. diūtius: comparative of **diū**, adv., *long*.

9. īnfīrmīs nāvibus: referring to those which had been damaged by the tide and repaired. They were **ad nāvigandum ūtilēs**, but not in the winter season.

LESSON LXVII

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES RESEMBLING RESULT CLAUSES, INTRODUCED BY **UT** OR **UT . . . NŌN**

394. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Efficiēbat ut posterō diē nāvigāre posset. *He brought it about that he could sail on the following day.*

2. Faciam ut ad castra nōn eat. *I will cause him not to go to the camp;* literally, *I will make that he do not go.*

3. Accidit ut servum reperīre nōn posset. *It happened that he could not find the slave.*

4. Mōs est barbarīs ut obsidēs interficiant. *The barbarians have the custom of killing hostages;* literally, *that they kill.*

a. The above clauses introduced by **ut** are the object (**1** and **2**) or the subject of a verb (**3**), or are used like

a predicate noun (**4**). Hence they are substantive clauses.

b. The mood in these clauses is the subjunctive, and they have a general resemblance to result clauses (Lesson L), for instance in using the negative **nōn**. They may be distinguished by this characteristic from substantive clauses of purpose, which have the negative **nē** (Lesson XXXVIII).

c. Such clauses are used as the object of verbs which denote the accomplishment of an effort, such as **faciō** and **efficiō**; as the subject of impersonal verbs like **accidit**; and as the predicate of expressions like **mōs est.**

d. The tense follows the rule of the Sequence of Tenses. Compare **2** and **4** with **1** and **3**, and see Lesson LIII.

395. Rule. — *Substantive clauses resembling result clauses are used as the object of verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort; as the subject of impersonal verbs such as* **accidit**, *it happens; or as the predicate of expressions like* **mōs est**, *it is the custom. They are introduced by* **ut** (*negative* **ut . . . nōn**) *and take the subjunctive.*

396. VOCABULARY

medius, -a, -um, *middle, middle of.*

Morinī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Morini*, a people on the coast of Belgic Gaul.

mōs, mōris, m., *custom.*

spēs, speī, f., *hope.*

trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *three hundred.*

addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductum, *lead to, induce.*

comprehendō, comprehen-

dere, comprehendī, comprehēnsum, *grasp, seize; understand.*

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, dep., *go out, disembark.*

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, dep., *arise, rise.*

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum, *loose;* **nāvēs solvere,** *set sail.*

397. EXERCISES

1. Sī ante mediam noctem nāvēs solvissent, ad portum posterō diē vēnissent.
2. Morinīs mōs erat, ut lēgātōs comprehenderent quī ad eōs vēnerant.
3. Accidit ut trecentī mīlitēs ē nāve ēgressī essent, ut praedam facerent.
4. Mōs est barbarīs, ut spē praedae adductī bellum fīnitimīs īnferant.
5. Accidit ut post mediam noctem tanta tempestās oreretur,[1] ut nāvēs solvere nōn possēmus.
6. Cum Morinī in nostrōs ē nāve ēgressōs impetum fēcissent, Caesar cōpiās mīsit quī suīs auxiliō essent.
7. It happened that this man was induced to set sail by the hope of booty.
8. Unless a great storm arises, we shall set sail at midnight with three hundred soldiers.
9. The hope of getting [2] booty will induce the Morini to seize the envoys.
10. If the soldiers had not disembarked from the ships, it would not have been necessary to go to their aid (to go as an aid to them).

[1] **Orior** has some forms of Conj. III; this is regularly the case in the Imperfect Subjunctive. This does not apply to compounds of **orior.**

[2] See **378,** sentence 6.

398. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*continued*)

Ipse, cum tempestās bona esset, paulō post mediam noctem nāvigāvit, et cum omnibus nāvibus ad Galliam vēnit. Sed duae onerāriae nāvēs ad eundem portum quem reliquae cēpērunt venīre nōn potuērunt, et in Morinōs lātae sunt. Ex quibus nāvibus cum circiter trecentī mīlitēs ēgressī essent atque in castra sē reciperent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns superātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī in eōs impetum fēcērunt.

NOTES

4. cēpērunt: here means *reached.*
et: *but;* see **393,** line 2 and note.
in: *into the country of.*
7. proficīscēns: translate by a clause with *when.*

LESSON LXVIII

IMPERATIVE AND SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

399. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES

1. Hostēs adsunt; impetum in eōs facite. *The enemy are near; make an attack on them.*

2. Centuriō mīlitibus dīcit hostēs adesse; impetum in eōs faciant. *The centurion says to the soldiers that the enemy are near; that they shall make an attack on them.*

3. Centuriō mīlitibus dīxit hostēs adesse; impetum in eōs facerent. *The centurion said to the soldiers that the enemy were near; that they should make an attack on them.*

4. Mīlitēs mittam, quī in castrīs sunt. *I will send the soldiers, who are in the camp.*

5. Caesar dīcit sē mīlitēs missūrum esse, quī in castrīs sint. *Caesar says that he will send the soldiers, who are in the camp.*

6. Caesar dīxit sē mīlitēs missūrum esse, quī in castrīs essent. *Caesar said that he would send the soldiers, who were in the camp.*

7. Mīlitēs mīsī, quī in castrīs erant. *I sent the soldiers who were in the camp.*

8. Caesar dīcit sē mīlitēs mīsisse, quī in castrīs essent. *Caesar says that he has sent the soldiers who were in the camp.*

9. Caesar dīxit sē mīlitēs mīsisse, quī in castrīs essent. *Caesar said that he had sent the soldiers who were in the camp.*

a. While declarative principal sentences in indirect discourse are put in the infinitive with subject accusative (see Lesson LXV), imperative sentences are put in the subjunctive. The tense depends on that of the verb of saying, according to the rule of the Sequence of Tenses. See sentences **2** and **3** and note the tenses of the infinitives and subjunctives in each.

b. All subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, if not already in the subjunctive for some reason, become subjunctive. The tense is determined by that of the verb of saying, according to the rule of the Sequence of Tenses. Compare **5** and **6**.

c. A perfect infinitive in indirect discourse, representing a secondary tense of the indicative, is followed by secondary tenses of the subjunctive, even if the verb of saying is in a primary tense. Compare **8** and **9**.

400. Rule. — *Imperative sentences in indirect discourse are put in the subjunctive. The tense depends on that of the verb of saying according to the rule of the sequence of tenses.*

401. Rule. — *Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse are put in the subjunctive. The tense is determined by that of the verb of saying according to the rule of the sequence of tenses.*

402. VOCABULARY

aurum, -ī, n., *gold.*
eō, adv., *thither.*
occāsus, -ūs, m., *falling, going down;* **sōlis occāsū,** *at sunset.*
sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun.*
Titus, -ī, m., *Titus,* a Roman forename.
adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum, dep., *attack.*
coepī, coepisse, coeptus, defective, *begin.*
hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *exhort, urge.*
redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductum, *lead back; reduce; bring.*

403. EXERCISES

1. Nisi Morinī arbitrātī essent mīlitēs aurum habēre, eōs nōn adortī essent.
2. Morinī putābant Rōmānōs quī ē nāve ēgressī essent aurum ā Britanniā portāvisse.
3. Caesar Labiēnō dīxit sōlis occāsū cum trecentīs mīlitibus proficīscerētur et Morinōs adorīrētur.
4. Titus dīxit sē mīlitēs reductūrum esse, quī spē aurī adductī in hostium fīnēs iissent.
5. Morinī suōs prīncipēs hortātī sunt, ut ad Caesarem ante sōlis occāsum īrent, pācem petītum.

6. Dux arbitrātus est sē nāvēs quās cōnspexisset in suam potestātem redūcere posse.
7. The chiefs said that because their men urged them to do this, they would send envoys to Caesar before sunset.
8. The scouts said that the enemy had concealed in that place all the gold which they had.
9. The enemy began to fear that they would be brought into the power of Titus Labienus.
10. The chief said that he would urge his men to tell Caesar who had sent them the gold.

404. READING EXERCISE

CAESAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN (*concluded*)

Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar omnēs ex castrīs equitēs suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī impetum hostium sustinuērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs multōs ex iīs interfēcērunt. Barbarī cum equitēs vīdissent, in fugam sē dedērunt. Deinde Caesar Titum Labiēnum in Morinōs mīsit, quī omnēs in potestātem eius vēnērunt. Caesar in Belgārum fīnibus tōtam hiemem manēbat. Eō duae cīvitātēs Britanniae obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae nōn mīsērunt.

Notes

1. **suīs auxiliō**: for the construction see Lesson LXVI.
7. **tōtam hiemem**: acc. of duration of time.

LESSON LXIX

405. REVIEW

1. Define Direct and Indirect Discourse. Illustrate by English examples. What is the Latin term for each?

2. Give the rule for principal declarative sentences in Indirect Discourse.

3. Translate:

1. Dīcit sē hōc factūrum esse. 2. Dīxit sē hōc facere. 3. Dīcet sē hōc fēcisse. 4. Dīxit sē hōc fēcisse. 5. Dīcet sē hōc facere.

4. What is the construction of clauses after verbs of fearing in Latin? When are such clauses introduced by **ut**, and when by **nē**? Illustrate by simple Latin examples.

5. Translate into Latin:

1. He will send soldiers as aid to the lieutenant. 2. Let this be (for) a care to the young man. 3. Let us choose a place for our camp. 4. I shall send these soldiers as a protection for Marcus. 5. He ought to have chosen a better place for a conference.

6. How may substantive clauses of result in Latin be distinguished from those of purpose? How are such clauses used? In what mood are they? How is the tense of the verb in such clauses determined?

7. Translate:

1. Hostēs verēbantur ut oppidum dēfendere possent. 2. Centuriō effēcit ut cōpiae ad castra mitterentur. 3. Prīnceps veritus est nē hostēs magnum essedōrum numerum cōgerent.

4. Accidit ut nāvēs Rōmānōrum, quae tempestāte frāctae erant, reficī non possent. 5. Mos erat Britannīs, ut essedīs ūterentur.

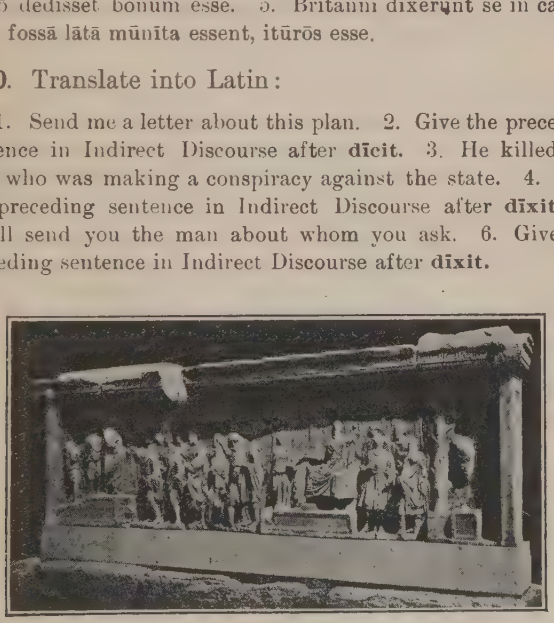
8. How are imperative clauses expressed in Indirect Discourse in Latin? How are subordinate clauses expressed?

9. Translate:

1. Dīcit nāvēs reficiant et ā Britanniā in Galliam nāvigent. 2. Centuriō dīxit sē ducem hostium cēpisse; mīlitēs eum cūstōdīrent. 3. Caesar mīlitibus dīxit, nē timērent; sē eōs Rōmam reductūrum esse. 4. Magister arbitrātus est librum quem puerō dedisset bonum esse. 5. Britannī dīxērunt sē in castra, quae fossā lātā mūnīta essent, itūrōs esse.

10. Translate into Latin:

1. Send me a letter about this plan. 2. Give the preceding sentence in Indirect Discourse after **dīcit.** 3. He killed the man who was making a conspiracy against the state. 4. Give the preceding sentence in Indirect Discourse after **dīxit.** 5. I will send you the man about whom you ask. 6. Give the preceding sentence in Indirect Discourse after **dīxit.**



Forum Relief

LESSON LXX

406. DERIVATION OF NOUNS

As is the case in English (see Introd. **23**), words in Latin are derived from other words by means of suffixes.

Such words are called Derivatives. Primary derivatives are formed from verb-stems or from roots; Secondary derivatives, from the stems of nouns or adjectives.

EXAMPLES [1]

407. A. *Primary Derivatives*

a. The suffix **-tor**, added to verb stems, denotes the *agent* or the *doer* of the action expressed by the verb:

1. explōrā-**tor** (explōrō, *explore;* stem, explōrā-), *explorer, scout.*
2. imperā-**tor** (imperō, *command;* stem, imperā-), *commander.*
3. ōrā-**tor** (ōrō, *beg, plead;* stem, ōrā-), *pleader, orator.*

b. The suffixes **-iō**, **-tiō**, **-tus**, and **-ium**, joined to verb stems or to roots, form abstract nouns denoting the *action* expressed by the corresponding verb, or the *result* of such action:

4. leg-**iō** (leg-, *collect*), *collection, legion.*
5. ōrā-**tiō** (ōrō, *beg, plead*; stem, ōrā-), *plea, oration.*
6. sta-**tiō** (stō, *stand;* root, sta-), *standing, standing-place, post, station.*

[1] In the examples no words are used which have not occurred in the vocabularies to the preceding lessons; in the exercises a few new words are introduced.

7. adi-**tus** (adeō. *go to;* stem, adi-), *a going to, approach.*

8. adven-**tus** (adveniō, *come to;* ad+root ven-), *a coming to, arrival.*

9. redi-**tus** (redeō, *go back;* stem, redi-), *a going back, return.*

10. stud-**ium** (studeō, *desire;* root, stud-), *desire, zeal.*

11. aedific-**ium** (aedificō, *build;* aedi+modified root, fic-), *building, a building.*

c. The suffixes **-men** and **-mentum**, joined to verb-stems or to roots, form nouns denoting the *action* of the corresponding verb, or the *result* of such action (vowels preceding these suffixes are *long*):

12. flū-**men** (fluō, *flow;* root, flu-), *flowing, flowing stream, river.*

13. ag-**men** (agō, *lead;* root, ag-), *that which is led, army on the march, marching column.*

14. frū-**mentum** (fru-or, *enjoy;* root, fru-, cf. flūmen), *that which is enjoyed, grain.*

d. The suffix **-or**, joined to roots, forms abstract nouns indicating a *mental state:*

15. terr-**or** (terreō, *frighten;* root, terr-), *terror.*

16. tim-**or** (timeō, *fear;* root, tim-), *fear.*

e. The suffixes **-ulum**, **-culum**, and **-bula**, joined to roots and verb-stems, form nouns denoting the *means* or *instrument*, or sometimes the *result* of the action of the corresponding verb:

17. vinc-**ulum** (vinciō, *bind;* modified stem, vinc-), *bond, fetter, chain.*

18. perī-**culum** (-periō, *try* — occurring only in compounds such as **experior, reperiō,** etc.; stem, perī-), *means of trying, trial, danger.*

19. fā-**bula** (for, *speak;* stem, fā-), *tale, story, fable.*

408. B. *Secondary Derivatives*

f. The suffixes **-ia, -tia, -tās,** and **-tūdō,** joined to the stems of nouns and adjectives, form abstract nouns denoting *quality* or *condition:*

20. audāc-**ia** (audāx, *daring, bold;* stem, audāc-), *boldness, audacity.*

21. memor-**ia** (memor, *mindful;* stem, memor-), *mindfulness, memory.*

22. amīci-**tia** (amīcus, *friendly, friend;* stem, amīco-[1]), *friendship.*

23. celeri-**tās** (celer, *swift;* stem, celeri-), *swiftness.*

24. cīvi-**tās** (cīvis, *citizen;* stem, cīvi-), *citizenship.*

25. magni-**tūdō** (magnus, *great;* stem, magno-[2]), *greatness.*

409. EXERCISES

1. Give the derivation and meaning of the following words, which occur in the vocabularies to the preceding lessons:

Dictātor (stem, dictā-, *dictate*), coniūrātiō (stem, coniūrā-, *conspire*), expugnātiō (stem, expugnā-, *take by storm, storm*), aemulātiō (stem, aemulā-, *emulate, rival*), exitus (stem, exi-, *go out*), colloquium (stem, colloqu-, *talk together, confer*), crūdēlitās (stem, crūdēli-, *cruel*), libertās (stem, libero-[4], *free*), multitūdō (stem, multo-[3], *many*).

[1] The final *o* of **amīco-** is changed to *i*.
[2] See note on **22, amīcitia**.
[3] Modify the stem as in **25, magnitūdō**.
[4] The final *o* is dropped.

2. Form new nouns and give their meaning, using the following suffixes:

a. With **-tor,** from: ag-,[1] *lead;* reg-,[1] *rule;* leg-,[1] *read;* dēfend-,[2] *defend;* vic-, *conquer.*

b. With **-tiō,** from: oppugnā-, *attack:* ag-,[3] *do;* defend-,[4] *defend;* mitt-,[5] *send.*

c. With **-tus,** from: exi-, *go out;* can-, *sing;* vid-[6], *see.*

d. With **-ium,** from: gaud-, *rejoice;* iūdic-, *judge;* perfug-, *take refuge.*

e. With **-men,** from: certā-, *contend, strive.* With **-mentum,** from: ōrnā-, *adorn, ornament;* experī-, *try.*

f. With **-or,** from: pav-, *fear;* am-, *love.*

g. With **-culum,** from vehe-[7], *carry;* with **-trum** (same meaning), from: arā-, *plough.*

h. With **-ia,** from: misero-[8], *wretched;* with **-tia,** from: dūro-,[9] *hard.*

i. With **-tās,** from gravi-, *heavy;* bono-[9], *good;* levi-, *light.*

k. With **-tūdō,** from: alto[9]-, *high;* pulchro-[9], *beautiful;* lāto-,[9] *wide.*

[1] *g* changes to *c* before **-tor**. For the quantity, see Introd. **85**.

[2] Final *d* of the stem unites with *t* of **-tor** to form *s*, and the *e* is lengthened before *ns*.

[3] The same change takes place as in the nouns of agency from stems in *g*.

[4] The same change takes place as in the noun of agency from **dēfend-**.

[5] The *tt* and the *t* of **-tiō** give *ss*.

[6] *d* and *t* make *s*, as above, and the *i* is lengthened.

[7] Final *e* is changed to *i*.

[8] Final *o* is dropped. See p. 244, note 4.

[9] The final *o* changes to *i*. See p. 244, note 1.

LESSON LXXI

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES AND VERBS; COMPOSITION

EXAMPLES

410. I. ADJECTIVES

A. *Primary Derivatives*

a. The suffix **-āx,** added to roots or verb-stems, forms adjectives denoting *inclination* or *tendency:*

1. aud-**āx** (audeō, *dare;* root, aud-), *inclined to dare, daring, bold.*

b. The suffixes **-ilis,** and **-bilis,** added to roots or verb-stems, form adjectives denoting *capability in a passive sense:*

2. fac-**ilis** (faciō, *do;* root, fac-), *capable of being done, easy.*
3. ūt-**ilis** (ūtor, *use;* root, ūt-), *capable of being used, usable, useful.*

B. *Secondary Derivatives*

c. The suffix **-ōsus,** added to noun stems, forms adjectives denoting *fulness:*

4. frūctu-**ōsus** (frūctus, *fruit;* stem, frūctu-), *full of fruit, fruitful.*

d. The suffix **-ānus,** added to noun stems, forms adjectives meaning *belonging to:*

5. Rōm-**ānus** (Rōma, *Rome:* stem, Rōmā-[1]) *Roman.*

[1] The final *a* is dropped before the following *a* of **-ānus.**

411. II. VERBS

e. Verbs derived from nouns and adjectives are called Denominatives. They are mostly of the first conjugation:

6. cūrō, cūrāre (cūra, *care;* stem, cūrā-[1]), *care for.*
7. dōnō, dōnāre (dōnum, *gift;* stem, dōno-[1]), *give.*
8. laudō, laudāre (laus, *praise;* stem, laud-), *praise.*

f. Sometimes, however, they are of other conjugations:

9. cūstōdiō, cūstōdīre (cūstōs, *guard;* stem, cūstōd-), *guard.*

412. III. COMPOUNDS

g. Compounds are formed, not from roots or stems and suffixes, but from two or more words:

A. *Nouns*

10. agri-cola (ager, *field;* stem, agro-[2] and -cola, *cultivator;* from colō, used only in composition) *cultivator of a field, farmer.*
11. prīn-ceps (prīmus, *first;* stem, primo-[3] and -ceps, from capiō, *take*, used only in composition) *chief.*

B. *Adjectives*

12. dif-ficilis (dis-, adverbial prefix with negative force, and facilis,[5] *easy*), *difficult.*
13. in-ūtilis (in-, adverbial prefix with negative force, and ūtilis, *useful*), *useless.*

C. *Verbs*

14. ab-sum (ab-, *away*, and sum, *be*), *be away, be distant.*
15. conveniō (con-, *together*, and veniō, *come*) *come together.*[4]

[1] The final vowel of the stem is dropped before the following vowel.
[2] Final *o* becomes *i* before the consonant, cf. p. 244, note 1.
[3] Final *o* is dropped before the consonant, and *m* is changed to *n*.
[4] For the meanings of other similar prefixes used with verbs see 271, line 2, note.
[5] The *a* is changed to *i*.

413. EXERCISES

1. Form adjectives and give their meanings, using the following suffixes:

a. With **-āx,** adjectives from pugn- (pugnāre), *fight;* cap- (capiō), *take;* fer- (ferō), *bear;* loqu- (loquor), *speak.*

b. With **-ilis** from doc- (doceō), *teach,* frag- (frangō), *break;* with **-bilis** from amā- (amāre), *love.*

c. With **-ōsus** from perīculo-[1] (perīculum), *danger,* fōrmā-[1] (fōrma), *beauty;* oper- (opus, operis) *toil.*

d. With **-ānus** from oppido-[1] (oppidum), *town;* mont-, (mōns, montis), *mountain.*

2. Form compounds and give their meanings:

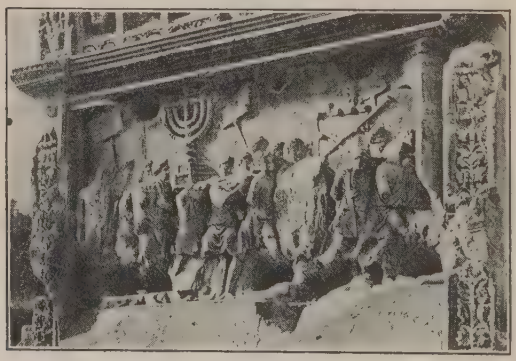
a. With signum, *standard,* and fer, from ferō, *bear.*[2]

b. With dis- and similis, *like:* with in- and crēdibilis, *credible.*

c. With re- and mittō, *send;* with con- and vocō, *call;* with ab- and dūcō, *lead.*

[1] See p. 247, note 1.

[2] Modify the stem as in **(10) agricola.**



Roman Triumph

Spoils from Jerusalem on the Arch of Titus

LATIN WORD-LISTS

414.

LESSONS II, III 1

1 altus
2 bellum
3 bonus
4 campus
5 cārus
6 clārus
7 cūra
8 dōnum
9 equus
10 flamma
11 fossa
12 lātus
13 locus
14 longus
15 magnus
16 malus
17 mīrus
18 mūrus
19 novus
20 parvus
21 pugna
22 silva
23 templum
24 terra
25 via

LESSONS IV, V 2

26 aedificō
27 dēleō
28 doceō
29 fābula
30 fortūna
31 habeō
32 laudō
33 līberō
34 lingua
35 moneō
36 nārrō
37 patria
38 poena
39 rēgīna
40 rīpa
41 servus
42 teneō
43 timeō
44 videō
45 vocō

LESSONS VI, VII 3

46 ager
47 agricola
48 Belgae
49 dō
50 est
51 in (*with abl.*)
52 incola
53 liber
54 magister
55 miser
56 mōnstrō
57 nauta
58 nōn
59 perfuga
60 pīrāta
61 poēta
62 puer
63 pulcher
64 respondeō
65 sacer
66 scrība
67 sunt
68 ubi
69 vir

ENGLISH WORD-LISTS

LESSONS II, III 1

1 high, deep
2 war
3 good
4 field
5 dear
6 famous
7 care
8 gift
9 horse
10 flame
11 ditch
12 wide
13 place
14 long
15 great
16 wicked
17 wonderful
18 wall
19 new
20 little
21 battle
22 forest
23 temple
24 land
25 way

LESSONS IV, V 2

26 build
27 destroy
28 teach
29 story
30 fortune
31 have
32 praise
33 set free
34 tongue, language
35 advise
36 tell
37 native country
38 punishment
39 queen
40 bank
41 slave
42 hold
43 fear
44 see
45 call

LESSONS VI, VII 3

46 field
47 farmer
48 Belgians
49 give
50 is (he, she, it, there)
51 in, on
52 inhabitant
53 book
54 master
55 wretched
56 point out
57 sailor
58 not
59 deserter
60 pirate
61 poet
62 boy
63 beautiful
64 reply
65 sacred
66 clerk
67 are (they, there)
68 where
69 man

LESSONS IX, X 4

70 ad
71 amīcus
72 barbarus
73 castra (*pl.*)
74 cum
75 cūr
76 cūstōdiō
77 dēfendō
78 dūcō
79 ē (ex)
80 et
81 Gallus
82 gerō
83 in (*with acc.*)
84 intellegō
85 lēgātus
86 līber
87 mittō
88 multus
89 mūniō
90 oppidum
91 propinquus
92 regō
93 reperiō
94 Rōmānus
95 sciō
96 scūtum
97 socius
98 veniō
99 vinciō

LESSONS XI, XII 5

100 adiuvō
101 audācia
102 augeō
103 auxilium
104 colōnus
105 cōpia
106 doleō
107 dominus
108 fīlius
109 frūmentum
110 fuga
111 gladius
112 impediō
113 iūdicō
114 moveō
115 nūntius
116 pecūnia
117 perfidia
118 praemium
119 prūdentia
120 relinquō
121 sapientia
122 scientia
123 studium
124 tēlum
125 terreō
126 tuba

LESSONS XIII, XV 6

127 aedificium
128 anteā
129 beneficium
130 capiō
131 cupiō
132 dīligentia
133 epistula
134 faciō
135 fīdus
136 fīnitimus
137 fodiō
138 fortasse
139 fugiō
140 grātus
141 iaciō
142 īnfēstus
143 inimīcus
144 īnsula
145 is
146 necessārius
147 saepe
148 semper
149 verbum

LESSONS XVI, XVII 7

150 ā (ab)
151 bona (*pl. noun*)
152 captīvus
153 careō
154 comes
155 culpa
156 cūstōs
157 egeō
158 eques
159 Gallia
160 interficiō
161 Italia
162 Italus
163 lēx
164 līberī (*pl.*)
165 mīles
166 perīculum
167 prīnceps
168 prīvō
169 prohibeō
170 prōvincia
171 pūniō
172 rēx
173 scrībō
174 servō
175 sevēritās
176 vāstō

LESSONS IX, X 4

70 to, towards
71 friend
72 barbarian
73 camp
74 with
75 why
76 guard
77 defend
78 lead
79 out of, from
80 and, both
81 Gaul
82 do, wage
83 into (*cf.* 51)
84 understand
85 ambassador, envoy, lieutenant
86 free
87 send
88 many
89 fortify
90 town
91 near
92 direct, rule
93 find
94 Roman
95 know
96 shield
97 ally
98 come
99 bind

LESSONS XI, XII 5

100 help
101 boldness
102 increase
103 aid
104 settler
105 supply, forces (*pl.*)
106 grieve
107 master
108 son
109 grain
110 flight
111 sword
112 hinder
113 judge
114 move, influence
115 messenger
116 money
117 treachery
118 reward
119 foresight
120 leave
121 wisdom
122 knowledge
123 zeal
124 weapon
125 terrify
126 trumpet

LESSONS XIII, XV 6

127 building
128 formerly
129 favor
130 take
131 desire
132 diligence
133 letter
134 do, make
135 faithful
136 neighboring
137 dig
138 perhaps
139 flee
140 pleasing
141 throw
142 hostile
143 unfriendly
144 island
145 this, that
146 necessary
147 often
148 always
149 word

LESSONS XVI, XVII 7

150 from, by
151 goods
152 captive
153 be without
154 companion
155 fault
156 guard
157 be in want
158 horseman
159 Gaul
160 kill
161 Italy
162 Italian
163 law
164 children
165 soldier
166 peril
167 leader
168 deprive
169 hinder
170 province
171 punish
172 king
173 write
174 save
175 severity
176 lay waste

LESSONS XVIII, XIX 8

177 amō
178 appellō (1)
179 cōnsul
180 dux
181 foedus
182 frāter
183 homō
184 imperātor
185 lītus
186 magnopere
187 mors
188 neque
189 numquam
190 pedes
191 pellō
192 populus
193 tribūnus
194 vinculum
195 virtūs

LESSONS XX, XXII 9

196 ante
197 apud
198 at
199 audeō
200 circum
201 contrā
202 dē
203 dēbeō
204 dēsinō
205 flūmen
206 hasta
207 incipiō
208 inter
209 iussum
210 lībertās
211 lūx
212 maneō
213 nāvigō
214 paucus
215 per
216 possum
217 post
218 praefectus
219 properō
220 prō
221 propter
222 sine
223 soleō
224 sub
225 subitō
226 tempestās
227 trāns

LESSONS XXIII, XXIV 10

228 Athēnae (*pl.*)
229 cīvis
230 collis
231 Corinthus
232 fīnis
233 gēns
234 hostis
235 iuvenis
236 mare
237 nāvis
238 pars
239 pōns
240 Rōma
241 sēdēs
242 stō
243 turris
244 tuus
245 urbs
246 vectīgal
247 vestis

LESSONS XXV, XXVI 11

248 aperiō
249 auxilia (*pl.*)
250 dēpellō
251 diū
252 labōrō
253 multitūdō
254 nē
255 noster
256 obses
257 pāx
258 perturbō
259 perveniō
260 petō
261 porta
262 posteā
263 superō
264 ut
265 vincō
266 vōx

LESSONS XVIII, XIX 8

177 love
178 call
179 consul
180 leader
181 treaty
182 brother
183 man
184 general
185 shore
186 greatly
187 death
188 neither, and not
189 never
190 foot-soldier
191 drive
192 people
193 tribune
194 chain
195 manliness virtue, valor,

LESSONS XX, XXII

196 before
197 near
198 but
199 dare
200 around
201 against
202 from, concerning
203 owe, ought
204 cease
205 river
206 spear
207 begin
208 between, among
209 order
210 liberty
211 light
212 remain
213 sail
214 few
215 through
216 be able
217 after
218 officer
219 hasten
220 for, in behalf of
221 on account of
222 without
223 be accustomed
224 under
225 suddenly
226 storm
227 across

LESSONS XXIII, XXIV 10

228 Athens
229 citizen
230 hill
231 Corinth
232 end, (*pl.*) territories
233 tribe
234 enemy
235 youth
236 sea
237 ship
238 part
239 bridge
240 Rome
241 seat
242 stand
243 tower
244 thy
245 city
246 tax
247 garment

LESSONS XXV, XXVI 11

248 open
249 re-enforcements
250 drive away
251 long
252 labor
253 multitude
254 that not, lest
255 our
256 hostage
257 peace
258 disturb
259 arrive
260 seek, ask
261 gate
262 afterwards
263 overcome
264 that
265 conquer
266 voice

LESSONS XXVII, XXIX 12

267 ācer
268 accūsō
269 adulēscēns
270 amīcitia
271 animus
272 audāx
273 celeritās
274 crūdēlis
275 dīves
276 equester
277 fēmina
278 fidēlis
279 fortis
280 intrā
281 magnitūdō
282 nātūra
283 nōmen
284 omnis
285 ōrdō
286 ostendō
287 parō
288 pater
289 pedester
290 premō
291 scelus
292 sed
293 signum
294 similis
295 vītō

LESSONS XXX–XXXII 13

296 āmittō
297 ars
298 autem
299 cohors
300 deinde
301 dictātor
302 dīmittō
303 ēdūcō
304 ego
305 ēloquentia
306 excēdō
307 expugnātiō
308 iam
309 impetrō
310 inveniō
311 legō
312 legiō
313 meus
314 recūsō
315 oppugnō
316 ōrātor
317 postulō
318 praetor
319 proelium
320 quī
321 quis
322 sē recipere
323 suī
324 suus
325 tū
326 tum
327 ūtilis
328 uxor
329 venia
330 vester
331 vīta

LESSONS XXXIII, XXXIV 14

332 accipiō
333 aedīlis
334 arbor
335 cīvitās
336 classis
337 cōnsilium
338 creō
339 crūdēlitās
340 cum
341 factum
342 gravis
343 hīc
344 īdem
345 ignāvus
346 ille
347 imāgō
348 ipse
349 iste
350 lūdus
351 nōtus
352 opprimō
353 ōrnō
354 populus
355 quaestor
356 quoque
357 societās
358 statim

LESSONS XXVII, XXIX 12

267 sharp, spirited
268 accuse
269 youth
270 friendship
271 mind, heart
272 bold
273 swiftness
274 cruel
275 rich
276 of cavalry
277 woman
278 faithful
279 brave
280 within
281 greatness
282 nature
283 name
284 every, all
285 rank
286 show
287 prepare
288 father
289 of infantry
290 press
291 crime
292 but
293 standard
294 like
295 avoid

LESSONS XXX–XXXII 13

296 lose
297 art
298 but, however
299 cohort
300 next
301 dictator
302 send away
303 lead out
304 I
305 eloquence
306 withdraw
307 storming
308 already
309 obtain
310 find
311 read
312 legion
313 my
314 refuse
315 attack
316 orator
317 demand
318 praetor
319 battle
320 who (*rel.*)
321 who (*interr.*)
322 betake oneself
323 of oneself
324 his
325 you
326 then
327 useful
328 wife
329 pardon
330 your
331 life

LESSONS XXXIII, XXXIV 14

332 receive
333 aedile
334 tree
335 state
336 fleet
337 plan
338 elect
339 cruelty
340 with
341 deed
342 heavy
343 this
344 same
345 cowardly
346 that
347 likeness
348 self
349 that (of yours)
350 game
351 known
352 crush
353 equip
354 people
355 quaestor
356 also
357 alliance
358 immediately

LESSONS XXXVI, XXXVII 15

359 absēns
360 adventus
361 aestus
362 aliquot
363 annus
364 brevis
365 cōnsulātus
366 cornū
367 dexter
368 diēs
369 discēdō
370 equitātus
371 exercitus
372 fīlia
373 hiems
374 hōra
375 impetus
376 incolō
377 intereā
378 iterum
379 lacus
380 manus
381 negō
382 pertineō
383 portus
384 posterus
385 prīmō
386 redigō
387 rēs
388 sustineō
389 tot
390 trēs

LESSONS XXXVIII–XL 16

391 arcessō
392 coniūrātus
393 cōnspiciō
394 cōnstituō
395 dēligō (3)
396 dicō
397 domus
398 eō
399 expellō
400 fēlīx
401 Īdūs (*pl.*)
402 imperō
403 incendō
404 iubeō
405 iungō
406 lacessō
407 lēgātus
408 nam
409 nēmō
410 opus
411 ōrō
412 persuādeō
413 perpetuus
414 possum
415 reliquus
416 rogō
417 rūs
418 sum
419 sūmō
420 superbus
421 trādūcō
422 vulnus

LESSONS XLI–XLIV 17

423 celer
424 cēterī
425 cognōscō
426 compleō
427 conveniō
428 cum (*conj.*)
429 explōrō
430 fortiter
431 interim
432 ita
433 iter
434 mercātor
435 mīlle
436 modus
437 mōns
438 multō
439 onerārius
440 passus
441 paulō
442 per
443 praeter
444 regiō
445 sapiēns
446 subveniō
447 tamen
448 tardus
449 vīcus

LESSONS XXXVI, XXXVII 15

359 absent
360 arrival
361 tide
362 several
363 year
364 short
365 consulship
366 horn, wing
367 right
368 day
369 depart
370 cavalry
371 army
372 daughter
373 winter
374 hour
375 attack
376 inhabit
377 meanwhile
378 again
379 lake
380 hand, band
381 deny, say no
382 reach
383 harbor
384 following
385 at first
386 bring
387 thing
388 withstand
389 so many
390 three

LESSONS XXXVIII–XL 16

391 summon
392 conspirator
393 see
394 determine
395 choose
396 say
397 house
398 go
399 expel
400 happy
401 Ides
402 command
403 set fire to
404 order
405 join
406 provoke
407 lieutenant, ambassador
408 for
409 no one
410 work
411 beg
412 persuade
413 perpetual
414 be able
415 remaining
416 ask
417 country
418 be
419 take
420 proud, haughty
421 lead across
422 wound

LESSONS XLI–XLIV 17

423 swift
424 the rest
425 learn
426 fill
427 assemble
428 when, since, although
429 examine
430 bravely
431 meantime
432 thus, so
433 road, march
434 merchant
435 thousand
436 manner
437 mountain
438 much
439 of burden
440 pace
441 little
442 through
443 except, beside
444 region
445 wise
446 help
447 nevertheless
448 slow
449 village

LESSONS XLV, XLVI 18

450 adsum
451 auctōritās
452 audācter
453 cōgō
454 crūdēliter
455 dīligēns
456 distribuō
457 enim
458 fēlīx
459 ingenium
460 interscindō
461 iūcundus
462 laetus
463 minus
464 nūntiō
465 perspiciō
466 praesidium
467 quot
468 satis
469 sententia
470 summus
471 trānsportō
472 turpiter
473 ventus

LESSONS XLVII, XLVIII 19

474 aestus
475 alius
476 alter
477 audiō
478 celeriter
479 coniciō
480 cōnstituō
481 continēns
482 explōrātor
483 facile
484 imprūdentia
485 neuter
486 nūllus
487 perturbō
488 perveniō
489 postquam
490 praemittō
491 quam prīmum
492 secundus
493 sōlus
494 spatium
495 statiō
496 tōtus
497 ūllus
498 ūnus
499 ut
500 uter
501 veniō
502 vertō
503 vincō

LESSONS L, LI 20

504 angustus
505 aquila
506 commeātus
507 convocō
508 dēsiliō
509 fruor
510 fungor
511 incitō
512 intrō
513 legō
514 moror
515 occupō
516 partior
517 perterreō
518 potior
519 prōcēdō
520 sequor
521 simul
522 stultus
523 tam
524 ūtor
525 vescor
526 vix

LESSONS LII–LIV 21

527 ācriter
528 agō
529 aliquis
530 appropinquō
531 circumsistō
532 dēdō
533 dō
534 ēgredior
535 frūctuōsus
536 gerō
537 grātia
538 indīcō
539 memoria
540 prōdō
541 quālis
542 quantus
543 quīdam
544 remaneō
545 salūs
546 sedeō
547 senātus
548 singulī
549 tālis
550 tantus
551 teneō
552 tergum

LESSONS XLV, XLVI 18

450 be present
451 authority
452 boldly
453 compel
454 cruelly
455 diligent
456 assign
457 for
458 happy
459 talent
460 destroy
461 pleasing
462 glad
463 less
464 announce
465 examine
466 guard
467 how many, as many
468 enough
469 opinion
470 highest
471 carry over
472 shamefully
475 wind

LESSONS XLVII, XLVIII 19

474 tide
475 other
476 the other (*of two*)
477 hear
478 quickly
479 hurl
480 determine, arrange
481 continent
482 scout
483 easily
484 thoughtlessness
485 neither
486 not any, no
487 confuse
488 arrive
489 after
490 send ahead
491 as soon as possible
492 favorable
493 alone
494 distance
495 picket
496 the whole
497 any
498 one
499 when
500 which (*of two*)
501 come
502 turn
503 conquer

LESSONS L, LI 20

504 narrow
505 eagle
506 provisions
507 call together
508 leap down
509 enjoy
510 perform
511 urge on
512 enter
513 read
514 delay
515 seize
516 divide
517 frighten greatly
518 get possession of
519 go forward
520 follow
521 at the same time, together
522 stupid
523 so
524 use
525 eat
526 with difficulty

LESSONS LII–LIV 21

527 fiercely
528 do
529 some one
530 approach
531 surround
532 surrender
533 give
534 go forth
535 fruitful
536 do, wage
537 favor
538 declare
539 memory
540 betray
541 of what sort
542 how large, as large
543 a certain one
544 remain
545 safety
546 sit
547 senate
548 one by one
549 such
550 so large
551 hold
552 back

LESSONS LV, LVII 22

553 aciēs
554 armō
555 dēsum
556 frangō
557 ignōscō
558 iniūria
559 inūtilis
560 lūna
561 maximus
562 necesse
563 Ōceanus
564 oportet
565 pāreō
566 plēnus
567 praesum
568 prōdūcō
569 quattuor
570 reficiō
571 subsidium
572 tandem

LESSONS LVIII, LIX 23

573 **aut**
574 caveō
575 centuriō
576 concilium
577 cōnor
578 cōnstituō
579 cūrō
580 duodecim
581 efficiō
582 explōrātor
583 nōlō
584 prō
585 proficīscor
586 pulvis
587 putō
588 quod
589 reditus
590 septimus
591 suspīciō

LESSONS LX, LXI 24

592 agmen
593 agō
594 armātus
595 cēlō
596 circiter
597 circumdō
598 collocō
599 complūrēs
600 dēpōnō
601 essedum
602 numerus
603 perficiō
604 pēs
605 profugiō
606 quamquam
607 subsequor
608 suspicor
609 terror
610 vehementer

LESSONS LXII, LXIII 25

611 aegrē
612 cadō
613 colloquor
614 committō
615 contineō
616 facultās
617 ferō
618 fīō
619 habitō
620 īnferō
621 intermittō
622 mālō
623 opportūnus
624 paucitās
625 perpetuus
626 praeda
627 redūcō
628 supplicium
629 timor
630 volō

LESSONS LV, LVII 22

553 line of battle
554 arm
555 be wanting
556 break
557 pardon
558 injury
559 useless
560 moon
561 greatest
562 necessary
563 Ocean
564 ought
565 obey
566 full
567 be over
568 lead forward
569 four
570 make over
571 aid; (*pl.*) reserves
572 at length

LESSONS LVIII, LIX 23

573 or, either
574 beware
575 centurion
576 council
577 attempt
578 place, determine
579 care for
580 twelve
581 cause
582 scout
583 be unwilling
584 before, in front of
585 set out
586 dust
587 think
588 because
589 return
590 seventh
591 suspicion

LESSONS LX, LXI 24

592 army on the march
593 lead, drive
594 armed
595 conceal
596 about
597 surround
598 place
599 very many
600 lay down
601 chariot
602 number
603 bring about
604 foot
605 flee
606 although
607 follow closely
608 suspect
609 terror
610 exceedingly

LESSONS LXII, LXIII 25

611 with difficulty
612 fall
613 talk with
614 bring together
615 hold fast
616 opportunity
617 bear
618 become
619 dwell
620 bring upon
621 let pass
622 prefer
623 favorable
624 fewness
625 perpetual
626 booty
627 bring back
628 punishment
629 fear
630 wish

LESSONS LXV, LXVI 26

631 accidō
632 animadvertō
633 arbitror
634 colloquium
635 cōnfīdō
636 etsī
637 exitus
638 īnfīrmus
639 ōrātiō
640 plūs
641 prōvideō
642 superus
643 trīgintā
644 vereor

LESSONS LXVII, LXVIII 27

645 adorior
646 addūcō
647 aurum
648 coepī
649 comprehendō
650 ēgredior
651 hortor
652 medius
653 mōs
654 occāsus
655 orior
656 redūcō
657 sōl
658 solvō
659 spēs
660 trecentī

Statue of Augustus

LESSONS LXV, LXVI 26

631 befall
632 perceive
633 think
634 conference
635 trust
636 although
637 outcome
638 weak
639 speech
640 more
641 foresee
642 above
643 thirty
644 fear

LESSONS LXVII, LXVIII 27

645 attack
646 lead to
647 gold
648 begin
649 seize
650 go out
651 exhort
652 middle
653 custom
654 going down
655 arise
656 reduce
657 sun
658 set free
659 hope
660 three hundred

Roman Horseman

APPENDIX

NOUNS

415. FIRST DECLENSION. Ā-STEMS

cūra, f., *care* (stem, cūrā-, base, cūr-)

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	cūra	cūrae
Gen.	cūrae	cūrārum
Dat.	cūrae	cūrīs
Acc.	cūram	cūrās
Abl.	cūrā	cūrīs

416. SECOND DECLENSION. O-STEMS

mūrus, m., *wall* (stem, mūro-, base, mūr-)	puer, m., *boy* (stem, puero-, base, puer-)

	Singular	
Nom.	mūrus	puer
Gen.	mūrī	puerī
Dat.	mūrō	puerō
Acc.	mūrum	puerum
Voc.	mūre	(same as nominative)
Abl.	mūrō	puerō

			Plural	
Nom.	mūrī			puerī
Gen.	mūrōrum			puerōrum
Dat.	mūrīs			puerīs
Acc.	mūrōs			puerōs
Abl.	mūrīs			puerīs

	ager, m., *field* (stem, agrō-, base, agr-)	vir, m., *man* (stem, viro-, base, vir-)	bellum, n., *war* (stem, bello-, base, bell-)
		Singular	
Nom.	ager	vir	bellum
Gen.	agrī	virī	bellī
Dat.	agrō	virō	bellō
Acc.	agrum	virum	bellum
Voc.		(same as the nominative)	
Abl.	agrō	virō	bellō
		Plural	
Nom.	agrī	virī	bella
Gen.	agrōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
Dat.	agrīs	virīs	bellīs
Acc.	agrōs	virōs	bella
Abl.	agrīs	virīs	bellīs

417. SECOND DECLENSION. IO-STEMS

	fīlius, m., *son* (stem, fīlio-, base, fīli-)		auxilium, n., *aid* (stem, auxilio-, base, auxili-)	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom.	fīlius	fīliī	auxilium	auxilia
Gen.	fīlī	fīliōrum	auxilī	auxiliōrum
Dat.	fīliō	fīliīs	auxiliō	auxiliīs
Acc.	fīlium	fīliōs	auxilium	auxilia
Voc.	fīlī		(same as nominative)	
Abl.	fīliō	fīliīs	auxiliō	auxiliīs

418. THIRD DECLENSION. MUTE-STEMS

	prīnceps, m., *chief*	eques, m., *horseman*	lēx, f., *law*	cūstōs, m., *guard*	caput, n., *head*
(stems	princip-	equit-	lēg-	cūstōd-	capit-)
			Singular		
Nom.	prīnceps	eques	lēx	cūstōs	caput
Gen.	prīncipis	equitis	lēgis	cūstōdis	capitis
Dat.	prīncipī	equitī	lēgī	cūstōdī	capitī
Acc.	prīncipem	equitem	lēgem	cūstōdem	caput
Abl.	prīncipe	equite	lēge	cūstōde	capite
			Plural		
Nom.	prīncipēs	equitēs	lēgēs	cūstōdēs	capita
Gen.	prīncipum	equitum	lēgum	cūstōdum	capitum
Dat.	prīncipibus	equitibus	lēgibus	cūstōdibus	capitibus
Acc.	prīncipēs	equitēs	lēgēs	cūstōdēs	capita
Abl.	prīncipibus	equitibus	lēgibus	cūstōdibus	capitibus

419.

THIRD DECLENSION. LIQUID- AND NASAL-STEMS

	cōnsul, m., *consul*	frāter, m., *brother*	homō, m., *man*	corpus, n., *body*	genus, n., *race*
(stems,	cōnsul-	frātr-	homin-	corpor-	gener-)
			Singular		
Nom.	cōnsul	frāter	homō	corpus	genus
Gen.	cōnsulis	frātris	hominis	corporis	generis
Dat.	cōnsulī	frātr	hominī	corporī	generī
Acc.	cōnsulem	frātrem	hominem	corpus	genus
Abl.	cōnsule	frātre	homine	corpore	genere

Plural

NOM.	cōnsulēs	frātrēs	hominēs	corpora	genera
GEN.	cōnsulum	frātrum	hominum	corporum	generum
DAT.	cōnsulibus	frātribus	hominibus	corporibus	generibus
ACC.	cōnsulēs	frātrēs	hominēs	corpora	genera
ABL.	cōnsulibus	frātribus	hominibus	corporibus	generibus

420. THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS

	turris, f., *tower* (stem, turri-)	cīvis, c., *citizen* (stem, cīvi-)	sēdēs, f., *seat* (stem, sēdi-)	pars, f., *part* (stem, parti-)
		Singular		
NOM.	turris	cīvis	sēdēs	pars
GEN.	turris	cīvis	sēdis	partis
DAT.	turrī	cīvī	sēdī	partī
ACC.	turrim (-em)	cīvem	sēdem	partem
ABL.	turrī (-e)	cīve	sēde	parte
		Plural		
NOM.	turrēs	cīvēs	sēdēs	partēs
GEN.	turrium	cīvium	sēdium (-um)	partium
DAT.	turribus	cīvibus	sēdibus	partibus
ACC.	turrīs (-ēs)	cīvēs (-īs)	sēdēs (-īs)	partēs (-īs)
ABL.	turribus	cīvibus	sēdibus	partibus

	mare, n., *sea* (stem, mari-)	vectīgal, n., *revenue* (stem, vectīgāli-)
	Singular	
NOM.	mare	vectīgal
GEN.	maris	vectīgālis
DAT.	marī	vectīgālī
ACC.	mare	vectīgal
ABL.	marī (-e)	vectīgālī

	Plural	
NOM.	**maria**	**vectīgālia**
GEN.	**marium (marum)**	**vectīgālium**
DAT.	**maribus**	**vectīgālibus**
ACC.	**maria**	**vectīgālia**
ABL.	**maribus**	**vectīgālibus**

421. FOURTH DECLENSION. U-STEMS

	impetus, m., *attack* (stem, impetu-)		cornū, n., *horn* (stem, cornu-)	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
NOM.	**impetus**	**impetūs**	**cornū**	**cornua**
GEN.	**impetūs**	**impetuum**	**cornūs**	**cornuum**
DAT.	**impetuī**	**impetibus**	**cornū**	**cornibus**
ACC.	**impetum**	**impetūs**	**cornū**	**cornua**
ABL.	**impetū**	**impetibus**	**cornū**	**cornibus**

422. FIFTH DECLENSION. Ē-STEMS

	diēs, m. and f., *day* (stem, diē-)		rēs, *thing* (stem, rē-)	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
NOM.	**diēs**	**diēs**	**rēs**	**rēs**
GEN.	**diēī**	**diērum**	**reī**	**rērum**
DAT.	**diēī**	**diēbūs**	**reī**	**rēbus**
ACC.	**diem**	**diēs**	**rem**	**rēs**
ABL.	**diē**	**diēbus**	**rē**	**rēbus**

423. IRREGULAR NOUNS

	deus, m., *god* (stem, deo-; base, de-)	domus, f., *house* (stem, domu-, domo-; base, dom-)
	Singular	*Singular*
NOM.	**deus**	**domus**
GEN.	**deī**	**domūs (loc. domī)**

Dat.	deō	domuī, domō
Acc.	deum	domum
Voc.	deus	(same as nominative)
Abl.	deō	domō, domū
	Plural	*Plural*
Nom.	deī, diī, dī	domūs
Gen.	deōrum, deum	domuum, domōrum
Dat.	deīs, diīs, dīs	domibus
Acc.	deōs	domōs, domūs
Abl.	deīs, diīs, dīs	domibus

424. ADJECTIVES

SECOND AND FIRST DECLENSION. Ā- AND O-STEMS

magnus, *great* (stem, magno-, magnā-, magno-; base, magn-)

	Singular		
	m.	*f.*	*n.*
Nom.	magnus	magna	magnum
Gen.	magnī	magnae	magnī
Dat.	magnō	magnae	magnō
Acc.	magnum	magnam	magnum
Voc.	magne	magna	magnum
Abl.	magnō	magnā	magnō
	Plural		
Nom.	magnī	magnae	magna
Gen.	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
Dat.	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
Acc.	magnōs	magnās	magna
Abl.	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs

miser, *wretched* (stem, misero-, miserā-, misero-; base, miser-)

Singular

	m.	*f.*	*n.*
Nom.	miser	misera	miserum
Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī
Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum
Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō

Plural

Nom.	miserī	miserae	misera
Gen.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
Dat.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Acc.	miserōs	miserās	misera
Abl.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

sacer, *sacred* (stem, sacro-, sacrā-, sacro-; base, sacr-)

Singular

	m.	*f.*	*n.*
Nom.	sacer	sacra	sacrum
Gen.	sacrī	sacrae	sacrī
Dat.	sacrō	sacrae	sacrō
Acc.	sacrum	saćram	sacrum
Abl.	sacrō	sacrā	sacrō

Plural

Nom.	sacrī	sacrae	sacra
Gen.	sacrōrum	sacrārum	sacrōrum
Dat.	sacrīs	sacrīs	sacrīs
Acc.	sacrōs	sacrās	sacra
Abl.	sacrīs	sacrīs	sacrīs

425. THIRD DECLENSION. THREE TERMINATIONS

ācer (stem, ācri-), *sharp*

	Singular		
	m.	*f.*	*n.*
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
	Plural		
NOM.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrēs (-īs)	ācrēs (-īs)	ācria
ABL.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

THIRD DECLENSION. TWO TERMINATIONS

fortis (stem, forti-), *brave*

	Singular	
	m., *f.*	*n.*
NOM.	fortis	forte
GEN.	fortis	fortis
DAT.	fortī	fortī
ACC.	fortem	forte
ABL.	fortī	fortī
	Plural	
NOM.	fortēs	fortia
GEN.	fortium	fortium
DAT.	fortibus	fortibus
ACC.	fortēs (-īs)	fortia
ABL.	fortibus	fortibus

THIRD DECLENSION. ONE TERMINATION

	praesēns[1] (stem, praesenti-), *present*		audāx (stem, audāci-), *bold*	
		Singular		
	m., f.	*n.*	*m., f.*	*n.*
Nom.	praesēns	praesēns	audāx	audāx
Gen.	praesentis	praesentis	audācis	audācis
Dat.	praesentī	praesentī	audācī	audācī
Acc.	praesentem	praesēns	audācem	audāx
Abl.	praesentī (-e)	praesentī (-e)	audācī	audācī
		Plural		
Nom.	praesentēs	praesentia	audācēs	audācia
Gen.	praesentium	praesentium	audācium	audācium
Dat.	praesentibus	praesentibus	audācibus	audācibus
Acc.	praesentēs (-īs)	praesentia	audācēs (-īs)	audācia
Abl.	praesentibus	praesentibus	audācibus	audācibus

426. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

	sōlus, *alone* (stem, sōlo-, sōlā-, sōlo-; base, sōl-)			uter, *which* of the two (stem, utro-, utrā-, utro-; base, utr-)		
			Singular			
	m.	*f.*	*n.*	*m.*	*f.*	*n.*
Nom.	sōlus	sōla	sōlum	uter	utra	utrum
Gen.	sōlīus	sōlīus	sōlīus	utrīus	utrīus	utrīus
Dat.	sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	utrī	utrī	utrī
Acc.	sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	utrum	utram	utrum
Abl.	sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	utrō	utrā	utrō

[1] Present participles, such as **laudāns, docēns**, etc., are declined like **praesēns**; the ablative singular is, however, regularly in **-e**.

			Plural			
NOM.	sōlī	sōlae	sōla	utrī	utrae	utra
GEN.	sōlōrum	sōlārum	sōlōrum	utrōrum	utrārum	utrōrum
DAT.	sōlīs	sōlīs	sōlīs	utrīs	utrīs	utrīs
ACC.	sōlōs	sōlās	sōla	utrōs	utrās	utra
ABL.	sōlīs	sōlīs	sōlīs	utrīs	utrīs	utrīs

alius, *other* (stem, alio-, aliā-, alio-; base, ali-)

	Singular		
	m.	*f.*	*n.*
NOM.	alius	alia	aliud
GEN.	alīus	alīus	alīus
DAT.	aliī	aliī	aliī
ACC.	alium	aliam	aliud
ABL.	aliō	aliā	aliō
	Plural		
NOM.	aliī	aliae	alia
GEN.	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
DAT.	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
ACC.	aliōs	aliās	alia
ABL.	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

alter, *the other* (stem, altero-, alterā-, altero-; base, alter-)

	Singular		
NOM.	alter	altera	alterum
GEN.	alterius	alterius	alterius
DAT.	alterī	alterī	alterī
ACC.	alterum	alteram	alterum
ABL.	alterō	alterā	alterō
	Plural		
NOM.	alterī	alterae	altera
GEN.	alterōrum	alterārum	alterōrum
DAT.	alterīs	alterīs	alterīs
ACC.	alterōs	alterās	altera
ABL.	alterīs	alterīs	alterīs

427. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. REGULAR

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātus	lātior	lātissimus
audāx	audācior	audācissimus
fidēlis	fidēlior	fidēlissimus

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN -ER

ācer	ācrior	ācerrimus
miser	miserior	miserrimus
pulcher	pulchrior	pulcherrimus
celer	celerior	celerrimus

428. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN -LIS

facilis	facilior	facillimus
similis	similior	simillimus

429. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. IRREGULAR

bonus	melior	optimus
malus	peior	pessimus
magnus	maior	maximus
parvus	minor	minimus
multus	plūs	plūrimus
exterus	exterior	extrēmus, extimus
īnferus	īnferior	īnfimus, īmus
posterus	posterior	postrēmus, postumus
superus	superior	suprēmus, summus
(prō, prae)	prior	prīmus
(prope)	propior	proximus
(ultrā)	ulterior	ultimus

430. ADJECTIVES. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

lātior, lātius, *broader* (st., lātiōr-)

	Singular		*Plural*	
	m., f.	*n.*	*m., f.*	*n.*
Nom.	lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
Gen.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
Dat.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
Acc.	lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs (-īs)	lātiōra
Abl.	lātiōre (-ī)	lātiōre (-ī)	lātiōribus	lātiōribus

431. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

lātē	lātius	lātissimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
aegrē	aegrius	aegerrimē
facile	facilius	facillimē
bene	melius	optimē
magnopere	maius	maximē
multum	plūs	plūrimum
parum	minus	minimē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē

432. NUMERALS

	Cardinals	Ordinals
1.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
2.	duo, -ae, -o	secundus, -a, -um [1]
3.	trēs, tria	tertius
4.	quattuor [2]	quārtus
5.	quīnque	quīntus
6.	sex	sextus

[1] The *ordinals* are all inflected in this way.

[2] The *cardinals* to which no terminations are appended are indeclinable.

7.	septem	septimus
8.	octō	octāvus
9.	novem	nōnus
10.	decem	decimus
11.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12.	duodecim	duodecimus
13.	tredecim	tertius decimus
14.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17.	septendecim	septimus decimus
18.	duodēvīgintī (*two from twenty*)	duodēvīcēsimus
19.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
20.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21.	vīgintī ūnus [1]	vīcēsimus prīmus [1]
	ūnus et vīgintī [1]	ūnus et vīcēsimus [1]
30.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100.	centum	centēsimus
101.	centum ūnus	centēsimus prīmus [2]
	centum et ūnus [2]	centēsimus et prīmus
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300.	trecentī, -ae, -a [3]	trecentēsimus
400.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus
500.	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus

[1] The following numerals to 30 are formed in the same way.

[2] The following numerals to 200 are formed in the same general way.

[3] The hundreds up to 1000 are declined in this way.

600.	sescentī	sescentēsimus
700.	septingentī	septingentēsimus
800.	octingentī	octingentēsimus
900.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus
1000.	mīlle; pl. mīlia, -ium	mīllēsimus

DECLENSION OF NUMERALS

ūnus (like the singular of **sōlus, 426**).

	m.	*f.*	*n.*	*m., f.*	*n.*	
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	mīlia[1]
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	mīlium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mīlibus
Acc.	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	trēs (trīs)	tria	mīlia
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mīlibus

PRONOUNS

433. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	Singular		
	First	Second	Reflexive
Nom.	ego, *I*	tū, *thou*	
Gen.	meī	tuī	suī, *of himself, herself, itself*
Dat.	mihi	tibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	tē	sē
Abl.	mē	tē	sē
	Plural		
Nom.	nōs	vōs	
Gen.	nostrum, nostrī	vestrum, vestrī	suī
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
Acc.	nōs	vōs	sē
Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē

[1] Indeclinable in the singular.

434. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

m.	*f.*	*n.*	
meus	mea	meum, *my*	} etc., like magnus
tuus	tua	tuum, *thy*	
suus	sua	suum, *his, hers, its*	
noster	nostra	nostrum, *our*	} etc. like sacer
vester	vestra	vestrum, *your*	

435. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

Singular

	m.	*f.*	*n.*	*m.*	*f.*	*n.*
Nom.	hīc, *this*	haec	hōc	ille,[1] *that*	illa	illud
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	illīus	illīus	illīus
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	illum	illam	illud
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

Plural

Nom.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

Singular

	m.	*f.*	*n.*	*m.*	*f.*	*n.*
Nom.	ipse,[2] *self*	ipsa	ipsum	is, *that*	ea	id
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	eius	eius	eius
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	eī	eī	eī
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	eum	eam	id
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	eō	eā	eō

[1] Like **ille** is declined **iste**, *that of yours.*

[2] **Ipse** is often called an Intensive pronoun.

Plural

NOM.	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa	iī (eī)	eae	ea
GEN.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)
ACC.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)

Singular

	m.	*f.*	*n.*
NOM.	īdem, *the same*	eadem	idem
GEN.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
DAT.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
ACC.	eundem	eandem	idem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

Plural

NOM.	iīdem (eīdem)	eaedem	eadem
GEN.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.	iīsdem (eīsdem)	iīsdem (eīsdem)	iīsdem (eīsdem)
ACC.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
ABL.	iīsdem (eīsdem)	iīsdem (eīsdem)	iīsdem (eīsdem)

436. RELATIVE PRONOUN

Singular

	m.	*f.*	*n.*
NOM.	quī, *who*	quae	quod
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius
DAT.	cui	cui	cui
ACC.	quem	quam	quod
ABL.	quō	quā	quō

Plural

NOM.	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus

437.

INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE PRONOUN

Interrogative, *who, what* — Indefinite, *some, any.*

	Substantive		Adjective		
		Singular			
	m. and *f.*	*n.*	*m.*	*f.*	*n.*
Nom.	quis	quid	quī	quae (qua)	quod
Gen.	cuius *throughout*		cuius *throughout*		
Dat.	cui *throughout*		cui *throughout*		
Acc.	quem	quid	quem	quam	quod
Abl.	quō *throughout*		quō	quā	quō

Plural of both

Nom.	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus

438. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

	Singular		
	m.	*f.*	*n.*
Nom.	aliquis, *some one,*	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
Gen.	alicuius *any one*	alicuius	alicuius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō
	Plural		
Nom.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

		Singular	
Nom.	quīdam, *a certain one*	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam
		Plural	
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

439. VERBS

sum, esse, fuī, *be*

INDICATIVE		*SUBJUNCTIVE*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
	Present		
1. sum	sumus	sim	sīmus
2. es	estis	sīs	sītis
3. est	sunt	sit	sint
	Imperfect		
1. eram	erāmus	essem	essēmus
2. erās	erātis	essēs	essētis
3. erat	erant	esset	essent
	Future		
1. erō	erimus		
2. eris	eritis		
3. erit	erunt		

PERFECT

1. fuī	fuimus	fuerim	fuerimus
2. fuistī	fuistis	fueris	fueritis
3. fuit	fuērunt (fuēre)	fuerit	fuerint

PLUPERFECT

1. fueram	fuerāmus	fuissem	fuissēmus
2. fuerās	fuerātis	fuissēs	fuissētis
3. fuerat	fuerant	fuisset	fuissent

FUTURE PERFECT

1. fuerō	fuerimus
2. fueris	fueritis
3. fuerit	fuerint

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	2. es	este
FUT.	2. estō[1]	estōte[1]
	3. estō[1]	suntō[1]

INFINITIVES

PRES. esse
PERF. fuisse
FUT. futūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

FUT. futūrus

FIRST CONJUGATION. Ā-STEMS

440. laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum, *praise*

INDICATIVE		*SUBJUNCTIVE*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*

ACTIVE

PRESENT

1. laudō	laudāmus	laudem	laudēmus
2. laudās	laudātis	laudēs	laudētis
3. laudat	laudant	laudet	laudent

[1] Given here for completeness. No forms of the so-called future imperative are used in this book.

Imperfect

1. laudābam	laudābāmus	laudārem	laudārēmus
2. laudābās	laudābātis	laudārēs	laudārētis
3. laudābat	laudābant	laudāret	laudārent

Future

1. laudāḅō	laudābimus
2. laudābis	laudābitis
3. laudābit	laudābunt

Perfect

1. laudāvī	laudāvimus	laudāverim	laudāverimus
2. laudāvistī	laudāvistis	laudāveris	laudāveritis
3. laudāvit	laudāvērunt (-ēre)	laudāverit	laudāverint

Pluperfect

1. laudāveram	laudāverāmus	laudāvissem	laudāvissēmus
2. laudāverās	laudāverātis	laudāvissēs	laudāvissētis
3. laudāverat	laudāverant	laudāvisset	laudāvissent

Future Perfect

1. laudāverō	laudāverimus
2. laudāveris	laudāveritis
3. laudāverit	laudāverint

PASSIVE

Present

1. laudor	laudāmur	lauder	laudēmur
2. laudāris (-āre)	laudāminī	laudēris (-ēre)	laudēminī
3. laudātur	laudantur	laudētur	laudentur

Imperfect

1. laudābar	laudābāmur	laudārer	laudārēmur
2. laudābāris (-ābāre)	laudābāminī	laudārēris (-ārēre)	laudārēminī
3. laudābātur	laudābantur	laudārētur	laudārentur

Future

1.	laudābor	laudābimur
2.	laudāberis (-ābere)	laudābiminī
3.	laudābitur	laudābuntur

Perfect

1.	laudātus[1] sum	laudātī sumus	laudātus sim	laudātī sīmus
2.	laudātus es	laudātī estis	laudātus sīs	laudātī sītis
3.	laudātus est	laudātī sunt	laudātus sit	laudātī sint

Pluperfect

1.	laudātus eram	laudātī erāmus	laudātus essem	laudātī essēmus
2.	laudātus erās	laudātī erātis	laudātus essēs	laudātī essētis
3.	laudātus erat	laudātī erant	laudātus esset	laudātī essent

Future Perfect

1.	laudātus erō	laudātī erimus
2.	laudātus eris	laudātī eritis
3.	laudātus erit	laudātī erunt

IMPERATIVE

		Active		Passive	
		Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Pres.	2.	laudā	laudāte	laudāre	laudāminī
Fut.	2.	laudātō[2]	laudātōte[2]	laudātor[2]	
	3.	laudātō	laudantō	laudātor	laudantor

INFINITIVE

	Active	Passive
Pres.	laudāre	laudārī
Perf.	laudāvisse	laudātus esse
Fut.	laudātūrus esse	laudātum īrī

[1] The participle agrees in gender with the subject.

[2] See footnote on page 283.

PARTICIPLE

	Active	Passive
Pres.	laudāns	
Perf.		laudātus
Fut.	laudātūrus	laudandus

GERUND	*SUPINE*
Gen. laudandī	
Dat. laudandō	
Acc. laudandum	laudātum
Abl. laudandō	laudātū

441. SECOND CONJUGATION. Ē-STEMS

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, *teach*

INDICATIVE		*SUBJUNCTIVE*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*

ACTIVE

Present

1. doceō	docēmus	doceam	doceāmus
2. docēs	docētis	doceās	doceātis
3. docet	docent	doceat	doceant

Imperfect

1. docēbam	docēbāmus	docērem	docērēmus
2. docēbās	docēbātis	docērēs	docērētis
3. docēbat	docēbant	docēret	docērent

Future

1. docēbō	docēbimus
2. docēbis	docēbitis
3. docēbit	docēbunt

Perfect

1. docuī	docuimus	docuerim	docuerimus
2. docuistī	docuistis	docueris	docueritis
3. docuit	docuērunt (-ēre)	docuerit	docuerint

Pluperfect

1. docueram	docuerāmus	docuissem	docuissēmus
2. docuerās	docuerātis	docuissēs	docuissētis
3. docuerat	docuerant	docuisset	docuissent

Future Perfect

1. docuerō	docuerimus
2. docueris	docueritis
3. docuerit	docuerint

PASSIVE

Present

1. doceor	docēmur	docear	doceāmur
2. docēris (-ēre)	docēminī	doceāris (-eāre)	doceāminī
3. docētur	docentur	doceātur	doceantur

Imperfect

1. docēbar	docēbāmur	docērer	docērēmur
2. docēbāris (-ēbāre)	docēbāminī	docērēris (-ērēre)	docērēminī
3. docēbātur	docēbantur	docērētur	docērentur

Future

1. docēbor	docēbimur
2. docēberis (-ēbere)	docēbiminī
3. docēbitur	docēbuntur

PERFECT

1. doctus sum	doctī sumus	doctus sim	doctī sīmus
2. doctus es	doctī estis	doctus sīs	doctī sītis
3. doctus est	doctī sunt	doctus sit	doctī sint

PLUPERFECT

1. doctus eram	doctī erāmus	doctus essem	doctī essēmus
2. doctus erās	doctī erātis	doctus essēs	doctī essētis
3. doctus erat	doctī erant	doctus esset	doctī essent

FUTURE PERFECT

1. doctus erō doctī erimus
2. doctus eris doctī eritis
3. doctus erit doctī erunt

IMPERATIVE

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
PRES.	2. docē	docēte	docēre	docēminī
FUT.	2. docētō	docētōte	docētor	
	3. docētō	docentō	docētor	docentor

INFINITIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES. docēre	docērī
PERF. docuisse	doctus esse
FUT. doctūrus esse	doctum īrī

PARTICIPLE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES. docēns	
PERF.	doctus
FUT. doctūrus	docendus

GERUND	*SUPINE*
GEN. docendī	
DAT. docendō	
ACC. docendum	doctum
ABL. docendō	doctū

THIRD CONJUGATION. E-STEMS. VERBS IN -Ō.

442. regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, *rule.*

INDICATIVE		*SUBJUNCTIVE*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
	ACTIVE		
	PRESENT		
1. regō	regimus	regam	regāmus
2. regis	regitis	regās	regātis
3. regit	regunt	regat	regant
	IMPERFECT		
1. regēbam	regēbāmus	regerem	regerēmus
2. regēbās	regēbātis	regerēs	regerētis
3. regēbat	regēbant	regeret	regerent
	FUTURE		
1. regam	regēmus		
2. regēs	regētis		
3. reget	regent		
	PERFECT		
1. rēxī	rēximus	rēxerim	rēxerimus
2. rēxistī	rēxistis	rēxeris	rēxeritis
3. rēxit	rēxērunt (-ēre)	rēxerit	rēxerint
	PLUPERFECT		
1. rēxeram	rēxerāmus	rēxissem	rēxissēmus
2. rēxerās	rēxerātis	rēxissēs	rēxissētis
3. rēxerat	rēxerant	rēxisset	rēxissent
	FUTURE PERFECT		
1. rēxerō	rēxerimus		
2. rēxeris	rēxeritis		
3. rēxerit	rēxerint		

PASSIVE

Present

1.	regor	regimur	regār	regāmur
2.	regeris (-ere)	regiminī	regāris (-āre)	regāminī
3.	regitur	reguntur	regātur	regantur

Imperfect

1.	regēbar	regēbāmur	regerer	regerēmur
2.	regēbāris (-ēbāre)	regēbāminī	regerēris (-erēre)	regerēminī
3.	regēbātur	regēbantur	regerētur	regerentur

Future

1.	regar	regēmur
2.	regēris (-ēre)	regēminī
3.	regētur	regentur

Perfect

1.	rēctus sum	rēctī sumus	rēctus sim	rēctī sīmus
2.	rēctus es	rēctī estis	rēctus sīs	rēctī sītis
3.	rēctus est	rēctī sunt	rēctus sit	rēctī sint

Pluperfect

1.	rēctus eram	rēctī erāmus	rēctus essem	rēctī essēmus
2.	rēctus erās	rēctī erātis	rēctus essēs	rēctī essētis
3.	rēctus erat	rēctī erant	rēctus esset	rēctī essent

Future Perfect

1.	rēctus erō	rēctī erimus
2.	rēctus eris	rēctī eritis
3.	rēctus erit	rēctī erunt

IMPERATIVE

	Active		Passive	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Pres.	2. rege	regite	regere	regiminī
Fut.	2. regitō	regitōte	regitor	
	3. regitō	reguntō	regitor	reguntor

INFINITIVE

	Active	Passive
Pres.	regere	regī
Perf.	rēxisse	rēctus esse
Fut.	rēctūrus esse	rēctum īrī

PARTICIPLE

	Active	Passive
Pres.	regēns	
Perf.		rēctus
Fut.	rēctūrus	regendus

	GERUND	*SUPINE*
Gen.	regendī	
Dat.	regendō	
Acc.	regendum	rēctum
Abl.	regendō	rēctū

THIRD CONJUGATION. E-STEMS. VERBS IN -IŌ.

443. capiō, capere, cēpi, captum, *take*

INDICATIVE		*SUBJUNCTIVE*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*

ACTIVE

Present

1. capiō	capimus	capiam	capiāmus
2. capis	capitis	capiās	capiātis
3. capit	capiunt	capiat	capiant

Imperfect

1. capiēbam	capiēbāmus	caperem	caperēmus
2. capiēbās	capiēbātis	caperēs	caperētis
3. capiēbat	capiēbant	caperet	caperent

Future

1. capiam	capiēmus
2. capiēs	capiētis
3. capiet	capient

Perfect

1. cēpī	cēpimus	cēperim	cēperimus
2. cēpistī	cēpistis	cēperis	cēperitis
3. cēpit	cēpērunt (-ēre)	cēperit	cēperint

Pluperfect

1. cēperam	cēperāmus	cēpissem	cēpissēmus
2. cēperās	cēperātis	cēpissēs	cēpissētis
3. cēperat	cēperant	cēpisset	cēpissent

Future Perfect

1. cēperō	cēperimus
2. cēperis	cēperitis
3. cēperit	cēperint

PASSIVE

Present

1. capior	capimur	capiar	capiāmur
2. caperis (-ere)	capiminī	capiāris (-iāre)	capiāminī
3. capitur	capiuntur	capiātur	capiantur

Imperfect

1. capiēbar	capiēbāmur	caperer	caperēmur
2. capiēbāris (-iēbāre)	capiēbāminī	caperēris (-erēre)	caperēminī
3. capiēbātur	capiēbantur	caperētur	caperentur

FUTURE

1. capiar	capiēmur
2. capiēris (-iēre)	capiēminī
3. capiētur	capientur

PERFECT

1. captus sum	captī sumus	captus sim	captī sīmus
2. captus es	captī estis	captus sīs	captī sītis
3. captus est	captī sunt	captus sit	captī sint

PLUPERFECT

1. captus eram	captī erāmus	captus essem	captī essēmus
2. captus erās	captī erātis	captus essēs	capti essētis
3. captus erat	captī erant	captus esset	captī essent

FUTURE PERFECT

1. captus erō	captī erimus
2. captus eris	captī eritis
3. captus erit	captī erunt

IMPERATIVE

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
PRES.	2.	cape	capite	capere	capiminī
FUT.	2.	capitō	capitōte	capitor	
	3.	capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES.	capere	capī
PERF.	cēpisse	captus esse
FUT.	captūrus esse	captum īrī

PARTICIPLE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES.	capiēns	
PERF.		captus
FUT.	captūrus	capiendus

	GERUND	*SUPINE*
GEN.	capiendī	
DAT.	capiendō	
ACC.	capiendum	captum
ABL.	capiendō	captū

444. FOURTH CONJUGATION. Ī-STEMS

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītum, *fortify*

INDICATIVE		*SUBJUNCTIVE*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*

ACTIVE

PRESENT

1.	mūniō	mūnīmus	mūniam	mūniāmus
2.	mūnīs	mūnītis	mūniās	mūniātis
3.	mūnit	mūniunt	mūniat	mūniant

IMPERFECT

1.	mūniēbam	mūniēbāmus	mūnīrem	mūnīrēmus
2.	mūniēbās	mūniēbātis	mūnīrēs	mūnīrētis
3.	mūniēbat	mūniēbant	mūnīret	mūnīrent

FUTURE

1.	mūniam	mūniēmus
2.	mūniēs	mūniētis
3.	mūniet	mūnient

PERFECT

1.	mūnīvī	mūnīvimus	mūnīverim	mūnīverimus
2.	mūnīvistī	mūnīvistis	mūnīveris	mūnīveritis
3.	mūnīvit	mūnīvērunt (-ēre)	mūnīverit	mūnīverint

Pluperfect

1.	mūnīveram	mūnīverāmus	mūnīvissem	mūnīvissēmus
2.	mūnīverās	mūnīverātis	mūnīvissēs	mūnīvissētis
3.	mūnīverat	mūnīverant	mūnīvisset	mūnīvissent

Future Perfect

1.	mūnīverō	mūnīverimus
2.	mūnīveris	mūnīveritis
3.	mūnīverit	mūnīverint

PASSIVE

Present

1.	mūnior	mūnīmur	mūniar	mūniāmur
2.	mūnīris (-īre)	mūnīminī	mūniāris (-iāre)	mūniāminī
3.	mūnītur	mūniuntur	mūniātur	mūniantur

Imperfect

1.	mūniēbar	mūniēbāmur	mūnīrer	mūnīrēmur
2.	mūniēbāris (-iēbāre)	mūniēbāminī	mūnīrēris (-īrēre)	mūnīrēminī
3.	mūniēbātur	mūniēbantur	mūnīrētur	mūnīrentur

Future

1.	mūniar	mūniēmur
2.	mūniēris (-ēre)	mūniēminī
3.	mūniētur	mūnientur

Perfect

1.	mūnītus sum	mūnītī sumus	mūnītus sim	mūnītī sīmus
2.	mūnītus es	mūnītī estis	mūnītus sīs	mūnītī sītis
3.	mūnītus est	mūnītī sunt	mūnītus sit	mūnītī sint

Pluperfect

1.	mūnītus eram	mūnītī erāmus	mūnītus essem	mūnītī essēmus
2.	mūnītus erās	mūnītī erātis	mūnītus essēs	mūnītī essētis
3.	mūnītus erat	mūnītī erant	mūnītus esset	mūnītī essent

Future Perfect

1. mūnītus erō mūnītī erimus
2. mūnītus eris mūnītī eritis
3. mūnītus erit mūnītī erunt

IMPERATIVE

		Active		Passive	
		Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Pres.	2.	mūnī	mūnīte	mūnīre	mūnīminī
Fut.	2.	mūnītō	mūnītōte	mūnītor	
	3.	mūnītō	mūniuntō	mūnītor	mūniuntor

INFINITIVE

	Active	Passive
Pres.	mūnīre	mūnīrī
Perf.	mūnīvisse	mūnītus esse
Fut.	mūnītūrus esse	mūnītum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	mūniēns	
Perf.		mūnītus
Fut.	mūnītūrus	mūniendus

	GERUND	*SUPINE*
Gen.	mūniendī	
Dat.	mūniendō	
Acc.	mūniendum	mūnītum
Abl.	mūniendō	mūnītū

445. SYNOPSES OF REGULAR VERBS, THIRD PERSON SINGULAR

Conjugations	I	II	III		IV
		ACTIVE			
		INDICATIVE			
Pres.	laudat	docet	regit	capit	mūnit
Imperf.	laudābat	docēbat	regēbat	capiēbat	mūniēbat
Fut.	laudābit	docēbit	reget	capiet	mūniet
Perf.	laudāvit	docuit	rēxit	cēpit	mūnīvit
Pluperf.	laudāverat	docuerat	rēxerat	cēperat	mūnīverat
Fut. Perf.	laudāverit	docuerit	rēxerit	cēperit	mūnīverit
		SUBJUNCTIVE			
Pres.	laudet	doceat	regat	capiat	mūniat
Imperf.	laudāret	docēret	regeret	caperet	mūnīret
Perf.	laudāverit	docuerit	rēxerit	cēperit	mūnīverit
Pluperf.	laudāvisset	docuisset	rēxisset	cēpisset	mūnīvisset
		IMPERATIVE			
Pres.	laudā [1]	docē [1]	rege [1]	cape [1]	mūnī [1]
Fut.	laudātō	docētō	regitō	capitō	mūnītō
		INFINITIVE			
Pres.	laudāre	docēre	regere	capere	mūnīre
Perf.	laudāvisse	docuisse	rēxisse	cēpisse	mūnīvisse
Fut.	laudātūrus esse	doctūrus esse	rēctūrus esse	captūrus esse	mūnītūrus esse
		PARTICIPLE			
Pres.	laudāns	docēns	regēns	capiēns	mūniēns
Fut.	laudātūrus	doctūrus	rēctūrus	captūrus	mūnītūrus

[1] Second Person

GERUND

GEN.	laudandī	docendī	regendī	capiendī	mūniendī
DAT.	laudandō	docendō	regendō	capiendō	mūniendō
ACC.	laudandum	docendum	regendum	capiendum	mūniendum
ABL.	laudandō	docendō	regendō	capiendō	mūniendō

SUPINE

ACC.	laudātum	doctum	rēctum	captum	mūnītum
ABL.	laudātū	doctū	rēctū	captū	mūnītū

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRES.				
laudātur	docētur	regitur	capitur	mūnītur
IMPERF.				
laudābātur	docēbātur	regēbātur	capiēbātur	mūniēbātur
FUT.				
laudābitur	docēbitur	regētur	capiētur	muniētur
PERF.				
laudātus est	doctus est	rēctus est	captus est	mūnītus est
PLUPERF.				
laudātus erat	doctus erat	rēctus erat	captus erat	mūnītus erat
FUT. PERF.				
laudātus erit	doctus erit	rēctus erit	captus erit	mūnītus erit

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.				
laudētur	doceātur	regātur	capiātur	mūniātur
IMPERF.				
laudārētur	docērētur	regerētur	caperētur	mūnīrētur
PERF.				
laudātus sit	doctus sit	rēctus sit	captus sit	mūnītus sit
PLUPERF.				
laudātus esset	doctus esset	rēctus esset	captus esset	mūnītus esset

IMPERATIVE

PRES.				
laudāre [1]	docēre [1]	regere [1]	capere [1]	mūnīre [1]
FUT.				
laudātor	docētor	regitor	capitor	mūnītor

INFINITIVE

PERF.				
laudātus esse	doctus esse	rēctus esse	captus esse	mūnītus esse
FUT.				
laudātum īrī	doctum īrī	rēctum īrī	captum īrī	mūnītum īrī

PARTICIPLE

PERF.				
laudātus	doctus	rēctus	captus	mūnītus
FUT.				
laudandus	docendus	regendus	capiendus	mūniendus

446. FIRST PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

PRES.	laudātūrus sum,[2] *I am about to praise*		
IMPERF.	laudātūrus eram	PLUPERF.	laudātūrus fueram
FUT.	laudātūrus erō	FUT. PERF.	laudātūrus fuerō
PERF.	laudātūrus fuī		

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	laudātūrus sim	PERF.	laudātūrus fuerim
IMPERF.	laudātūrus essem	PLUPERF.	laudātūrus fuissem

INFINITIVE

PRES.	laudātūrus esse	PERF.	laudātūrus fuisse

[1] Second Person.

[2] So also: doctūrus sum, *I am about to teach;* rēctūrus sum, *I am about to rule;* captūrus sum, *I am about to take;* mūnītūrus sum, *I am about to fortify.*

447. SECOND PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

PRES.	laudandus sum,[1] *I must be praised* (*am to be praised*)		
IMPERF.	laudandus eram	PLUPERF.	laudandus fueram
FUT.	laudandus erō	FUT. PERF.	laudandus fuerō
PERF.	laudandus fuī		

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	laudandus sim	PERF.	laudandus fuerim
IMPERF.	laudandus essem	PLUPERF.	laudandus fuissem

INFINITIVE

PRES.	laudandus esse	PERF.	laudandus fuisse

448. DEPONENT VERBS. SYNOPSES IN THE THIRD PERSON SINGULAR

CONJ. I. mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum, *admire*
II. vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear*
III. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*
IV. partior, partīrī, partītus sum, *divide*

	I	II	III	IV
	INDICATIVE			
PRES.	mīrātur	verētur	sequitur	partītur
IMPERF.	mīrābātur	verēbātur	sequēbātur	partiēbatur
FUT.	mīrābitur	verēbitur	sequētur	partiētur
PERF.	mīrātus est	veritus est	secūtus est	partītus est
PLUPERF.	mīrātus erat	veritus erat	secūtus erat	partītus erat
FUT. PERF.	mīrātus erit	veritus erit	secūtus erit	partītus erit

[1] So also: docendus sum, *I must be taught;* regendus sum, *I must be ruled;* capiendus sum, *I must be caught;* mūniendus sum, *I must be protected.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	mīrētur	vereātur	sequātur	partiātur
IMPERF.	mīrārētur	verērētur	sequerētur	partīrētur
PERF.	mīrātus sit	veritus sit	secūtus sit	partītus sit
PLUPERF.	mīrātus esset	veritus esset	secūtus esset	partītus esset

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	mīrāre [1]	verēre [1]	sequere [1]	partīre [1]
FUT.	mirātor	verētor	sequitor	partītor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	mīrārī	verērī	sequī	partīrī
PERF.	mīrātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse
FUT.	mīrātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	partītūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

PRES. ACT.	mīrāns	verēns	sequēns	partiēns
FUT. ACT.	mīrātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	partītūrus
PERF. PASS.	mīrātus	veritus	secūtus	partītus
FUT. PASS.	mīrandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus

GERUND

mīrandī, -ō,-um,-ō.	verendī, -ō,-um,-ō.	sequendī, -ō,-um,-ō.	partiendī, -ō,-um,-ō.

SUPINE

mīrātum,-ū	veritum,-ū	secūtum,-ū	partītum,-ū

[1] Second person.

449. IRREGULAR VERBS

possum, posse, potuī, *be able*

	INDICATIVE		*SUBJUNCTIVE*	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
		PRESENT		
1.	possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
2.	potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
3.	potest	possunt	possit	possint
		IMPERFECT		
1.	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
2.	poterās	poterātis	possēs	possētis
3.	poterat	poterant	posset	possent
		FUTURE		
1.	poterō	poterimus		
2.	poteris	poteritis		
3.	poterit	poterunt		

PERFECT

potuī, -istī, etc. potuerim, -eris, etc.

PLUPERFECT

potueram, -erās, etc. potuissem, -issēs, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

potuerō, -eris, etc.

INFINITIVE	*PARTICIPLE*
PRES. posse	potēns, -entis (only as adj.)
PERF. potuisse	

450. volō, velle, voluī, *wish*

INDICATIVE		*SUBJUNCTIVE*	
		PRESENT	
1. volō	volumus	velim	velīmus
2. vīs	vultis	velīs	velītis
3 vult	volunt	velit	velint
		IMPERFECT	
volēbam, -bās, etc.		vellem	vellēmus
		vellēs	vellētis
		vellet	vellent
		FUTURE	
volam, volēs, etc.			
		PERFECT	
voluī, -istī, etc.		voluerim, -eris, etc.	
		PLUPERFECT	
volueram, -erās, etc.		voluissem, -issēs, etc.	
		FUTURE PERFECT	
voluerō, -eris, etc.			

INFINITIVE	*PARTICIPLE*
PRES. velle	volēns, -entis
PERF. voluisse	

451. nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling*

INDICATIVE		*SUBJUNCTIVE*	
		PRESENT	
1. nōlō	nōlumus	nōlim	nōlīmus
2. nōn vīs	nōn vultis	nōlīs	nōlītis
3. nōn vult	nōlunt	nōlit	nōlint

IMPERFECT

nōlēbam, -bās, etc.	nōllem	nōllēmus
	nōllēs	nōllētis
	nōllet	nōllent

FUTURE

nōlam, nōlēs, etc.

PERFECT

nōluī, -istī, etc. nōluerim, -eris, etc.

PLUPERFECT

nōlueram, -erās, etc. nōluissem, -issēs, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

nōluerō, -eris, etc.

IMPERATIVE

	Singular	*Plural*
PRES. 2.	nōlī	nōlīte
FUT. 2.	nōlītō	nōlītōte
FUT. 3.	nōlītō	nōluntō

INFINITIVE	*PARTICIPLE*
PRES. nōlle	nōlēns, -entis
PERF. nōluisse	

452. mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer*

INDICATIVE		*SUBJUNCTIVE*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
	PRESENT		
1. mālō	mālumus	mālim	mālīmus
2. māvīs	māvultis	mālīs	mālītis
3. māvult	mālunt	mālit	mālint

IMPERFECT

mālēbam, -bās, etc.	māllem	māllēmus
	māllēs	māllētis
	māllet	māllent

FUTURE

mālam, mālēs, etc.

PERFECT

mālui, -istī, etc.	māluerim, -eris, etc.

PLUPERFECT

mālueram, -erās, etc.	māluissem, -issēs, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

māluerō, -eris, etc.

INFINITIVE	*PARTICIPLE*
PRES. mālle	*wanting*
PERF. māluisse	*wanting*

453. ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear*

INDICATIVE		*SUBJUNCTIVE*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*

ACTIVE

PRESENT

1. ferō	ferimus	feram	ferāmus
2. fers	fertis	ferās	ferātis
3. fert	ferunt	ferat	ferant

IMPERFECT

ferēbam, -bās, etc.	ferrem	ferrēmus
	ferrēs	ferrētis
	ferret	ferrent

FUTURE

feram, ferēs, etc.

PERFECT

tulī, -istī, etc. tulerim, -eris, etc.

PLUPERFECT

tuleram, -erās, etc. tulissem, -issēs, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

tulerō, -eris, etc.

PASSIVE

PRESENT

1.	feror	ferimur	ferar	ferāmur
2.	ferris	feriminī	ferāris (-āre)	ferāminī
3.	fertur	feruntur	ferātur	ferantur

IMPERFECT

ferēbar, -bāris, etc. ferrer, -rēris, etc.

FUTURE

ferar, -ēris, etc.

PERFECT

lātus sum, es, etc. lātus sim, sīs, etc.

PLUPERFECT

lātus eram, erās, etc. lātus essem, essēs, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

lātus erō, eris, etc.

IMPERATIVE

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
PRES.	2. fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī
FUT.	2. fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	3. fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES. ferre	ferrī
PERF. tulisse	lātus esse
FUT. lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

PARTICIPLE

PRES. ferēns, -entis	
PERF.	lātus
FUT. lātūrus	ferendus

GERUND	*SUPINE*
ferendī, ferendō, ferendum, ferendō	lātum, lātū

454. eō, īre, īvī, itum, *go*

INDICATIVE		*SUBJUNCTIVE*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
	PRESENT		
1. eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
2. īs	ītis	eās	eātis
3. it	eunt	eat	eant
	IMPERFECT		
ībam, -bās, etc.		īrem, -rēs, etc.	
	FUTURE		
ībō, -bis, etc.			
	PERFECT		
īvī (iī), īvistī, etc.		īverim (ierim), -erīs, etc.	
	PLUPERFECT		
īveram (ieram), -erās, etc.		īvissem (iisem, īssem), -sēs, etc.	
	FUTURE PERFECT		
īverō (ierō), -eris, etc.			

IMPERATIVE		*INFINITIVE*	*PARTICIPLE*
Singular	*Plural*		
PRES. 2. ī	īte	PRES. īre	iēns, euntis, etc.
FUT. 2. ītō	ītōte	PERF. īvisse (iisse, īsse)	
3. ītō	euntō	FUT. itūrus esse	itūrus

GERUND	*SUPINE*
eundī, eundō, eundum, eundō	itum, itū

455. fīō, fierī, factus sum, *become*

(Used as the passive of *faciō*, from which all but the present system is supplied; for the quantity see **372**, *b*.)

INDICATIVE		*SUBJUNCTIVE*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
		PRESENT	
1. fīō	(fīmus)[1]	fīam	fīāmus
2. fīs	(fītis)	fīās	fīātis
3. fit	fīunt	fīat	fīant
		IMPERFECT	
fīēbam, -bās, etc.		fierem, -rēs, etc.	
		FUTURE	
fīam, fīēs, etc.			
		PERFECT	
factus sum, es, etc.		factus sim, sīs, etc.	
		PLUPERFECT	
factus eram, erās, etc.		factus essem, essēs, etc.	
		FUTURE PERFECT	
factus erō, eris, etc.			

[1] The forms in parentheses are very rare

IMPERATIVE

Singular	*Plural*
PRES. 2. fī	fīte
FUT. 2. (fītō)[1]	

INFINITIVE	*PARTICIPLE*
PRES. fierī	
PERF. factus esse	factus
FUT. factum īrī	faciendus

456. dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give*

(Irregular only in the present system, and there only in the quantity of the a; the supine also has ă. See Lesson LXIII.)

INDICATIVE		*SUBJUNCTIVE*	
		PRESENT	
1. dō	damus	dem	dēmus
2. dās	datis	dēs	dētis
3. dat	dant	det	dent

IMPERFECT

dabam, -bās, etc. darem, -rēs, etc.

FUTURE

dabō, -bis, etc.

PERFECT

dedī, -istī, etc. dederim, -eris, etc.

PLUPERFECT

dederam, -erās, etc. dedissem, -issēs, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

dederō, -eris, etc.

[1] The forms in parentheses are very rare.

IMPERATIVE

	Singular	*Plural*
PRES.	2. dā	date
FUT.	2. datō	datōte
	3. datō	dantō

	INFINITIVE	*PARTICIPLE*
PRES.	dare	dāns
PERF.	dedisse	
FUT.	datūrus esse	datūrus

GERUND	*SUPINE*
dandī, etc.	datum, datū.

PASSIVE

Formed regularly from the corresponding active forms. The synopsis in the third person singular is as follows:

Indicative, datur, dabātur, dabitur, datus est, datus erat, datus erit; *Subjunctive*, dētur, darētur, datus sit, datus esset; *Imperative* (*entire*), dare, daminī, dator, dator, dantor; *Infinitive*, darī, datus esse, datum īrī; *Participle*, datus, dandus.

Roman wearing the Toga

Roman General

RULES OF SYNTAX

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case (**96**).

2. The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case (**97**).

3. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number (**98**).

4. The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative case (**334**).

5. The case of a relative pronoun is determined by its construction within its own clause. It agrees with its antecedent in gender, person, and number (**205**).

6. A noun or pronoun which describes another, and denotes the same person or thing, is put in the same case, and is called an Appositive (**119**).

7. A noun or pronoun limiting another and not denoting the same person or thing is put in the genitive (**118**).

8. The genitive, signifying the whole, may be used to limit a word indicating a part, and is then known as a Partitive Genitive (**275**).

9. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case (**107**).

10. The dative may be used with the verb **sum** to denote the possessor (**140**).

11. Adjectives meaning *faithful, fit, friendly, near, necessary, pleasing, useful,* and most of those having meanings the opposite of these, take the dative (**146**).

12. With the Second Periphrastic Conjugation, or with the Gerundive alone, the noun or pronoun denoting the agent must be put in the dative instead of in the ablative with a preposition (**250**).

13. The dative is used:

a. With many verbs of special meanings, such as *favor, help, injure, please, displease, command, obey, serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, threaten, believe, persuade,* and the like (**327**, 1).

b. With many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** and **super** (**327**, 2).

14. The dative of some nouns, such as **auxiliō, salūtī, cūrae,** etc., may be used in the singular to express purpose (**390**; see also **389** *b*).

15. Words signifying *privation, need,* or *separation,* take an Ablative of Separation, sometimes with **ab** or **ex**. The prepositions are always used with words denoting a person (**151**).

16. The ablative is used to express the means *by which,* or the instrument *with which,* an action is accomplished (**128**).

17. The ablative is used to give the cause or reason of an action (**133**).

18. The ablative, regularly with **cum**, is used to express the manner of an action. If the ablative has an adjective modifier, **cum** may be omitted (**134**).

19. With a verb in the passive voice, the agent (the person by whom an action is done) is expressed by an ablative with **ā** or **ab** (**156**). (Compare Rule 12.)

20. An ablative translated by *than* is frequently used with a comparative (Ablative of Comparison, **267**).

21. Words expressing comparison (as verbs, comparative adjectives or adverbs) may be followed by an ablative indicating the degree or measure of difference (Ablative of Degree of Difference, **268**).

22. A noun in the ablative, qualified by an adjective in agreement, may be used like an adjective to describe another noun, or to give a quality of it (Ablative of Quality, Characteristic, or Description, **281**).

23. The deponents **ūtor**, *use*, **fruor**, *enjoy*, **fungor**, *perform*, **potior**, *get possession of*, **vescor**, *eat*, and their compounds, take the ablative case (**304**).

24. A noun or pronoun in the ablative, accompanied by a predicate noun, adjective, or participle in the same case, may be loosely connected with the rest of the sentence. This is called the Ablative Absolute. An Ablative Absolute may be used as the equivalent of a clause or phrase expressing time, cause, condition, means, or other relation (**322**).

25. PLACE WHERE is regularly expressed by the ablative case with the preposition **in** (**112, 178**).

26. If the noun denoting place is the name of a town or small island, the locative case is used instead (**178**).

27. PLACE FROM WHICH is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **ab** (**ā**), **dē**, or **ex** (**ē**) (**179**); but if the

noun denoting place is the name of a town or small island, the preposition is omitted.

28. PLACE TO WHICH is expressed by the accusative with the preposition **ad** or **in**; but if the noun denoting place is the name of a town or small island, the preposition is omitted (**180**).

29. The TIME WHEN an event happens, or the TIME WITHIN WHICH it occurs, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; the TIME DURING WHICH it continues by the accusative (**235**).

30. In dependent clauses the verb, if in the subjunctive for any reason, must be in the present[1] or perfect tense if the verb of the principal clause is in a primary tense; it must be in the imperfect[1] or pluperfect tense if the verb of the principal clause is secondary (**316**).

31. The temporal conjunctions most frequently occurring (as **cum**, **ut**, **postquam**, etc.) are used only with the indicative, except **cum**, which usually takes the subjunctive of the imperfect and pluperfect tenses, but always the indicative of the others (**291**).

32. **Cum**, when it may be translated by *since* or *because*, is called **cum** *causal*, and is always followed by the subjunctive (**260**, *a*.)

Cum, when it may be translated by *although*, is called **cum** *concessive*, and is always followed by the subjunctive (**260**, *b*).

[1] For the choice between the present and perfect in primary sequence, and between the imperfect and pluperfect in secondary sequence, see **316**, *a* and *b*.

Cum meaning *when* is called **cum** *temporal*, and is usually followed by the subjunctive in the imperfect and pluperfect tenses, never in the other tenses (**260**, *a*).

33. The subjunctive is used in principal sentences to express an exhortation or mild command (**186**).

34. Commands are expressed in Latin by the imperative or by the subjunctive. Prohibitions, or negative commands, are expressed by **nōlī** (pl. **nōlīte**) with the infinitive, or by **cavē** (pl. **cavēte**) with **nē** and the subjunctive (**341**).

35. To express purpose the subjunctive is used in dependent clauses introduced by **ut** in affirmative, and **nē** in negative clauses (**187**).

36. The relative pronoun (equivalent to **ut is**, **ut iī**, etc.) is often used with the subjunctive to express purpose (**206**).

37. To express result the subjunctive is used in a dependent clause with **ut** affirmative and **ut . . . nōn** negative (**298**).

38. Verbs meaning to *ask, demand, persuade, advise,* and **imperō**, to *command,* are followed by object clauses in the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **nē**. **Iubeō**, *command,* **cupiō**, *desire,* **vetō**, *forbid,* and others, are followed by object clauses in the infinitive with subjects in the accusative (**240**).

39. Substantive clauses resembling result clauses are used as the *object of verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort;* as the *subject of impersonal verbs like* **accidit**, *it happens;* or as the *predicate of expressions*

like **mōs est**, *it is the custom.* They are introduced by **ut** (negative **ut . . . nōn**) and take the subjunctive (**395**).

40. Verbs of fearing are followed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut**, *that not*, and **nē**, *that.* **Nē . . . nōn** is sometimes used instead of **ut** (**388**).

41. In conditional sentences with nothing implied as to the fulfilment of the condition, which are expressed positively (or vividly), any tense of the indicative may be used in either the condition or the conclusion (**363**).

42. Conditional sentences with nothing implied as to the fulfilment of the condition, which are expressed less positively (or vividly), take the present or perfect subjunctive in the condition, and the present subjunctive in the conclusion (**374**).

43. Conditions and conclusions contrary to fact take the imperfect subjunctive to denote present time, and the pluperfect subjunctive to denote past time (**375**).

44. The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive (**314**).

45. In indirect discourse principal declarative sentences are put in the infinitive with subject accusative. The tenses of the infinitive denote time present, past, or future to that of the verb of saying (**383**).

46. Imperative sentences in indirect discourse are put in the subjunctive. The tense depends on that of the verb of saying according to Rule 30 (**400**).

47. Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse are put in the subjunctive. The tense is usually determined

by that of the verb of saying according to Rule 30 (**401**).

48. A large number of verbs, such as **audeō, cupiō, dēbeō, possum,** which express an incomplete idea, may take an infinitive of another verb used as object (or complement) to complete the meaning. This is called the Complementary Infinitive.

49. The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used as the subject of **est** and of impersonal verbs such as **licet,** *one may,* **oportet,** *one ought,* **necesse est,** *it is necessary,* etc. (**335**).

50. The gerund is used in the genitive to limit a noun; in the accusative with **ad** to denote purpose; in the ablative to denote means, cause, etc. (**347**).

51. The gerundive construction is commonly used instead of the gerund governing a noun or pronoun: it is always used after a preposition (**348**).

52. The gerundive in agreement with the object is used with **dō, cūrō,** and some other verbs, with the value of an object clause or to express purpose (**349**).

53. The supine in **-um** is used with verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion (**361**).

54. The supine in **-ū** is used with adjectives and a few nouns as an ablative of specification (**362**).

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

English words in the definitions which are derived from the Latin words are given in capitals, as ABSENT.

English derivatives which are not used as definitions, in capitals between parentheses, as (ADOLESCENT).

A

ab, ā, prep. with abl., *from, by.*

absēns, absentis, adj., ABSENT.

absum, abesse, āfuī, fut. part., **āfutūrus,** *be away, be distant.*

accidō, accidere, accidī, —— (**ad** + **cadō**), *happen* (ACCIDENT).

accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum (**ad** + **capiō**), *receive,* ACCEPT.

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ACCUSE, *blame.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp, keen, spirited.*

aciēs, -ēī, f., *line of battle, army* in line of battle.

ācriter, adv. (**ācer**), *spiritedly, vigorously.*

Actium, Actī, n., *Actium,* a promontory and town of Epirus on the Ambracian Gulf, celebrated for the naval victory of Octavianus over Antony and Cleopatra, in 31 B. C.

ad, prep. with acc., *to, towards.*

addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductum (**ad** + **dūcō**), *lead to, prompt, induce.*

aditus, -ūs, m. (**adeō**), *going to, arrival, coming, way of approach.*

adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtum (**ad** + **iuvō**), *aid.*

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *manage, direct.*

adoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *select,* ADOPT.

adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum, dep., *attack.*

adsum, adesse, affuī, fut. part., **affutūrus** (**ad** + **sum**), *be ready, be at hand.*

adulēscēns, adulēscentis, m., *youth, young man* (ADOLESCENT).

adventus, -ūs (**adveniō**), m., *coming, arrival.*

aedificium, aedifi'cī, n., *building,* EDIFICE.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *build.*

aedīlis, aedīlis, m., AEDILE, a Roman magistrate.

aegrē (aeger), adv., *with difficulty.*

Aegyptus, -ī, f., *Egypt,* a country in northeastern Africa, about the lower course of the Nile.

aemulātiō, aemulātiōnis (aemulō), f., *rivalry,* EMULATION.

aemulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *rival,* EMULATE.

aes, aeris, n., *copper, money;* **aes aliēnum,** *debt.*

aestās, aestātis, f., *summer.*

aestus, -ūs, m., *tide.*

Āfrica, -ae, f., AFRICA.

ager, agrī, m., *field* (AGRICULTURE).

agmen, agminis (agō), n., *army* on the march, *marching-column.*

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *lead, drive.*

agricola, -ae, m., *farmer,* AGRICULTURIST.

Alexander, Alexandrī, m., *Alexander,* in this book referring to Alexander III., surnamed the Great, king of Macedonia from 336 to 323 B. C.

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj., *of another, another's, unfavorable,* ALIEN.

aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, gen. **alicuius,** indef. pron., *some one, something.*

aliquot, indef. pron. indecl., *some, several.*

alius, alia, aliud, gen., **alīus,** adj., *another, other* (ALIAS).

Allobrogēs, Allobrogum, m. pl., *the Allobroges,* a people in the southeastern part of Gaul.

Alpēs, Alpium, m. pl., *the Alps.*

alter, altera, alterum, gen. **alterius,** adj., *the other* (of two).

altitūdō, altitūdinis (altus), f., *height,* ALTITUDE, *depth.*

altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, tall, deep.*

amīcitia, -ae, f., **(amīcus),** *friendship.*

amīcus, -ī, m., *friend* (AMICABLE).

āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī, āmissum, *send away, lose.*

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *love* (AMIABLE).

ancora, -ae, f., ANCHOR.

angustus, -a, -um, adj., *narrow.*

animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversum (animum + ad + vertō), *turn one's mind to, perceive.*

animus, -ī, m., *mind.*

annus, -ī, m., *year* (ANNUAL).

ante, prep. with acc., of place, *before, in front of;* of time, *before.*

anteā (ante), adv., *before, formerly.*

Antōnius, Antōnī, m., *Antonius,* referring in this book

to *Mārcus Antōnius*, Mark Antony, the triumvir.

aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum, *open.*

apertus, -a, -um, adj., *open, exposed* (APERTURE).

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call, name.*

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *draw near, approach.*

apud, prep. with acc., *at, near, before.*

aqua, -ae, f., *water* (AQUATIC).

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle; standard* of a legion, *eagle.*

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *think.*

arbor, arboris, f., *tree* (ARBOREAL).

arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī, arcessītum, *summon.*

arma, -ōrum, n. pl., ARMS, defensive *armor.*

armātus, -a, -um (part. of **armō**), adj., *armed.*

armo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ARM.

ars, artis, f., ART, *skill* (ARTIFICIAL, ARTIFICE).

Asia, -ae, f., *Asia,* usually referring in Latin to Asia Minor.

at, conj., *but, however.*

atque, conj., *and also, and.*

Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., *Athens,* chief city of Greece, situated in Attica, in the southeastern part of central Greece.

Atrebās, Atrebātis, m., *one of the Atrebātēs,* a Gallic tribe.

auctōritās, auctōritātis, f., AUTHORITY, *influence, prestige.*

audācia, -ae (audāx), f., *boldness,* AUDACITY.

audācter (audāx), adv., *boldly,* AUDACIOUSLY.

audāx, audācis (audeō), adj., *bold,* AUDACIOUS.

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, semi-dep., *dare.*

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *hear; listen to, heed* (AUDIENCE, AUDITOR).

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, *increase, add to,* AUGMENT.

Augustus, -ī, m., *Augustus,* a title given to *C. Iūlius Caesar Octāviānus* as emperor of Rome.

Aurēlia, -ae, f., *Aurelia,* mother of *C. Iūlius Caesar.*

aurum, -ī, n., *gold.*

aut, conj., *or;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or.*

autem, conj., *but, however, moreover.*

auxilium, auxī'lī, n., *aid, help:* pl., AUXILIARY *forces.*

B

barbarus, -ī, m., *a* BARBARIAN.

Belgae, Belgārum, m. pl., *the Belgians,* inhabitants of the most northern of the three divisions of Gaul.

bellum, -ī, n., *war* (BELLICOSE).

beneficium, benefi'cī, n., BENEFIT, *favor.*

Bibulus, -ī, m., *Bibulus*, a Roman family name. In this book refers to *L. Calpurnius Bibulus*, the colleague of Julius Caesar in his consulship, as well as in his aedileship and praetorship.

bona, see **bonus**.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., comp. **melior,** sup. **optimus,** *good*; as subst., **bona, -ōrum,** n. pl., *goods, property*.

brevis, -e, adj., *short, shallow*, BRIEF (BREVITY).

Britannī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Britons, natives of Britain*.

Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain*.

Brundisium, Brundi'sī, n., *Brundisium*, a seaport in Calabria in southeastern Italy, the usual point of departure for Greece; modern BRINDISI.

Brūtus, -ī, m., *Brutus*, a Roman family name. In this book refers to *M. Iūnius Brūtus*, the leader, with Cassius, of the assassins of Julius Caesar.

C

C., abbreviation for *Gāius*, a Roman forename.

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall, be killed*.

Caesar, Caesaris, m., *Caesar*, the name of a famous Roman family. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *C. Iūlius Caesar*, the dictator.

(2) *C. Iūlius Caesar Octāviānus Augustus*, the first emperor of Rome.

Calpurnia, -ae, f., *Calpurnia*, wife of Julius Caesar.

campus, -ī, m., *plain* (CAMPUS).

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, *take, take captive*, CAPTURE, *reach*.

captīvus, -ī, (capiō), m., CAPTIVE.

caput, capitis, n., *head* (CAPITAL, CAPITOL).

careō, carēre, caruī, ——, *be in want of, need, lack*.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear*.

Cassius, Cassī, m., *Cassius*, the fellow conspirator of Brutus, and one of the assassins of Julius Caesar. His full name was *Gāius Cassius Longīnus*.

castra, castrōrum, n. pl., *camp*.

Catō, Catōnis, m., *Cato*, a Roman family name.

causa, -ae, f., CAUSE, *reason*, abl., **causā,** with gen., *for the sake of*.

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *beware* (CAUTIOUS); imperat., **cavē,** with *nē* and subj., *do not*.

celer, celeris, celere, adj., *swift* (CELERITY).

celeritās, celeritātis (celer), f., *swiftness, speed*, CELERITY.

celeriter (celer), adv., *swiftly, quickly*.

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *conceal, hide.*

centuriō, centuriōnis, m., CENTURION.

certior, certius, comp. adj., **(certus)** *more* CERTAIN; **certiōrem aliquem facere,** *to inform any one.*

cēterī, -ae, -a, adj. pl., *the rest, the rest of.*

Cicerō, Cicerōnis, m., *Cicero,* a Roman family name. In this book, *M. Tullius Cicerō,* the orator and statesman.

Cinna, -ae, m., *Cinna,* family name of *L. Cornēlius Cinna,* leader of the popular party, B.C. 87–84, a friend of Marius and an enemy of Sulla.

circiter, adv., *about.*

circum, prep. with acc., *about, around* (CIRCUM-navigate, CIRCUM-vent).

circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatum, (**circum** + **dō**), *put around, surround.*

circumsistō, circumsistere, circumstitī, ——, *stand around, surround.*

cīvicus, -a, -um (**cīvis**), adj., *of a citizen, of the citizens,* CIVIC; **corōna cīvica,** *civic crown.* See note on Lesson XXXI, Read. Ex line 7.

cīvis, -is, m. and f., *a citizen* (CIVIL).

cīvitās, cīvitātis (**cīvis**), f., *state.*

clārus, -a, -um, adj., *famous, renowned* (CLEAR).

classis, -is, f., *fleet.*

coepī, coepisse, coeptus, def., *begin.*

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum, *learn;* perf., with force of present, *know.*

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum (**com-** + **agō**), *drive together, collect; force, compel* (COGENT).

cohors, cohortis, f., COHORT.

collis, -is, m., *hill.*

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *place.*

colloquium, collo'quī, m., *conference, parley,* COLLOQUY.

colloquor, colloquī, collocūtus sum, *talk together, converse, confer.*

colōnus, -ī, m., *settler, farmer* (COLONIST).

comes, comitis, m. and f., *companion.*

commeātus, -ūs, m., *leave of absence, furlough; provisions, supplies.*

committō, committere, commīsī, commissum (**com-** + **mittō**), *bring together, join;* COMMIT; **proelium committere,** *join battle, fight.*

Commius, Commī, m., *Commius,* one of the *Atrebātēs,* a Gallic tribe. He aided Caesar in his campaign in Britain.

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + parō), *prepare, get together, place together* (COMPARE).

compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētum (com- + pleō, *fill*), *fill full, fill;* COMPLETE.

complūrēs, -a, or, **-ia,** gen., **complūrium** (com- + plūs), *very many.*

comprehendō, comprehendere, comprehendī, comprehēnsum, *seize, grasp;* COMPREHEND.

concilium, conci'lī, n., *assembly,* COUNCIL *conference.*

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *win over,* CONCILIATE.

cōnfīdō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum (com- + fīdō), semi-dep., *trust,* CONFIDE *in; be* CONFIDENT.

cōnflō, cōnflāre, cōnflāvī, cōnflātum (com- + flō, *blow*), *bring together;* of a debt, *contract.*

cōnfodiō, cōnfodere, cōnfōdī, cōnfossum (com- + fodiō, *dig*), *transfix, stab.*

coniciō, conicere, coniēcī, coniectum (com- + iaciō), *throw, hurl.*

coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis, f. *conspiracy.*

coniūrātus, -ī, m., *conspirator.*

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *attempt, try* (CONATIVE).

cōnsilium, cōnsi'lī, n., COUNSEL, *advice, plan.*

cōnspiciō, cōnspicere, cōnspexī, cōnspectum, *get sight of, perceive* (CONSPICUOUS).

cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtum (com- + statuō, *place*), *place, station* (CONSTITUTE).

cōnsul, cōnsulis, m., CONSUL, title of the two chief magistrates at Rome.

cōnsulātus, -ūs (cōnsul), m., *consulship.*

contineō, continēre, continuī, contentum (com- + teneō), *hold,* CONTAIN; **sē continēre,** *stay, remain.*

continēns, continentis, m., CONTINENT, *mainland.*

contrā, prep. with acc., *against* (CONTRARY, CONTRA-dict).

conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum (com- + veniō), *come together, assemble,* CONVENE.

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (com- + vocō), *call together, assemble,* CONVOKE.

cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance* (COPIOUS); pl., *forces.*

Corinthus, -ī, f., *Corinth,* a city of Greece, situated on the Isthmus of Corinth.

Cornēlia, -ae, f., *Cornelia,* daughter of Cinna, and first wife of Julius Caesar.

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing* of an army.

corōna, -ae, f., *crown, garland* (CORONET).

corpus, -oris, n., *body* (CORPSE, CORPOREAL).

Crassus, -ī, m., *Crassus*, family name of *M. Licinius Crassus Dīves*, triumvir with Caesar and Pompey in 60 B.C He was defeated and slain by the Parthians at Carrhae, B.C. 53.

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *elect, appoint;* CREATE.

crūdēlis, -ē, adj., *cruel.*

crūdēlitās, crūdēlitātis (**crūdēlis**), f., *cruelty.*

crūdēliter (**crūdēlis**), adv., *cruelly.*

culpa, -ae, f., *fault, blame* (CULPABLE).

cum, prep. with abl., *with, together with.*

cum, conj., *when, since, although.*

cupīdō, cupīdinis, f., *desire,* (CUPIDITY).

cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum, *desire, wish.*

cūr, inter. adv., *why?*

cūra, -ae, f., CARE, *anxiety.*

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *care for;* with gerundive, *cause.*

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, *run.*

cursus, -ūs (**currō**), m., COURSE.

cūstōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum (**cūstōs**), *guard.*

cūstōs, cūstōdis, m., *guard* (CUSTODY, CUSTODIAN).

D

dē, prep. with abl., *down from, from, concerning.*

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum, *owe, be bound, be under obligation, ought* (DEBT, DEBIT).

decem, num. adj., indec., *ten* (DECIMAL).

decimus, -a, -um (**decem**), ordinal numeral, *tenth* (DECIMATE).

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum (**dē** + **dō**), *give up, surrender.*

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum, DEFEND, *protect.*

deinde, adv., *then, next, afterwards.*

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *please* (DELECTATION).

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, *destroy.*

dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctum, *pick out, choose* (DELEGATE).

dēpellō, dēpellere, dēpulī, dēpulsum (**dē** + **pellō**), *drive out, drive away.*

dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositum (**dē** + **pōnō**), *lay down, lay aside;* DEPOSIT.

dēsiliō, dēsilīre, dēsiluī, dēsultum, *leap down.*

dēsinō, dēsinere, (**dēsiī**), **dēsitum,** *leave off, cease, desist.*

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī (fut. part., **dēfutūrus**), (**dē** +

sum) *be away, be absent, be missing.*

deus, deī (for infl. see Appendix **423**), m., *god.*

dexter, dextera or **dextra, dexterum** or **dextrum,** adj., *on the right, right* (DEXTEROUS, DEXTERITY).

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, *say, declare;* **diem dīcere,** *name* or *appoint* a day.

dictātor, dictātōris, m., DICTATOR.

diēs, -ēī, m., *day.*

difficilis, -e (comp., **difficilior,** sup., **difficillimus**) (**dis** + **facilis**), DIFFICULT.

difficultās, difficultātis, f. (**difficilis**), DIFFICULTY.

dīligēns, dīligentis, adj., *industrious,* DILIGENT.

dīligenter, adv. (**dīligēns**), DILIGENTLY, *carefully.*

dīligentia, -ae (**dīligēns**), f., *activity,* DILIGENCE.

dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissum (**dis** + **mittō**), *send different ways, scatter,* DISMISS, *send away.*

discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum (**dis** + **cēdō**), *go in different directions, separate, disperse, depart.*

discō, discere, didicī, ——, *learn.*

dispersus, -a, -um, part. as adj., *scattered,* DISPERSED.

dissimilis, -e, adj., *unlike,* DISSIMILAR.

distribuō, distribuere, distribuī, distribūtum, *divide* DISTRIBUTE.

diū (comp., **diūtius;** sup., **diūtissimē**), adv., *for a long time, long.*

dīves, dīvitis, adj., *rich.*

do, dare, dedī, datum, irreg., *give, put;* **in fugam dare,** *to put to flight;* **poenam dare,** *to suffer punishment.*

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, *teach.*

doleō, dolēre, doluī (fut. part., **dolitūrus**), *grieve.*

dominus, -ī, m., *master.*

domus, -ūs (for infl. see Appendix **423**), f., *house, home,* DOMICILE (DOMESTIC); acc., **domum,** *homeward, home;* loc., **domī,** *at home;* abl., **domō,** *from home.*

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *give, present,* DONATE.

dōnum, -ī, n., *gift.*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead;* **uxōrem dūcere,** *marry.*

dum, conj., *while, until.*

duo, duae, duo (for infl. see Appendix **432**), num. adj., *two* (DUAL).

duodecim, num. adj., indecl., *twelve* (DUODECIMAL).

dux, ducis, m., *leader, guide, general.*

Dyrrachium, Dyrra'chī, n., *Dyrrachium,* a town in Illyria, nearly opposite Brundisium.

E

ē, prep. with abl., *from, out of.* Cf. **ex.**

ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum (ē + dūcō), *lead out, lead forth* (EDUCE).

efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum (ex + faciō), *bring to pass, bring about,* EFFECT.

egeō, egēre, -uī, ——, *need, want, lack.*

ego (gen., **meī**), pers. pron., *I* (EGOISM, EGOTISM).

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *go out, disembark* (EGRESS).

ēloquentia, -ae, f., ELOQUENCE.

enim, conj., postpositive, *for.*

eō, īre, īvī, itum, irreg., *go.*

eō, adv., *thither, to that place.*

Ēpīrus, -ī, m., *Epirus,* a country northwest of Greece and west of Thessaly.

epistula, -ae, f., *letter,* EPISTLE.

eques, equitis, (cf. **equus**), m., *horseman;* pl., *cavalry.*

equester, -tris, -tre, adj., *of horsemen, horse, on horseback,* EQUESTRIAN.

equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry, body of horsemen.*

equus, -ī, m., *horse.*

ergō, adv., *consequently, therefore.*

essedum, -ī, n., *chariot.*

et, conj., *and, but;* **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*

etsī (**et** + **sī**), conj., *but if, although.*

ēveniō, ēvenīre, ēvēnī, ēventum (ē + veniō), *come out, turn out, result* (EVENT).

ex, ē, prep. with abl., *from, out of, of.*

excēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessum (ex + cēdō), *go out, withdraw;* **ē vītā excēdere,** *to die.*

exercitus, -ūs, m., *army.*

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *think.*

exitus, -ūs, m., *going out, outcome, result.*

expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsum (ex + pellō), *drive out,* EXPEL.

expendō, expendere, expendī, expēnsum, *pay out,* EXPEND.

explōrātor, explōrātōris (**explōrō**), m., EXPLORER, *scout.*

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *examine,* EXPLORE.

expugnātiō, expugnātiōnis (**expugnō**), f., *capture by storm, storming.*

exspectō, -āre -āvī, -ātum, *wait for,* EXPECT.

F

fābula, -ae, f., *story,* FABLE.

facile, adv. (**facilis**), *easily.*

facilis, -e, adj. (comp., **facilior;** sup., **facillimus**), *easy* (FACILE, FACILITY).

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, *do, make, cause;* **lūdōs facere,** *hold* or *celebrate games.*

factum, -ī (faciō), n., *act, deed* (FACT).

facultās, facultātis (facilis), f., *possibility, opportunity* (FACULTY).

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, FAVOR.

fēlīciter (fēlīx), adv., *happily, fortunately.*

fēlīx, fēlīcis, adj., *happy* (FELICITY).

fēmina, -ae, f., *woman, lady* (FEMININE).

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, irreg., *bear.*

fidēlis, -e (cf. **fīdus**), adj., *faithful* (FIDELITY).

fīdus, -a, -um, adj., *faithful.*

fīlia, -ae, f., *daughter.*

fīlius, fīlī, m., *son* (FILIAL).

fīnis, -is, m., *end, boundary;* pl., *territories.*

fīnitimus, -a, -um (fīnis), adj., *neighboring.*

fīō, fierī, factus sum, irreg., used as passive of **faciō**, *become, be made.*

flamma, -ae, f., FLAME, *fire.*

flūmen, flūminis (fluō), n., *river, stream.*

fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, *dig.*

foedus, foederis, n., *treaty.*

fortasse, adv., *perhaps.*

fortis, -e, adj., *brave.*

fortior, fortius, adj. comp. (**fortis**), *braver, stronger.*

fortiter (fortis), adv., *bravely.*

fortūna, -ae, f., FORTUNE, *good fortune.*

fossa, -ae (fodiō), f., *ditch.*

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, *break;* of ships, *wreck.*

frāter, frātris, m., *brother* (FRATERNAL).

frīgus, frīgoris, n., *cold.*

frūctuōsus, -a, -um (frūctus), adj., *fruitful.*

frūmentum, -ī (fruor), n., *grain.*

fruor, fruī, fruitus or **frūctus sum,** *enjoy.*

fuga, -ae, f., *flight.*

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, *flee* (FUGITIVE).

fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, dep., *perform, administer, do* (FUNCTION).

futūrus, -a, -um, fut. part. of **sum** used as an adj., FUTURE, *to come.*

G

Gādēs, -ium, f. pl., *Gades,* a town on the southern coast of Spain, the modern Cadiz.

Gāius, Gāī, m., *Gaius,* a Roman forename, abbreviated **C.**

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul,* a country corresponding very nearly to modern France, but including Belgium and part of Italy.

Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul, inhabitant of Gaul.*

gēns, gentis, f., *clan, race, nation.*

genus, generis, n., *kind, sort* (GENUS).

Germānī, -ōrum, m. pl., *Germans*; natives of Germany.

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, *carry, carry on, do*; **bellum gerere,** *wage war.*

gladius, gladī, m., *sword* (GLADIATOR).

Gnaeus, -ī, m., *Gnaeus*, a Roman forename, abbreviated **Cn.**

Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece.*

grātia, -ae, f., *favor, thanks*, GRATITUDE (GRACE); **grātiam habēre,** *feel gratitude*; **grātiās agere,** *thank.*

grātus, -a, -um, adj., GRATEFUL, *pleasing.*

gravis, -e, adj. (comp., **gravior,** sup., **gravissimus**), *heavy, severe.*

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *have*; of a speech, *deliver.*

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *dwell, dwell in* (INHABIT).

hasta, -ae, f., *spear.*

Herculēs, -is, m., *Hercules*, the Roman name of the Greek god *Hēraclēs*, famed for his strength and mighty deeds.

hīc, haec, hōc (gen., **huius**), dem. pron., *this, that*; *he, she, it, they.*

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter*; *storm.*

Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain.*

homō, hominis, m., *man.*

hōra, -ae, f., HOUR.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *urge*, ex HORT.

hostis, -is, m., *enemy* (HOSTILE, HOSTILITY).

I

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *lie.*

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, *throw.*

iam, adv., *already.*

ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*

īdem, eadem, idem, gen. **eiusdem,** pron., *the same.*

Īdus, Īduum, f. pl., *the* IDES, the 15th day of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th of the other months.

ignāvus, -a, -um, adj., *cowardly.*

ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtum, *pardon.*

ille, illa, illud (gen., **illīus**), dem. pron., *that*; *he, she, it, they.*

imāgō, imāginis, f., *statue*, IMAGE.

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, IMPEDE, *hinder.*

imperātor, imperātōris, (imperō), m., *commander, general.*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *command* (IMPERIOUS).

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *get, obtain, procure.*

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack* (IMPETUS, IMPETUOUS).

imprūdentia, -ae, f., IMPRUDENCE, *ignorance.*

in, prep., with abl., IN, *on;* with acc., *into, towards.*

incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsum, *set fire to, burn* (INCENDIARY).

incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptum (**in** + **capiō**), *begin* (INCEPTION).

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *urge on,* INCITE.

incola, -ae, m., *inhabitant.*

incolō, incolere, incoluī, ——, *dwell, dwell in, inhabit.*

indicium, indi'cī, n., *sign,* INDICATION.

indīcō, indīcere, indīxī, indictum (**in** + **dīcō**), *declare, proclaim;* **bellum indīcere,** *declare war.*

īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum, irreg., *bear against;* **bellum īnferre,** *make war upon* or *on.*

īnfēstus, -a, -um, adj., *hostile.*

īnfīrmus, -a, -um, adj., *weak* (INFIRM).

ingenium, inge'nī, n., *nature, character.*

inimīcus, -a, -um, adj., *unfriendly* (INIMICAL); as a substantive, **inimīcus, -ī,** m., *enemy.*

initium, ini'tī, n., *beginning* (INITIATE, INITIATION).

iniūria, -ae, f., INJURY, *wrong.*

īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctum, *set in order, draw up; equip* (INSTRUCT).

īnsula, -ae, f., *island* (INSULAR, INSULATE).

integritās, integritātis, f., *honesty,* INTEGRITY.

intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum (**inter** + **legō**), *perceive, understand, know* (INTELLIGENCE, INTELLECT).

inter, prep. with acc., *between, among* (INTERfere).

intereā (**inter, ea**), adv., *meanwhile, in the mean time.*

interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectum (**inter** + **faciō**), *kill.*

interim (**inter**), adv., *in the mean time.*

intermittō, intermittere, intermīsī, intermissum (**inter** + **mittō**), *put between;* of time, *let pass* (INTERMIT, INTERMITTENT).

interscindō, interscindere, interscidī, interscissum, *tear down, break down, destroy.*

intrā, prep. with acc., *within.*

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *go into, enter.*

inūtilis, -e (**in-** negative + **ūtilis**), adj., *useless.*

inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum (**in** + **veniō**), *come upon, find* (INVENT).

ipse, ipsa, ipsum (gen., **ipsīus**), intens. pron., *self, very; himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

is, ea, id (gen., **eius**), dem. pron., *that; he, she, it, they.*

iste, ista, istud (gen., **istīus**), *that* of yours; *he, she, it, they.*

ita, adv., *so.*

Italia, -ae, f., *Italy.*

Italus, -ī, m., *an Italian.*

itaque, conj., *and so, accordingly, therefore.*

iter, itineris (cf. **eō**), n., *going, way, journey* (ITINERARY).

iterum, adv., *again.*

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *order, command.*

iūcundus, -a, -um, *pleasant, delightful.*

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *judge* (JUDICIAL).

Iūlia, -ae, f., *Julia,* a Roman name, referring in this book to the daughter of Caesar.

Iūlius, Iūlī, m., *Julius,* a Roman gentile name.

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *join, join with* (JUNCTION).

iussum, -ī (**iubeō**), n., *order, command.*

iuvenis, -is, m., *youth.*

L

Labiēnus, -ī, *Labienus,* family name of *Titus Labiēnus,* the ablest of Caesar's lieutenants in his Gallic campaigns. In the Civil War he sided with Pompey and was killed at Munda, B. C. 45.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, LABOR, *work, toil.*

lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītum, *provoke, challenge, attack.*

lacus, -ūs, m., LAKE.

laetus, -a, -um, adj., *joyful, pleased.*

lātus, -a, -um, adj. (comp., **lātior**; sup., **lātissimus**), *wide, broad.*

latus, lateris, n., *side* (LATERAL).

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *praise.* LAUD.

lēgātus, -ī, m., *envoy, ambassador* (LEGATE); *lieutenant.*

legiō, legiōnis (**legō**), f., *levy,* LEGION.

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, *collect, read* (LECTURE).

lēx, lēgis, f., *law* (LEGAL)

līber, lībera, līberum, adj., *free* (LIBERAL).

liber, librī, m., *book* (LIBRARY).

līberī, -ōrum (**līber**), m. pl., *free persons; children.*

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**līber**), *set free, free,* LIBERATE.

lībertās, lībertātis (**līber**), f., *freedom,* LIBERTY.

licet, licēre, licuit, and **licitum est,** ——, impers., *it is permitted, one may* (LICENSE).

lingua, -ae, f., *tongue,* LANGUAGE (LINGUAL).

litterae, -ārum, f. pl., LETTER, *despatch* (LITERARY).

lītus, lītoris, n., *shore.*

locus, -ī, m.; pl., n., **loca,** *place,* LOCATION (LOCAL).
longē (longus), adv., *far.*
longus, -a, -um, adj., LONG; **nāvis longa,** *a ship of war.*
Lūcius, Lūcī, *m., Lucius,* a Roman forename, abbreviated **L.**
lūdus, -ī, m., *game.*
lūna, -ae, f., *moon* (LUNAR).
lūx, lūcis, f., *light* (LUCID).

M

magis, comp. adv., *more.*
magister, magistrī, m., *master;* of a school, *teacher* (MAGISTRATE).
magnitūdō, magnitūdinis (magnus), f., *greatness,* MAGNITUDE.
magnopere (magnus), adv., *greatly.*
magnus, -a, -um, adj., comp., **maior,** sup., **maximus,** *great, loud.*
mālo, mālle, māluī, —— **(ma-gis + volō),** *prefer.*
malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad, evil.*
maneo, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *re*MAIN, *stay.*
manus, -ūs, f., *hand, band, troop* (MANUAL).
Mārcus, -ī, m., *Marcus,* a Roman forename, abbreviated **M.**
Mārius, Mārī, m., *Marius,* gentile name of *C. Mārius,* the famous leader of the popular party at Rome.
mare, maris, n., *sea* (MARItime).
Mārtius, -a, -um (Mārs), adj., *of March.*
māter, mātris, f., *mother* (MATERNAL).
maximē, adv., *most; especially, particularly.*
maximus, -a, -um, sup. adj. **(magnus),** *greatest* (MAXIMUM).
medius, -a, -um, *middle, middle of* (intermEDiate).
melior, melius, irreg. comp. adj. **(bonus),** *better* (AMELIORate).
memoria, -ae, f., MEMORY.
mercātor, mercātōris, m., *merchant, trader* (MERCANTILE).
metuō, -ere, -uī, ——, *fear.*
meus, -a, -um, poss. adj., *my;* irreg. voc. sing. masc., **mī.**
mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier* (MILITARY, MILITIA).
Mīlētus, -ī, f., *Miletus,* a city on the western coast of Asia Minor.
mīlle, num. adj., indecl., *a thousand;* pl., **mīlia, -ium.**
minus, adv., comp., irreg. **(parvus),** *less* (MINUS).
mīrus, -a, -um, adj., *wonderful* (admIRable).
miser, misera, miserum, adj., *wretched,* MISERABLE.
Mithridātēs, -is, m., *Mithridates,* the name of several kings of Pontus; in this book

refers to Mithridates VI., surnamed the Great, a formidable enemy of Rome, conquered by Pompey in 63 B. C.

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send* (MISSION).

Mitylēnae, -ārum, f. pl., *Mitylene*, chief city of the Island of Lesbos, in the northeastern part of the Aegean Sea.

modus, -ī, m., *measure; manner, way,* MODE.

Molō, Molōnis, m., *Molo*, surname of *Apollōnius Molō*, a famous teacher of rhetoric at Rhodes.

moneo, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *admonish, advise, warn.*

mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *show* (DEMONSTrate).

Morinī, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Morini*, a Belgian people on the coast of the *Fretum Gallicum*, or English Channel.

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *delay.*

mors, mortis, f., *death* (MORTAL, MORTALITY).

mōs, mōris, m., *custom, habit.*

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, MOVE (MOTOR).

multitūdō, multitūdinis (multus), f., *large number,* MULTITUDE.

multō (multus), adv., *by much, much.*

multus, -a, -um, adj., *much, many.*

Munda, -ae, f., *Munda*, a town in Southern Spain, near Gades, the scene of Caesar's final victory over the Pompeian party, in 45 B. C.

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *fortify.*

mūrus, -ī, m., *wall* (MURAL, IMMURE).

N

nam, conj., *for.*

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tell, describe,* NARRATE.

nātūra, -ae, f., NATURE.

nauta, -ae, m. (cf. **nāvis**), *sailor* (NAUTICAL).

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (nāvis + agō), *sail,* NAVIGATE.

nāvis, nāvis, f., *ship* (NAVY).

nē, conj., *that . . . not, lest.*

-ne, interr. particle, encl., used in questions; see Lesson X.

necessārius, -a, -um (necesse), adj., *unavoidable,* NECESSARY; as subst., **necessārius, -ī,** m., *kinsman, relative.*

necesse, adj., indec., NECESSARY.

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *say . . . not, deny, refuse* (NEGATIVE).

nēmō, gen. **nūllīus,** dat. **nēminī (ne + homō),** m. and f., *no one, nobody.*

neque (ne + -que), conj., *and*

. . . *not;* **neque . . . neque,** *neither . . . nor.*

neuter, neutra, neutrum, gen. **neutrīus,** adj., irreg., *neither* (NEUTER, NEUTRAL).

nihil, indec., *nothing* (ANNIHILATE).

nisi (ne + sī), conj., *if . . . not, unless.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —— **(ne + volō),** irreg., *be unwilling;* imperat., **nōlī (nōlīte)** with infin., *do not.*

nōmen, nōminis, n., *name* (NOMINAL, NOMINATE).

nōn, neg. adv., *not.*

nōnne (nōn + -ne), interrog. particle, used in questions; see Lesson X.

nōnnūllus, -a, -um (nōn + nūllus), adj, *some.* As subst., **nōnnūllī, -ōrum,** m. pl., *some.*

nōnus, -a, -um, ord. num., *ninth.*

nōs, nostrum or **nostrī,** pers. pron., *we, us.*

noster, nostra, nostrum, poss. adj , *our;* as subst., **nostrī, -ōrum,** m. pl., *our men, our soldiers.*

nōtus, -a, -um (nōscō), part. as adj., *known, well known* (NOTED, NOTORIOUS).

novus, -a, -um, adj., *new* (NOVICE).

nox, noctis, f., *night* (NOCTURNAL).

nūllus, -a, -um, gen. **nūllīus (ne + ūllus),** *not any, no.* As subst., *no one.*

num, interrog. adv., used in questions; see Lesson X.

numerus, -ī, m., *number* (NUMEROUS, ENUMERate).

numquam, neg. adv., *never.*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ANNOUNCE, *report* (ENUNTIATE).

nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger.*

O

obses, obsidis, m. and f., *hostage.*

occāsus, -ūs, m., *falling, setting,* **sōlis occāsus,** *sunset.*

occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsum (ob + caedō), *kill.*

occupātus, -a, -um (occupō), part. as adj., OCCUPIED, *busy.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *take possession of, seize,* OCCUPY.

Ōceanus, -ī, m., *the* OCEAN.

Octāviānus, -ī, m., *Octavianus, Octavian, C. Octāvius,* who, after his adoption by Julius Caesar, was called *C. Iūlius Caesar Octāviānus,* in accordance with the Roman usage. The title *Augustus* was added in 27 B. C.

Octāvius, Octāvī, m., *Octavius,* gentile name of *C. Octāvius;* see **Octāviānus.**

officium, offi'cī, n., *service, favor;* OFFICE, *duty.*

omnis, -e, adj., *all* (OMNIBUS).

onerārius, -a, -um, adj., *of burden, transport;* **nāvis one-**

rāria, *ship of burden, transport-ship.*

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, ——, impers., *one ought.*

oppidum, -ī, n., *town.*

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, suitable,* OPPORTUNE.

opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressum (ob + premō), OPPRESS, *overwhelm, crush.*

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ob + pugnō), *attack, besiege.*

optimus, -a, -um, irreg. superl. adj. **(bonus),** *best* (OPTIMISM, OPTIMIST).

opus, operis, n., *work.*

ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f., *speech,* ORATION.

ōrātor, ōrātōris, m., ORATOR, *pleader.*

ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., ORDER, *rank, company.*

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, dep., *rise, arise, begin* (ORIGIN).

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fit out, equip,* ADORN, *embellish.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *beg, plead.*

ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentum, *show, exhibit, display* (OSTENTATION).

P

parātus, -a, -um (parō), adj., *prepared, ready.*

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *obey.*

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *prepare.*

pars, partis, f., PART, *region, direction.*

Parthī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Parthians,* a Scythian people dwelling southeast of the Caspian Sea.

partior, -īrī, -ītus sum, dep. **(pars),** *share,* PART, *divide.*

parum, adv., comp., **minus,** sup., **minimē,** *too little.*

parvus, -a, -um, adj. (comp., **minor,** sup., **minimus**), *small, little.*

passus, -ūs, m., *pace, step;* **mīlle passūs,** *a thousand paces, a mile.*

pater, patris, m., *father.*

patior, patī, passus sum, dep., *suffer, allow* (PATIENT).

patria, -ae (pater), f., *native country, fatherland* (PATRIOT).

paucitās, paucitātis (paucus), f., *smallness, small number.*

paucus, -a, -um, adj., *few.*

paulō, adv., *a little, by a little.*

paulum, adv., *a little.*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*

pectus, pectoris, n., *breast* (PECTORAL).

pecūnia, -ae, f., *money* (PECUNIARY).

pedes, peditis (pēs), m., *foot-soldier.*

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj., *on foot,* PEDESTRIAN.

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive, drive away, rout.*

per, prep. with acc., *through, by.*

perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum (per + faciō), *finish, accomplish*, PERFECT.

perfidia, -ae, f., *treachery*, PERFIDY.

perfuga, -ae, m., *deserter*.

perīculum, -ī, n., *trial; danger, peril*.

permaneō, permanēre, permānsī, permānsum, *stay, continue, persist*.

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., *continual*, PERPETUAL; **in perpetuum,** *forever*.

perspiciō, perspicere, perspexī, perspectum, *look through, see clearly, perceive* (PERSPECTIVE).

persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum (per + suādeō), PERSUADE.

perterreō, perterrēre, perterruī, perterritum (per + terreō), *terrify, startle greatly*.

perterritus, -a, -um (per + territus), *thoroughly frightened*.

pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, —— (per + teneō), *reach, extend;* PERTAIN.

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (per + turbō), *throw into disorder, confuse* (PERTURB).

perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum (per + veniō), *come up, arrive*.

pēs, pedis, m., *foot*.

petō, petere, petīvī, petītum, *seek, attack*.

Pharnacēs, -is, m., *Pharnaces*, a son of Mithridates, conquered by Caesar.

Pharsalicus, -a, -um, adj., *of Pharsalus*, a town in Thessaly, where Pompey was defeated by Caesar in 48 B. C.

Philippī, -ōrum, m., pl., *Philippi*, a city in Macedonia, the scene of the defeat of Brutus and Cassius by Antony and Octavian, in 42 B. C.

pīrāta, -ae, m., PIRATE.

plānus, -a, -um, adj., *level, even* (PLANE).

plēnus, -a, -um, adj., *full*.

plūs, plūris, irreg. comp. adj. (**multus**), *more*.

plūrimus, -a, -um, irreg. superl. adj. (**multus**), *very many*.

poena, -ae, f., *punishment*.

poēta, -ae, m., POET.

Pompēiānī, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Pompeians*, adherents of Pompey's party.

Pompēius, Pompēī, m., *Pompeius*, gentile name of *Cn. Pompēius Magnus, Pompey the Great*.

pondus, ponderis, n., *weight* (PONDEROUS).

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place* (postPONE).

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*.

Pontus, -ī, m., *Pontus*, a country in northeastern Asia Minor, south of the Black Sea.

populus, -ī, m., *people* (POPULAR, POPULATION).

porta, -ae, f., *gate* (PORTAL).

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry* (EXPORT).

portus, -ūs, m., *harbor*, PORT.

possum, posse, potuī, ——, irreg., *be able* (POSSIBLE).

post, prep. with acc. of place, *after, behind;* of time, *after.*

posteā (**post**), adv., *afterwards.*

posterus, -a, -um (**post**), adj., (comp., **posterior,** sup., **postumus**), *next, following.*

postquam (**post** + **quam**), conj., *after.*

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *demand.*

potestās, potestātis, f., *power.*

potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, dep., *get possession of, become master of.*

praeclārus, -a, -um (**prae** + **clārus**), adj., *very distinguished, famous.*

praeda, -ae, f., *booty, prey.*

praefectus, -ī (**praficiō**), m., *commander, officer,* PREFECT.

praficiō, praficere, praefēcī, praefectum (**prae** + **faciō**), *put over, put in command of.*

praemittō, praemittere, praemīsī, praemissum (**prae** + **mittō**), *send ahead.*

praemium, praemī, n., *reward* (PREMIUM).

praesēns, praesentis, adj., PRESENT.

praesidium, praesi'dī, n., *garrison, force* (i. e., army).

praesum, praeesse, praefuī, fut. part., **praefutūrus** (**prae** + **sum**), *be over, be in command of.*

praeter, prep. with accus., *except, besides.*

praetor, praetōris, m., *praetor,* a Roman magistrate.

premō, premere, pressī, pressum, PRESS, *press hard, oppress.*

prīmō, adv. (**prīmus**), *at first.*

prīmum, adv. (**prīmus**), *first, firstly.*

prīnceps, prīncipis, m., *chief* (PRINCIPAL).

prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *deprive,* PRIVE, *deprive of.*

prō, prep. with abl., *for, in front of, in behalf of.*

prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, —— (**prō** + **cēdō**), *go forward, advance,* PROCEED.

prōdō, prōdere, prōdidī, prōditum (**prō** + **dō**), *give up, betray.*

prōdūcō, prōdūcere, prōdūxī, prōductum (**prō** + **dūcō**), *lead forth, lead out* (PRODUCE).

proelium, proelī, n., *battle, fight.*

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *set out, journey.*

profugiō, profugere, profūgī, —— (**pro** + **fugiō**), *flee for refuge, flee.*

prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum (**prō** + **habeō**), *check, hinder*, PROHIBIT.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hasten.*

propinquus, -a, -um, adj., *near* (PROPINQUITY).

propter, prep. with acc., *on account of.*

prōvideō, prōvidēre, prōvīdī, prōvīsum (**prō** + **videō**), *foresee;* PROVIDE, *provide for* (PROVIDENCE).

prōvincia, -ae, f., PROVINCE.

prūdentia, -ae (for **prōvidentia**), f., *foresight*, PRUDENCE.

Ptolemaeus, -ī, m., *Ptolemaeus, Ptolemy*, the name of several kings of Egypt.

Pūblius, Pūblī, m., *Publius*, a Roman forename, abbreviated **P.**

puer, puerī, m., *boy* (PUERILE).

pugna, -ae, f., *fight, battle.*

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**pugna**), *fight* (PUGNACIOUS).

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, adj., *beautiful.*

pulvis, pulveris, m., *dust* (PULVERIZE).

pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *punish* (IMPUNITY).

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *think.*

Q

quaestor, quaestōris, m., QUAESTOR, a Roman magistrate.

quālis, -e, adj., interrog., *of what sort, what kind of a?* rel., *of such a kind, such as.*

quam, adv., interrog., *how?* rel., *how, how greatly;* after a comp., *than;* **tam . . . quam,** *so . . . as;* with superlative, *as possible*, e. g., **quam prīmum,** *as soon as possible.*

quamquam, conj., *although.*

quantus, -a, -um, adj., interr., *how great?* rel., *as great, as great as* (QUANTITY).

quattuor, num. adj., indecl., *four.*

-que, conj., encl., *and.*

quī, quae, quod, gen. **cuius,** rel. pron., *who, which, what, that.*

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, and as adj., **quoddam,** indef pron., *a certain one, somebody, something.*

quīnque, num. adj., *five.*

quis, quid, gen. **cuius,** interrog. pron., *who, which, what?*

quod, conj., *because.*

quoque, adv., *also.*

quot, interrog. adj., indecl., *how many?*

R

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum, *seize.*

recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum (**re** + **capiō**), *take back*, RECEIVE; **sē recipere,** *betake oneself, recover oneself.*

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *decline, refuse, be reluctant.*

redeō, redīre, redīvī, reditum (red + eō), irreg., *go back, return.*

redigō, redigere, redēgī, redāctum (red + agō), *lead back, reduce.*

reditus, -ūs (redeō), m., *return.*

redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductum (re + dūcō), *lead back,* REDUCE, *bring.*

reficiō, reficere, refēcī, refectum (re + faciō), *make over, repair.*

rēgīna, -ae (cf. regō), f., *queen.*

regiō, -ōnis, f., REGION.

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, *rule* (REGENT).

relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictum, *leave,* RELINQUISH.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj., *rest, rest of, remaining* (RELIC).

remaneō, remanēre, remānsī, —— (re + maneō), REMAIN.

remittō, remittere, remīsī, remissum (re + mittō), *send back* (REMIT).

reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum, *find.*

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, REPUDIATE, *divorce.*

rēs, reī, f., *thing, matter.*

resistō, resistere, restitī, ——, RESIST.

respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsum, *reply,* RESPOND.

rēx, rēgis (cf. regō), *king* (REGAL).

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *Rhine,* the German river.

Rhodus, -ī, f., *Rhodes,* an island lying south of the western part of Asia Minor.

rīpa, -ae, f., *river-bank, bank.*

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ask, request.*

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um (**Rōma**), *Roman.* As subst., **Rōmānus, -ī,** m., *a Roman.*

Rubicō, Rubicōnis, m., *the Rubicon,* a small river in northeastern Italy on the boundary between Italy and Cisalpine Gaul.

Rūfus, -ī, m., *Rufus,* family name of *P. Sulpicius Rūfus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

rūs, rūris, n., *the country* (RURAL).

S

sacer, sacra, sacrum, adj., SACRED.

saepe, adv., *often.*

salūs, salūtis, f., *safety.*

sapiēns, sapientis, adj., *wise.*

sapientia, -ae (**sapiēns**), f., *wisdom, knowledge.*

satis, adv., *enough.*

saxum, -ī, n., *rock.*

scelus, sceleris, n., *crime.*

scientia, -ae (**sciō**), f., *knowledge* (SCIENCE)

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, *know.*

scrība, -ae (cf. **scrībō**), m., *clerk*, SCRIBE.

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write* (inSCRIBE).

scūtum, -ī, n., *shield*.

sē, gen., **suī**, reflex. pron., *himself, herself, itself, themselves*.

secundus, -a, -um (cf. **sequor**), *following*, SECOND, *favorable*.

sed, conj., *but*.

sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum, *sit* (SEDENTary).

sēdēs, sēdis, f., *seat*.

semper, adv., *always*.

senātus, -ūs, m., SENATE.

sententia, -ae, f., *opinion*.

septimus, -a, -um, ord. num., *seventh*.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, dep., *follow* (SEQUENCE).

serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum (cf. **servus**), SERVE, *be slave to*.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *save*, PRESERVE.

servus, -ī, m., *slave*, SERVANT.

sevēritās, sevēritātis (**sevērus**), f., SEVERITY.

Sextus, -ī, m., *Sextus*, a Roman forename.

sī, conj., *if*.

signum, -ī, n., *standard*, SIGNAL.

silva, -ae, f., *forest, wood* (SYLVAN).

similis, -e, adj., *like*, SIMILAR.

simul, adv., *at the same time* (SIMULtaneous).

sine, prep. with abl., *without* (SINEcure).

singulī, -ae, -a, distributive num. adj., *one by one* (SINGULAR).

societās, societātis, f., *alliance, political league* (SOCIETY).

socius, socī, m., *ally, companion*.

sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun* (SOLAR).

soleō, solēre, solitus sum, semi-dep., *be accustomed*.

sōlus, -a, -um, adj. irreg., gen., **sōlīus**, *alone* (SOLITARY).

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum, *loose, cast off*; **nāvēs solvere**, *set sail*.

spatium, spatī, n., SPACE, *distance*.

spēs, speī, f., *hope*.

statim, adv., *at once, immediately*.

statiō, statiōnis (**stō**), f., STATION, *post, picket*; **in statiōne**, *on guard*.

stō, stāre, stetī, statum, *stand*.

studium, studī, n., *desire, zeal* (STUDY).

stultus, -a, -um, adj., *foolish* (STULTIFY).

sub, prep., with abl., *under*; with acc., *up to* (SUBdue).

subitō, adv., *suddenly*.

subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus sum (**sub** + **sequor**), *follow closely*.

subsidium, subsi'dī, n., *aid*, pl , **subsidia**, *reserve-troops, reserves* (SUBSIDIARY).

subveniō, subvenīre, subvēnī, subventum (**sub** + **veniō**), *come under, aid, assist, succor*.

succurrō, succurrere, succurrī, succursum (**sub** + **currō**), *run under, aid, assist,* SUCCOR.

Suēbī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Suebi, the Swabians,* a people of Germany.

suī, see **sē,** or **suus.**

Sulla, -ae, m., *Sulla,* family name of *L. Cornēlius Sulla,* leader of the aristocratic party against Marius, and dictator of Rome from 81–79 B. C.

Sulpicius, Sulpi'cī, m., *Sulpicius,* one of Caesar's lieutenants; see **Rūfus.**

sum, esse, fuī, fut. part. **futūrus,** irreg., *be.*

summus, -a, -um, adj. (irreg. superl. of **superus**), *highest, greatest.*

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take* (ASSUME); **supplicium sūmere dē** with abl., *inflict punishment on.*

superbus, -a, -um, adj., *proud, haughty* (SUPERB).

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *overcome, conquer.*

superus, -a, -um, adj., comp., **superior,** sup., **suprēmus** or **summus,** *higher, upper;* SUPERIOR.

supplex, supplicis, adj., *submissive,* SUPPLIANT.

supplicium, suppli'cī, n., *punishment;* **supplicium sūmere dē,** with abl., *inflict punishment on.*

suspīciō, suspīciōnis, f., SUSPICION.

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., SUSPECT.

sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentum (**sub** + **teneō**), SUSTAIN.

suus, -a, -um, poss. adj., *his, her, its, their;* as subst., m. pl., **suī,** *their men, their soldiers.*

T

tālis, -e, adj., *such, of such a kind.*

tam, adv., *so.*

tamen, adv., *nevertheless.*

tandem, adv., *at last, at length* (TANDEM).

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great.*

tardus, -a, -um, adj., *slow,* TARDY.

tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon, dart.*

tempestās, tempestātis, f., *weather, bad weather, storm,* TEMPEST.

templum, -ī, n., TEMPLE.

tempus, temporis, n., *time* (TEMPORary).

teneō, -ēre, -uī, -tum, *hold, possess, hold back* (TENANT).

ter, num. adv., *three times.*

tergum, -ī, n., *back.*

terra, -ae, f., *land* (TERRESTrial); **terrā marīque,** *on land and sea.*

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, TERRIFY, *frighten.*

terror, terrōris, m., TERROR, *fright.*

tertius, -a, -um, num. adj., *third.*

testāmentum, -ī, n., *will,* TESTAMENT.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *fear, dread* (TIMID).

timor, timōris, m., *fear* (TIMOROUS).

tot, adj., indecl., *so many.*

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. **tōtīus,** irreg. adj., *all, the whole,* TOTAL.

trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, traductum (**trā** = **trāns** + **dūcō**), *lead across, lead over* (TRADUCE).

trāns, prep. with acc., *across* (TRANSatlantic).

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**trāns** + **portō**), *carry across,* TRANSPORT.

trecentī, -ae, -a, *three hundred.*

trēs, tria, gen. **trium,** num. adj., pl., *three.*

tribūnus, -ī, m., TRIBUNE, one of six higher officers in a Roman legion.

trīgintā, num. adj., indecl., *thirty.*

trīstis, -e, adj., *sad.*

tū, gen. **tuī,** *thou, you.*

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet* (TUBE).

tum, adv., *then.*

turpis, -e, adj., *disgraceful, base* (TURPITUDE).

turpiter (**turpis**), adv., *disgracefully, shamefully.*

turris, turris, f., *tower,* TURRET.

tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj., *thy, your.*

U

ubi, adv., *where;* conj., *when.*

ūllus, -a, -um, gen. **ūllīus,** irreg. adj., *any.*

unde, rel. adv., *from which place, whence.*

ūnus, -a, -um, gen. **ūnīus,** num. adj., irreg., *one, alone* (UNIQUE).

urbs, urbis, f., *city* (URBAN).

ut, conj., *when; in order that, so that;* **ut primum,** *as soon as.*

uter, utra, utrum, gen. **utrīus,** adj., irreg., *which of the two, which.*

ūtilis, -e, adj., *useful* (UTILITY).

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, dep., *use.*

uxor, uxōris, f., *wife.*

V

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *lay waste.*

vectīgal, vectīgālis, n., *tribute, tax.*

vehementer, adv., *greatly, exceedingly* (VEHEMENTLY).

Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., *of* or *with the Venetī,* a people living on the western coast of Gaul.

venia, -ae, f., *pardon, indulgence.*

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come.*

ventus, -ī, m., *wind.*

verbum, -ī, n., *word* (VERB, VERBAL).

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, dep., *fear* (REVERENCE).

Vergilius, Vergilī, m., *Vergilius, Vergil,* a Roman poet.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn* (CONVERT).

vescor, vescī, ——, dep., *feed on, eat.*

vester, vestra, vestrum, poss. adj., *your.*

vestis, vestis, f., *garment, clothes, clothing* (VEST, VESTment).

via, -ae, f., *way, road* (VIA, *by way of*).

vīcus, -ī, m., *village.*

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see;* pass. **videor,** *seem.* (VISION, VISIBLE).

vinciō, vincīre, vīnxī, vīnctum, *bind.*

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, *conquer* (VICTORY).

vinculum, -ī (vinciō), n., *bond, fetter, chain.*

vir, virī, m., *man* (VIRILE).

virgō, virginis, f., *maiden,* VIRGIN.

virtūs, virtūtis (vir), f., *manliness, courage,* VIRTUE.

vīs (vīs), f., *force.*

vīta, -ae, f., *life* (VITAL).

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *avoid.*

vix, adv., *scarcely, hardly.*

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call* (VOCATION).

volō, velle, voluī, ——, irreg., *wish* (VOLITION, VOLUNTEER).

Volusēnus, -ī, m., *C. Volusēnus,* a Roman officer in Caesar's army.

vōs, see **tū.**

vōx, vōcis, f., VOICE; *saying.*

vulnus, vulneris, n., *wound* (VULNERable).

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

able (be), possum, posse, potuī.
about, *adv.*, circiter.
about, *prep.*, dē, *with abl.*
accept, accipiō, 3, accēpī, acceptum.
accomplish, perficiō, 3, perfēcī, perfectum.
account, see **on account of.**
accuse, accūsō, 1.
accustomed (be), soleō, 2, solitus sum.
across, *prep.*, trāns, *with acc.*
advise, moneō, 2.
aedile, aedīlis, -is, *m.*
after, *prep.*, post, *with acc.*
after, *conj.*, postquam, ut, cum.
afterwards, posteā.
against, *prep.*, contrā, in, *with acc.*
ahead, see **send ahead.**
aid, auxilium, auxi'lī, *n.*; subsidium, subsi'dī, *n.*
aid (to), succurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum.
all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um. gen. tōtīus.
alliance, societās, -tātis, *f.*
allow, patior, 3, passus sum; see **pass, let pass.**
already, iam.
ally, socius, socī, *m.*
Alps, Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl.*
although, *conj.*, quamquam, *with indic.*; cum, *with subjunct.*
always, semper.
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
among, *prep.*, inter, apud, *with acc.*
anchor, ancora, -ae, *f.*
and, et, -que.
announce, nūntiō, 1.
another, alius, -a, -ud, *gen.* alīus.
any, ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.* ūllīus.
appoint, cōnstituō, 3, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtum; **appoint a day,** diem dīcere.
approach, appropinquō, 1 (*with dat.*).
are, sunt; see **be.**
arise, orior, 4, ortus sum.
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*; *on the march,* agmen, -inis, *n.*; *in line of battle,* aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
around, *prep.*, circum, *with acc.*
arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
arrive, perveniō, 4, pervēnī, perventum.
art, ars, artis, *f.*
ask, rogō, 1; quaerō, 3, quaesīvī, quaesītum; petō, 3, petīvī, petītum.
ask for, petō, 3 (see **ask**).

as soon as possible, quam prīmum.
at, *prep.*, in, *with abl.*, or *the abl. alone;* = **near,** ad, *with acc.*
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
at once, statim.
attack, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
attack (to), impetum faciō, 3, fēcī, factum; adorior, 4, adortus sum.
attempt, cōnor, 1.
avoid, vītō, 1.

B

back, tergum, -ī, *n.; in the rear,* ā tergō.
band, manus, -ūs, *f.*
bank, rīpa, -ae, *f.*
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*
battle, pugna, -ae, *f.;* proelium, proelī, *n.*
battle-line, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
be (etc.), sum, esse, fuī.
beat, pellō, 3, pepulī, pulsum.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
because, quod, *with indic., or* cum, *with subjunct.*
before, *prep.*, prō, *with abl.;* ante, *with acc.*
before, *as adj.*, see **former.**
beg, ōrō, 1.
begin, incipiō, 3, incēpī, inceptum; coepī, *def.*, coepisse; *also expressed by the imperf. tense* (see **307**, n. on l. 9).
be grateful, grātiam habeō, 2.
be made, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, *m. pl.*
be present, adsum, adesse, affuī, affutūrus.
betake oneself, sē recipere, (recipiō, 3, recēpī, receptum).
betray, prōdō, 3, prōdidī, prōditum.
bind, vinciō, 4, vīnxī, vīnctum.
blame, culpa, -ae, *f.*
body, corpus, corporis, *n.*
bold, audāx, -ācis.
boldness, audācia, -ae, *f.*
book, liber, -brī, *m.*
booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*
both . . . and, et . . . et.
boy, puer, -erī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
break, frangō, 3, frēgī, frāctum.
break camp, castra moveō, 2, mōvī, mōtum.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
briefly, breviter.
bring into the power of, in potestātem redūcō, 3, redūxī, reductum, *with gen.*
Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*
Briton, Britannus, -ī, m.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
build, aedificō, 1.
building, aedificium, aedifi'cī, *n.*
busy, occupātus, -a, -um.
but, *conj.*, sed.
by, ā *or* ab, *with abl.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
call, vocō, 1.

camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
can, be able, possum, posse, potuī.
captive, captīvus, -ī, *m.*
capture, capiō, 3, cēpī, captum.
care, cūra, -ae, *f.*
carry, portō, 1.
Cato, Catō, -ōnis, *m.*
cause, efficiō, 3, effēcī, effectum; *with gerundive agreeing with the object,* cūrō, 1.
cavalry, equitēs, -um, *m. pl.*
cavalryman, horseman, eques, equitis, *m.*
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*
certain, a certain one, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, etc.
chain, vinculum, -ī, *n.*
chariot, essedum, -ī, *n.*
chief, prīnceps, -cipis, *m.*
children, līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
choose, dēligō, 3, dēlēgī, dēlēctum.
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
cohort, cohors, -rtis, *f.*
collect, cōgō, 3, coēgī, coāctum.
come, veniō, 4, vēnī, ventum.
command, iubeō, 2, iussī, iussum; imperō, 1.
command (be in), praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
companion, comes, comitis, *m.*
conceal, cēlō, 1.
concerning, *prep.*, dē, *with abl.*
conference, colloquium, colloquī, *n.*; concilium, conci'lī, *n.*
confident (be), cōnfīdō, 3, -fīsus sum.
conquer, vincō, 3, vīcī, victum.
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
converse, colloquor, 3, collocūtus sum.
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, *f.*
council, concilium, conci'lī, *n.*
country, rūs, rūris, *n.*
courage, audācia, -ae, *f.*
course, cursus, -ūs, *m.*
crime, scelus, sceleris, *n.*
cross (to), trānseō, -īre, -īvī, -itum.
cruel, crūdēlis, -e.
cruelty, crūdēlitās, -tātis, *f.*
crush, opprimō, 3, oppressī, oppressum.

D

danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
dare, audeō, 2, ausus sum.
dart, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
day, diēs, -ēī, *m.* and *f.*
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
decide, cōnstituō, 3, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtum.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
defeat, vincō, 3, vīcī, victum.
defend, dēfendō, 3, dēfendī, dēfēnsum.
demand, postulō, 1.
depart, discēdō, 3, discessī, discessum.
deprive, prīvō, 1.
describe, nārrō, 1.
deserter, perfuga, -ae, *m.*
desire, cupiō, 3, cupīvī, cupītum.

destroy, dēleō, 2, dēlēvī, dēlētum.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
difficulty (with), vix.
dig, fodiō, 3, fōdī, fossum.
diligence, diligentia, -ae, *f.*
diligently, dīligenter.
disembark, ēgredior, 3, ēgressus sum.
disgraceful, turpis, -e.
disturb, throw into confusion, perturbō, 1.
ditch, fossa, -ae, *f.*
divide, partior, 4, partītus sum.
do, faciō, 3, fēcī, factum.
do not, nōlī, *pl.* nōlīte, *with inf.*
drive, agō, 3, ēgī, āctum.
dust, pulvis, pulveris, *m.*
dwell, habitō, 1.

E

eagerness, studium, studī, *n.*
eat, vescor, 3, ——, *with abl.*
either . . . or, aut . . . aut.
elect, creō, 1.
eloquence, ēloquentia, -ae, *f.*
enemy, hostis, -is, *m.*
enjoy, fruor, 3, frūctus sum, *with abl.*
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
everything, omnis *in n. pl.*
exceedingly, vehementer.
expel, expellō, 3, expulī, expulsum.

F

faithful, fīdus, -a, -um.
fall, cadō, 3, cecidī, cāsum.
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
fast, celer, -eris, -ere.
father, pater, patris, *m.*
fault, culpa, -ae, *f.*
favor, beneficium, benefi'cī, *n.*
favorable, opportūnus, -a, -um.
fear, timor, -ōris, *m.*
fear (to) timeō, 2, timuī, ——; vereor, 2, veritus sum.
few, paucī, paucōrum, *m. pl.*
field, campus, -ī, *m.*
fight, pugnō, 1.
fill, compleō, 2, complēvī, complētum.
find, reperiō, 4, repperī, repertum.
first, prīmus, -a, -um.
flee, fugiō, 3, fūgī, fugitum.
flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*
follow, sequor, 3, secūtus sum.
follow closely, subsequor, 3, -secūtus sum.
following, posterus, -a, -um.
food, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*; **on foot,** pedibus.
foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, *m.*
for, *conj.*, nam, enim (*postpositive*).
force, manus, -ūs, *f.* (*i. e. number, band*).
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
ford, vadum, -ī, *n.*
foresight, prūdentia, -ae, *f.*
forest, silva, -ae, *f.*
forever, in perpetuum.
former, superior, -ius.
fortify, mūniō, 4.
four, quattuor, *indec.*
free, līberō, 1.

friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um.
from, ab (ā), dē, ex (ē), *with abl.* or *the abl. alone.*
fruitful, frūctuōsus, -a, -um.
full, plēnus, -a, -um.

G

game, lūdus, -ī, *m.*
garment, vestis, -is, *f.*
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*
general, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*; dux, ducis, *m.*
get, parō, 1,
get possession of, potior, 4, potītus sum, *with abl.*
get together, collect, cōgō, 3, coēgī, coāctum.
gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum.
glad, laetus, -a, -um.
go, eō, īre, īvī, itum.
go away, discēdō, 3, discessī, discessum.
go forward, prōcēdō, 3, prōcessī, prōcessum.
go out, exeō, exīre, exīvī, exitum.
god, deus, -ī, *m.* (see App. **423**).
gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*
good, bonus, -a, -um.
goods, bona, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
grateful, be grateful, grātiam habēre.
great, magnus, -a, -um.
great number, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
greatly, magnopere.
guard, statiō, -ōnis, *f.*; cūstōs, -tōdis, *m.*; *on guard,* in statiōne.
guard (to), cūstōdiō, 4.

H

happen, accidō, 3, accidī, ——.
harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*
hardly, vix.
have, habeō, 2, habuī, habitum; cūrō *with gerundive* (see **cause**).
he, his, him, etc., is, eius, etc.
head, caput, capitis, *n.*
hear, hear of, audiō, 4.
heart, animus, -ī, *m.*
help, auxilium, auxi'lī, *n.*
help (to), adiuvō, 1, adiūvī, adiūtum; subveniō, 4, subvēnī, subventum; succurrō, 3, succurrī, succursum.
high, altus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, -is, *m.*
hinder, impediō, 4; prohibeō, 2, prohibuī, prohibitum.
hold, teneō, 2, tenuī, tentum; *hold a conference,* concilium habēre.
home, homeward, domum, *acc. of* domus, *house, home.*
hope, spēs, -eī, *f.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, equitis, *m.*
hostage, obses, obsidis, *m.*
hostile, īnfēstus, -a, -um.
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.* (see App **423.**)
how large, quantus, -a, -um.

how many, quot, *indec. adj.*
hundred, centum, *indec.*

I

I, ego, meī.
Ides, Īdūs, Īduum, *f. pl.*
if, *conj.* sī; *if not,* nisi.
immediately, statim.
in, *prep.*, in, *with abl.*
increase, augeō, 2, auxī, auctum.
induce, addūcō, 3, addūxī, adductum.
inflict, īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum.
influence, moveō, 2, mōvī, mōtum.
inform, certiōrem faciō, 3, fēcī, factum.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m.*
in order that, ut, *with subjunctive.*
injury, iniūria, -ae, *f.*
into, in, *with acc.*
is, est; *see* **be.**
island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*
Italians, Italī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*

J

journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
join, iungō, 3, iūnxī, iūnctum.
join battle, proelium committō, 3, -mīsī, -missum.

K

keep out, prohibeō, 2, prohibuī, prohibitum.
kill, interficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum.
kindly disposed, bonō animō.
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
know, sciō, 4, scīvī, scītum.
knowledge, scientia, ae, *f.*
known, nōtus, -a, -um.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī.
labor (to), labōrō, 1.
lake, lacus, -ūs, *m.*
land, terra, -ae, *f.*
language, lingua, -ae, *f.*
large, magnus, -a, -um.
lay down, dēpōnō, 3, dēposuī, dēpositum.
lead, dūcō, 3, dūxī, ductum; addūcō, 3, addūxī, adductum.
lead across, trādūcō, 3, trādūxī, trāductum.
lead away, ēdūcō, 3, ēdūxī, ēductum.
lead out, ēdūcō, 3, ēdūxī, ēductum.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*; prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*
learn, discō, 3, didicī, ——.
leave, relinquō, 3, relīquī, relīctum; *depart from,* discēdō, 3, discessī, discessum.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
less, adv., minus.
lest, nē, *with subj.*
let, see **185, 1** and **2.**
letter, epistula, -ae, *f.*
liberty, lībertās, -tātis, *f.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
like, similis, -e.
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*

line of march, agmen, agminis, *n.*
little, parvus, -a, -um.
live, habitō, 1.
long, for a long time, *adv.*, diū.
long, *adj.*, longus, -a, -um.
longer, *adv.*, diūtius.
lose, āmittō, 3, āmīsī, āmissum.

M

mainland, continēns, -entis, *f.*
make, faciō, 3, fēcī, factum (see **build**).
make a speech, ōrātiōnem habeō, 2, habuī, habitum.
make war on, bellum īnferō, 2, intulī, illātum, *with dat.*
man, homō, hominis, *m.*
many, multus, -a, -um.
March, of March, Mārtius, -a, -um.
march (to), iter faciō, 3, fēcī, factum.
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*
master, dominus, -ī, *m.*; *of a school*, magister, -trī, *m.*
may (one), licet, 2, licuit.
meanwhile, interea.
messenger, nūntius, nūntī, *m.*
middle, middle of, medius, -a, -um.
midnight (at), mediā nocte.
miserable, miser, -era, -erum.
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
Morini, Morinī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
moon, lūna, -ae, *f.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
much, by much, multō.
my, meus, -a, -um.
myself, mē, *acc.*

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, *n.*
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
native land, patria, -ae, *f.*
nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
near, propinquus, -a, -um.
necessary (be), necesse esse.
need (to), egeō, 2, eguī, ——, *with abl.*
neither (of two), neuter, -tra, -trum, *gen.*, neutrīus.
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque.
never, numquam.
new, novus, -a, -um.
night, nox, noctis, *f.*
no, *adj.*, nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, nūllīus (see **251**).
no, *in answer to a question*, see **41**, *b*.
no one, nēmō, nūllīus, *m.*
not, nōn; sometimes nē (see **185**, **3**, and **239**, **5**; see also **do not**).
nothing, nihil, *indecl.*
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*; *great number*, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*

O

obey, pāreō, 2, pāruī, ——.
of (concerning), dē, *with abl.*
officer, praefectus, -ī, *m.*
often, saepe.
on, in, *with abl.*, or *the abl. alone.*
on account of, propter, *with acc.*, or *abl. alone.*

one, ūnus, -a, -um, *gen.*, ūnīus. See also **ought** and **may.**
open (to), aperiō, 4, aperuī, apertum.
opportunity, facultās, -tātis, *f.*
opposite, *prep.*, contrā, *with acc.*
order (to), iubeō, 2, iussī, iussum ; imperō, 1.
other (of two), alter, -tera, -terum, *gen.*, alterius.
ought, dēbeō, 2, dēbuī, dēbitum ; *one ought,* oportet, 2, oportuit, ——.
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
outcome, exitus, -ūs, *m.*

P

part, pars, partis, *f.*
pass, let pass (*of time*), intermittō, 3, intermīsī, intermissum.
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
people, populus, -ī, *m.*
peril, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
persuade, persuādeō, 2, persuāsī, persuāsum.
pirate, pīrāta, -ae, *m.*
place, locus, -ī, *m. ; pl.*, loca, *n.*
place (to), cōnstituō, 3, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtum.
plan, cōnsilium, consi'lī, *n.*
please, dēlēctō, 1.
pleased, laetus, -a, -um.
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
pleasant, iūcundus, -a, -um.
poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*
point out, mōnstrō, 1.
Pompey, Pompēius, Pompē'ī, *m.*
praise (to), laudō, 1.
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī.
prepare, parō, 1.
present (to), dōnō, 1.
press hard, premō, 3, pressī, pressum.
prevent, prohibeō, 2, prohibuī, prohibitum.
prisoner, captīvus, -ī, *m.*
prolong, prōdūcō, 3, prōdūxī, prōductum.
protect, dēfendō, 3, dēfendī, dēfēnsum.
protection, praesidium, praesi'dī, *n.*
provide, prōvideō, 2, prōvīdī, prōvīsum.
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
Publius, Pūblius, Pūblī, *m.*
punish, pūniō, 4.
punishment, poena, -ae, *f.*
put to death, interficiō, 3, interfēcī, interfectum.

Q

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*

R

ravage, vāstō, 1.
rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*
read, legō, 3 lēgī, lēctum.
rear, tergum, -ī, *n.* ; see **back.**
reason, causa, -ae, *f.*
re-enforcements, auxilia, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
region, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*
remain, maneō, 2, mānsī, mānsum ; remaneō, 2.
remaining, reliquus, -a, -um.
repair, reficiō, 3, refēcī, refectum.

reply, respondeō, 2, respondī, respōnsum.
rest, the rest, cēterī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
retreat (to), sē recipere (recipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum).
return, reditus, -ūs, *m.*
reward, praemium, -praemī, *n.*
rich, dīves, dīvitis.
right, dexter, -tra, -trum.
river, flūmen, -minis, *n.*
road, via, -ae, *f.*
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um; *a Roman,* Rōmānus, -ī, *m.*
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*

S

sacred, sacer, -cra, -crum.
safety, salūs, salūtis, *f.*
sail, nāvigō, 1.
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem, *gen.* eiusdem.
save, servō, 1.
say, dīcō, 3, dīxī, dictum.
scout, explōrātor, -tōris, *m.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
seek, petō, 3, petīvī, petītum.
second, secundus, -a, -um.
see, videō, 2, vīdī, vīsum.
seize, capiō, 3, cēpī, captum; occupō, 1.
self, ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *gen.* ipsīus; as *reflexive,* sē, suī; **myself, yourself,** etc., mē, tē, etc.
send, mittō, 3, mīsī, missum.
send ahead, praemittō, 3, praemīsī, praemissum.
send out, dīmittō, 3, dīmīsī, dīmissum.
set free, līberō, 1.
set on fire, incendō, 3, incendī, incēnsum.
set out, proficīscor, 3, profectus sum.
set sail, nāvem solvere (solvō, 3, solvī, solūtum).
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
several, aliquot, *indec.*
Sextus, Sextus, -ī, *m.*
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
ship of burden, nāvis onerāria.
shore, lītus, lītoris, *n.*
show, mōnstrō, 1.
signal, signum, -ī, *n.*
since, cum, *with subjunct.*
sit, sedeō, 2, sēdī, sessum.
size, magnitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*
small, parvus, -a, -um.
small number, paucitās, -tātis, *f.*
so, *adv.*, tam.
so great, tantus, -a, -um.
soldier, mīles, mīlitis, *m.*
so many, tot, *indec.*
some one, quīdam, quaedam, etc.
son, fīlius, fīlī, *m.*
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
stand (to), stō, 1, stetī, statum.
standard, signum, -ī, *n.*
state, cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*
storm, tempestās, -tātis, *f.*
story, fābula, -ae, *f.*
stupid, stultus, -a, -um.

such, *adv.*, tam.
suffer, patior, 3, passus sum.
summer, aestās, -tātis, *f.*
summon, arcessō, 3, arcessīvī, arcessītum; vocō, 1.
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*
sunset, sōlis occāsus, -ūs, *m.*
suppliant, supplex, supplicis, *m.*
supplies, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*
supply, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
surpass, superō, 1.
surrender, trādō, 3, trādidī, trāditum.
surround, circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatum.
suspect, suspicor, 1, *dep.*
suspicion, suspiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
sustain, sustineō, 2, sustinuī, sustentum.
swiftness, celeritās, -tātis, *f.*

T

take, sūmō, 3, sūmpsī, sūmptum.
talk with, colloquor, 3, collocūtus sum.
tall, altus, -a, -um.
teach, doceō, 2, docuī, doctum.
teacher, magister, -trī, *m.*
tell, nārrō, 1.
tell of, nārrō, 1.
temple, templum, -ī, *n.*
ten, decem, *indec.*
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
territory, fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.*
terror, terror, -ōris, *m.*
than, quam, *or the abl. alone.*
thank (to), grātiās agō, 3, ēgī, āctum.
that, ille, illa, illud, *gen.* illīus; is, ea, id, *gen.* eius.
that, in order that, so that, *conj.*, ut, *with subjunct.; with verb of fearing,* **nē**, *with subjunct.*
that of yours, iste, ista, istud, *gen.* istīus.
there, *adv.*, ibi; in phrases, "there is," "there were," etc., not to be rendered into Latin.
then, tum, posteā.
think, arbitror, 1, *dep.*; putō, 1.
thirty, trīgintā.
this, that, hīc, haec, hōc, *gen.* huius; is, ea, id, *gen.* eius.
though, cum, *with subjunct.*
thousand, mīlle.
three, trēs, tria.
three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.
three times, ter.
throw, iaciō, 3, iēcī, iactum.
throw into confusion, disorder, perturbō, 1.
tide, aestus, -ūs, *m.*
time, tempus, temporis, *n.*
to, ad, *with acc.* (with verbs of motion), *or indir. obj. in dat.; expressing purpose,* see **360.**
together, simul.
towards, in, *with acc.*
tower, turris, -is, *f.*
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
transport ship, nāvis onerāria.
transport (to), trānsportō, 1.

treachery, perfidia, -ae, *f.*
tree, arbor, arboris, *f.*
tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
trumpet, tuba, -ae, *f.*
twelve, duodecim.
twenty, vīgintī.
two, duo, -ae, -o.
two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a.

U

understand, intellegō, 3, intellēxī, intellēctum.
unfavorable, aliēnus, -a, -um.
unhappy, miser, -era, -erum.
unless, nisi.
until, *prep.*, in, *with acc.*
unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
urge, hortor, 1, *dep.*
us, see **we.**
use, ūtor, 3, ūsus sum.
useless, inūtilis, -e.

V

Vergil, Vergilius, Vergi'lī, *m.*
very many, complūrēs, -ia, or -a.
virtue, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

W

wage, gerō, 3, gessī, gestum.
wait for, exspectō, 1.
wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*
wanting (be), dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
way, via, -ae, *f.*
we, us, etc., nōs, nostrum, etc.
weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
what, *interrog. substant.*, quis, quid; *interrog. adj.* quī, quae, quod; *relative*, quī, quae, quod.
when, *conj.*, cum.
where, ubi.
which (of two), uter, -tra, -trum, *gen.* utrīus.
which (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod, *gen.* cuius.
while, dum.
who, *interrog.*, quis, quid; *relative*, quī, quae, quod, *gen.* cuius.
whole, whole of, tōtus, -a, -um, *gen.* tōtīus.
why, cūr.
wicked, malus, -a, -um.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
wing (of an army), cornū, -ūs, *n.*
wisdom, sapientia, -ae, *f.*
wise, sapiēns.
wisely, sapienter.
wish, cupiō, 3, cupīvī, cupītum; volō, velle, voluī.
with, cum, *with abl.*
withdraw, excēdō, 3, excessī, excessum.
without, sine, *with abl.*
woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*
wonderful, mīrus, -a, -um.
woods, silva, -ae, *f.*
word, verbum, -ī, *n.*
wreck, frangō, 3, frēgī, frāctum.
write, scrībō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptum.

Y

yes, *see* **41**, *b*, *and p.* **148**, ftn. 1.
you, tū, tuī; *pl.* vōs, vestrum and vestrī.
young man, adulēscēns, -centis, *m.*
your, vester, -tra, -trum.
yourself, see **self.**
youth, iuvenis, -is, *m.*

Z

zeal, studium, -studī, *n.*

INDEX

The references are to sections, unless the page is indicated. Numerals in italics refer to the Appendix.

ā, ab, p. 108, ftn. 2; 155, 156; 171, 2, *a*, *b*.

Ablative, 32, *c*, 5; of place, 111, 112; of means or instrument, 127, 128; of cause, 132, 133; of manner, 132, 134; of separation, 150, 151; of agency, 155, 156; of specification, 199, 200; of time, 234, 235; of comparison, 266, *a*, 267; of degree of difference, 266, *b*, 268; of quality or characteristic, 280, 281; with deponent verbs, 303, 304; absolute, 321, *b*, *c*, *d*, 322.

Abstract nouns, 29.

Accent, 71, 86, 94, *d*.

Accusative, 32, *c*, 4; as object, 57, 87, 97; two accusatives, p. 133, ftn. 1; of time, 234, 235; as subject of infinitive, 334.

Active voice, 36, *d*; forms of in deponent verbs, 302, *a*.

ā-declension, 87, *c*; see First Declension.

Adjective clause, 44, *a*.

Adjective phrase, 18.

Adjectives, definition, 11; classification, 53–55; agreement, 88; position, p. 39, ftn.; second and first declensions, 87, 102, 110, *424*; third declension, 197, 198, 265, *425*, *430*; comparison, 264, 279, *427–429*; declension of nine irregular, 285, *426*.

Adverbial clause, 44, *b*.

Adverbial phrase, 18.

Adverbs, definition, 13; classification, 37; formation, 272, 273; comparison, 272, 273, *431*.

Agent, ablative of, 155, 156; dative of, 248, *b*, 250.

Agreement of adjective, 88; of verb, 98; of relative pronoun, 205; of verb with subjects of different person, p. 111, ftn. 2; of participle with subject of infinitive, 332, *d*.

aliquis, inflection of, 308, *b*, *438*.

alius, inflection of, 285, *426*.

Alphabet, 62.

alter, inflection of, 285, *426*.

Answers, see Questions.

Antecedent, 33, *f*.

Antepenult, 71, *b*.

Apodosis, 367, *a*.

Apposition, 117, *c*, *d*; 119.

Appositive noun and adjective, 55; 117, *c*, *d*; 119.

Article, definition, 12; in Latin, 12, n.; 87, *e*.

Asking, construction with verbs of, p. 133, ftn. 1.

Attributive noun and adjective, 54.
Auxiliary verbs, 17.
ā-verbs, 94, *a;* see First Conjugation.

Base, 25, n.; 149, *j;* 264, *b;* 272, *a.*

C., as abbreviation, 62, n.; 257, n. on l. 2.
Case-ending, definition, 25, n.
Cases, definition, 32, *c;* English meanings of Latin, 102.
Cause, ablative of, 132, *a.*
cavē, in prohibitions, 340, 341.
Characteristic, ablative of, 280, 281.
Characteristic vowel, 94, *a;* 122, *a.*
Clauses, definition, 43; classification, 43–45.
Collective noun, 31.
Commands, 185, 186; 340, 341; in indirect discourse, 399–400.
Common noun, 30.
Comparative degree, 21; formation of, 264; declension of, 264, *f,* 265, *430.*
Comparison, definition, 21; of adjectives, 264, *427, 428;* of adverbs, 272, 273, *431;* irregular, of adjectives and adverbs, 279, *429, 431.*
Complementary infinitive, 167, 239.
Complex sentence, 47.
Composition of words, 27, 412.
Compound sentence, 46.
Compound-complex sentence, 48.
Compounds, 27, 412.
Compound verbs, meaning of, 271, n. on l. 2.
Conative imperfect, p. 58, ftn. 2.
Concrete nouns, 29.
Conditional clauses, 45, *e;* in indicative, 367, 368; in subjunctive, 373, 374; classification of, 376.
Conjugation, see First, Second, etc.
Conjunctions, definition, 15; classification, 39, 43, *a, b;* use of, 353.
Consonant stems in declension, 149, *a, c, e;* 162, *b.*
Consonants, classification of, 65
cum, preposition as enclitic, p. 11, ftn. 1.
cum-clauses, 259, 260.
cupiō, construction with, 239, 240.
cūrō, with gerundive, 349.
Customary action, expressed by imperfect, 263, n. on l. 7.

Dative, 32, *c,* 3; of pronouns, 137, *b;* of nine irregular adjectives, 285, *a;* of indirect object, 106, 107, p. 132, ftn. 1; of possession, 139, 140, p. 198, ftn. 1; with adjectives, 145, 146; of agent, 248, *b,* 250; with special verbs, 326, 327; of purpose or service ("two datives"), 389, 390.
dē, 171, *a.*
Declarative sentence, 41, *a.*
Declension, see First, Second, etc.
Defective verbs, p. 139, ftn. 2.
Degree of difference, ablative of, 266, *b;* 268.
Demonstrative pronouns, definition, 33, *d;* inflection, 137, 220, 224, *435.*
Dependent clause, 43, *b.*
Deponent verbs, 302, *448.*
Derivation of words, 23, 24, 26; 406–412.
Derivative, 26.
Description, ablative of, see Characteristic.
deus, declension of, *423.*

dīc, as imperative of **dīcō**, p. 115, ftn. 1.
diēs, declension of, 233, *422;* gender of, 233, *a*.
Diphthongs, 63, *c*.
dō, conjugation of, 372, *456;* with gerundive, 349; quantity, 79 *a;* p. 43, ftn. 1.
domus, declension of, 229, *d*, *423*.
dūc, as imperative of **dūcō**, p. 115, ftn. 1.
dum, with present indicative, p. 222, ftn. 2; with subjunctive, 288, n. on l. 8.
duo, inflection of, 289, *432*.

ē, **ex**, 171, *a*, *b;* with ablative instead of partitive genitive, p. 156, ftn. 4.
ego, inflection of, 210, *433*.
Enclitics, 71, *c;* accent of preceding word, 71, *c*.
eō, conjugation of, 358, *454*.
e-verbs, 122, *a;* see Third conjugation.
ē-verbs, 94, *a;* see Second conjugation.
Exhortation, subjunctive of, 185, 186.
Extent of time, accusative of, 234, 235.

fac, as imperative of **faciō**, p. 115, ftn. 1.
Fearing, construction with verbs of, 387, 388.
ferō, conjugation of, 372, *453*.
Fifth declension, 233, *422*.
fīlius, vocative of, 253, n. on l. 7.
fīō, conjugation of, 372, *455*.
First conjugation, 94, 126, 154, 159, 165, 184, 190, 193, 214, 244, 248, 296, 320, 359, *440*.
First declension, of nouns, 87, 101, 105, *415;* of adjectives, 87, 101, *424*.
Fourth conjugation, 122, 126, 154, 159, 165, 184, 190, 193, 214, 244, 248, 296, 320, 359, *444*.
Fourth declension, 229, *421*.
fruor, ablative with, 303, 304.
fungor, ablative with, 303, 304.
Future, tense-signs of, 131, *a–d*.

Gender, rules of: general, 32, N; in decl. I, 87, *f*, 105, *a;* in decl. II, 87, *f;* in decl. III, 215, p. 147, ftn. 1; in decl. IV, 229. *a*, *b;* in decl. V, 233, *a*.
Genitive, 32, *c*, 2; of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**, p. 58, ftn. 1; of pronouns, 137, *b;* of nine irregular adjectives, 285; limiting, 117, *d*, 118; of whole ("partitive"), 274, 275.
Gerund and gerundive, 345–349, 379, n. on l. 7.
Grammar, definition, 4; general principles of, 1–60.

Helping, construction with verbs of, p. 147, ftn. 2.
hīc, inflection of, 220, *435*.
Historical present, 209, n. on l. 3.
Hortatory subjunctive, see Exhortation.

īdem, inflection of, 220, *435*.
ille, inflection of, 224, *435*.
Imperative, 36, *b;* 214; p. 115, ftn. 1; see Commands.
Imperative sentence, 41, *c*.
Imperfect, formation of, 126, *a–d;* conative, p. 58, ftn. 2; of customary action, 263, n. on l. 7;

of the beginning of an action, 307, n. on l. 9.
imperō, construction with, 239.
in, with accusative, 180; with ablative, 111, 112, 178.
Indefinite pronouns, 33, *g*; 308, *437*, *438*.
Independent clause, 43, *a*.
Indicative, 36, *b*.
Indirect discourse, simple declarative sentences in, 381–383; imperative clauses in, 399–400; subordinate clauses in, 399, 401.
Indirect object, 58, 106, 107.
Indirect question, 313, 314.
Infinitive, 36, *e*; complementary, 167, 239; formation of present, 94, 122, 165; of perfect, 254, *b*, 332, *a*; of future, 332, *c*; of perfect passive, 296, 332, *c*; use of, 333; subject of, 334; with subject accusative, 239, 382, 383; as subject of **est** and impersonal verbs, 333, 335.
Inflection, 19–20.
Intensive pronoun, 33, *c*; inflection of, 224, *b*, *435*.
Interjection, 16.
Interrogative, adjective, 203, *b*; clause, 45, *b*; particles, 123, *d*, 2; pronoun 33, *e*; 203, *a*, 308, *437*; sentences, 41, *b*.
Intransitive verbs, 35.
ipse, see Intensive pronoun.
Irregular nouns, *423*; adjectives, *426*; verbs, *449–456*: see **domus**, **alius**, **dō**, etc.
is, inflection of, 137, *435*.
Islands, expression of place with names of small, 178, 179, 180.
iste, inflection of, 224, *a*.
i-stems, in decl. III., 149, *a*; 174, *b*, *c*, *d*; *420*.
iubeō, construction with, 239, 240.
ī-verbs, 122, *a*; see Fourth conjugation.

Liquids, see Consonants.
Locative case, 178, *b*.

mālō, conjugation of, 366, *452*.
Manner, ablative of, 132, 134.
Means, ablative of, 127, 128.
Measure of difference, ablative of, see Degree of difference.
mīlle, inflection of, 269, *432*.
Mixed stems, p. 88, ftn. 2.
Mood, 36, *b*; see Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.
Mutes, see Consonants.

Nasals, see Consonants.
-ne, see Interrogative particles.
nē, in purpose clauses, 185, 187; in substantive clauses, 239, 240; with verbs of fearing, 387, 388.
neuter, inflection of, 285.
nōlī, in prohibitions, 341.
nōlō, conjugation of, 366, *451*.
Nominative, 32, *c*, 1; see Subject.
nōnne, see Interrogative particles.
nostrum, in partitive genitive, p. 156, ftn. 2.
Noun clauses, see Substantive clauses.
Nouns, definition, 8; classification, 28–31; characteristics of, 32; see First declension, etc.
nūllus, inflection of, 285.
num, see Interrogative particles.
Number, 32, *b*.
Numerals, 289, *432*.

Object, direct, 57, 87, 97; indirect, 58, 106, 107.
o-declension: see Second declension.
ōrātiō oblīqua, 381; see Indirect Discourse.
ōrātiō rēcta, 381.
Order of words, 95, *i*; p. 39, ftn. 1; p. 48, ftn. 1; p. 50, ftn. 2; p. 52, ftn. 3.
orior, conjugation of, p. 235, ftn. 1.

Parisyllabic stems, 174, *b*.
Participles, 36, *e*; present, 197, *b*; perfect passive, 244, *b*; future active and passive, 248; 320.
Partitive genitive, 274, 275.
Parts of speech, definition, 5; classification, 8–16, 28–39; characteristics of, 32–36; combinations of, 17–18; modifications of, 19–22.
Passive voice, 36, *d*.
Penult, 71, *b*.
Perfect, definite and indefinite, 36, *a*; stem, 244; tenses formed on stem of, 254.
Periphrastic conjugations, 248–250; *446–447*.
Person, 33, *a*.
Personal endings, 94, *b*; 154.
Personal pronouns, definition, 33; when expressed, 36, *c*, n.; inflection, 210, *433*.
petō, construction with, p. 108, ftn. 2.
Phrases, 17–18.
Place, ways of expressing, 111, 177–180.
Positive degree, 21.
Possession, dative of, 139, 140, p. 198, ftn. 1.
Possessive pronoun, 210, *434*.
Possessor, dative of, see Possession.
possum, conjugation of, 166, 354, *b*, *449*.
postquam, 291.
Postpositive words, p. 159, ftn. 1.
potior, ablative with, 303, 304.
Predicate, definition, 7; noun or adjective, 52, 117, *a*.
Prefix, definition, 24; meaning of in compound verbs, 271, n. on l. 2, 288, n. on l. 6.
Prepositional phrase, 18, 59.
Prepositions, definition, 14; classification, 38; with accusative and ablative, 124, 171; in compound verbs, see Prefix.
Primary tenses, 315, 317.
Principal clause, 43, *a*.
Principal parts, of verbs, 244, *c*, *d*; p. 139, ftn. 1.
Prohibitions, 340, *a*; 341.
Pronouns, definition, 10; classification, 33; see Personal, etc.
Pronunciation, 66, 86.
Proper nouns, 30.
Protasis, 367, *a*.
Purpose, ways of expressing, 360, *a*; cf. p. 93, ftn. 3; see Dative and Subjunctive.

Quality, ablative of, see Characteristic.
quam, with superlative, p. 163, ftn. 2.
Quantity, of vowels, 69; of syllables, 70; general rules for, 72–85.
-que, 99, *i*.
Questions, and answers, 41, *b*; 123, *d*; p. 148, ftn. 1; indirect, 313, 314.

quīdam, 308, *b*, *438*.
quis, 203, *a*, *437*.

Reading Exercises, 209, 213, 219, 223, 227, 232, 238, 243, 247, 253, 257; 263, 271, 278, 284, 288, 294, 301, 307, 312, 319, 325, 330, 338, 344, 352, 357, 365, 371, 379, 386, 393, 398, 404.
Reflexive pronoun, 33, *c*; 210, *b*, *c*; inflection of, 210, *433*.
Relative clause, 45, *a*; of purpose, 205, *d*; 206.
Roots, 25.

sē, see Reflexive pronoun.
Second conjugation, 94, 126, 154, 159, 165, 184, 190, 193, 214, 244, 248, 296, 320, 359, *441*.
Second declension, of nouns, 87, 91, 101, 109, *416*, *417*; of adjectives, 87, 91, 101, 110.
Secondary tenses, 315, 317.
Semi-deponent verbs, p. 231, ftn. 1.
Sentence, definition, 6; classification, 40–48.
Separation, ablative of, 150, 151.
Sequence of tenses, 315–317; with perfect infinitive in indirect discourse, 399, *c*.
Service, dative of, 389, 390.
Simple sentence, 40, 41.
Sounds, classification of, 61–65.
Specification, ablative of, 199, 200.
Stem, definition, 25; in decl. III, 149, 162.
Subject, definition, 6; case of, 87, 96.
Subjunctive, 36, *b*; present, 184; imperfect, 190; present and imperfect passive, 193; forms made on perfect stem, 254; of exhortation or command, 185, 186; of purpose, 185, 187, 204, 206; of result, 297, 298; in an indirect question, 314; substantive clauses, 239, 395; with verbs of fearing, 387, 388; in conditional sentences, 373, 374; in indirect discourse, 399–400, 401.
Subordinate clause, 43, *b*; see Indirect discourse.
Substantive clause, 44, *c*; of purpose, 239, 240; of result, 394, 395.
Suffix, 22, n.
suī, see Reflexive pronoun.
sum, conjugation of, 116, 138, 184, 190, 214, *439*.
Superlative degree, 21.
Supine, formation of, 359; use of, 360–362.
Supine stem, 244, *d*.
Syllables, division of, 67, 68; quantity of, 70.
Synopses, of regular verbs, 339, *445*.
Syntax, rules of, pp. 311 f.

Temporal clauses, 45, *c*; 290, 291.
Tenses, 36, *a*; primary and secondary, 315, 317; sequence of, 315–317.
Tense-signs, see Present, Imperfect, etc.
Third conjugation, 122, 126, 144, 154, 159, 165, 184, 190, 193, 214, 244, 248, p. 139, ftn. 1, 296, 320, 359, *442*, *443*.
Third declension, 149, 162, 174, 197, 198, *418–420*, *425*, *430*; gender in, 215.
Time, ways of expressing, 234, 235.

tōtus, inflection of, 285.
Towns, expression of place with names of, 178, 179, 180.
Transitive verbs, 35.
tres, inflection of, 289, *432*.
tū, inflection of, 210, *433*.

ūllus, inflection of, 285.
ūnus, inflection of, 285, *426*.
ut, of purpose, 185, *d*, 187; of result, 297, 298; in substantive clauses, 239, 240, 394, 395; in temporal clauses, 291; with verbs of fearing, 387, 388.
uter, inflection of, 285, *426*.
ut nōn, in result clauses, 297, *c*; in substantive clauses, 394, *b*.
ūtor, ablative with, 303, 304.

Verbs, definition, 9; classification, 35; characteristics, 36; agreement, 98; principal parts of, 244; governing dative, 326, 327; governing ablative, 303, 304; with object clauses, 240.
Very, expressed by the superlative, p. 156, ftn. 3.
vescor, with ablative, 303.
vestrum, as form with partitive genitive, p. 156, ftn. 2.
vetō, construction with, 240.
Vocative, 32, *c*, 6; 102, *c*, *d*; p. 107, ftn. 2.
Voice, 36, *d*.
volō, conjugation of, 366, *450*.
Vowels, 63, *a*.

Word lists, *414*.

Yes, how expressed in Latin, p. 148, ftn. 1.